



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

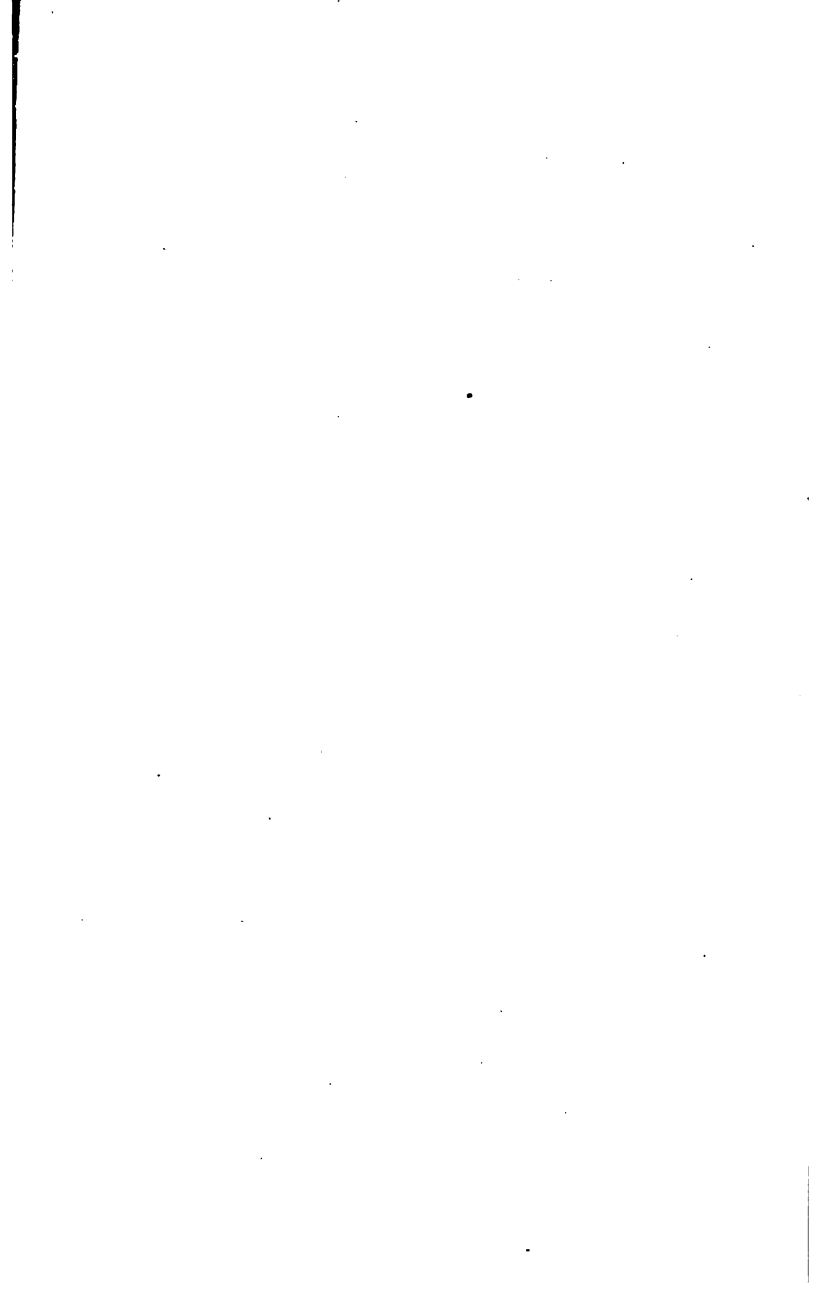
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

45. 68.





A
GRAMMAR
OF THE
GERMAN LANGUAGE.

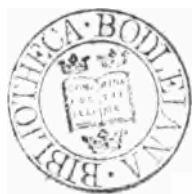
BY
K. F. BECKER, M.D.

Second Edition,
GREATLY IMPROVED.

EDITED BY
BERNHARD BECKER.

LONDON:
PRINTED FOR
LONGMAN, BROWN, GREEN, AND LONGMANS,
PATERNOSTER ROW.

1845.



P R E F A C E.

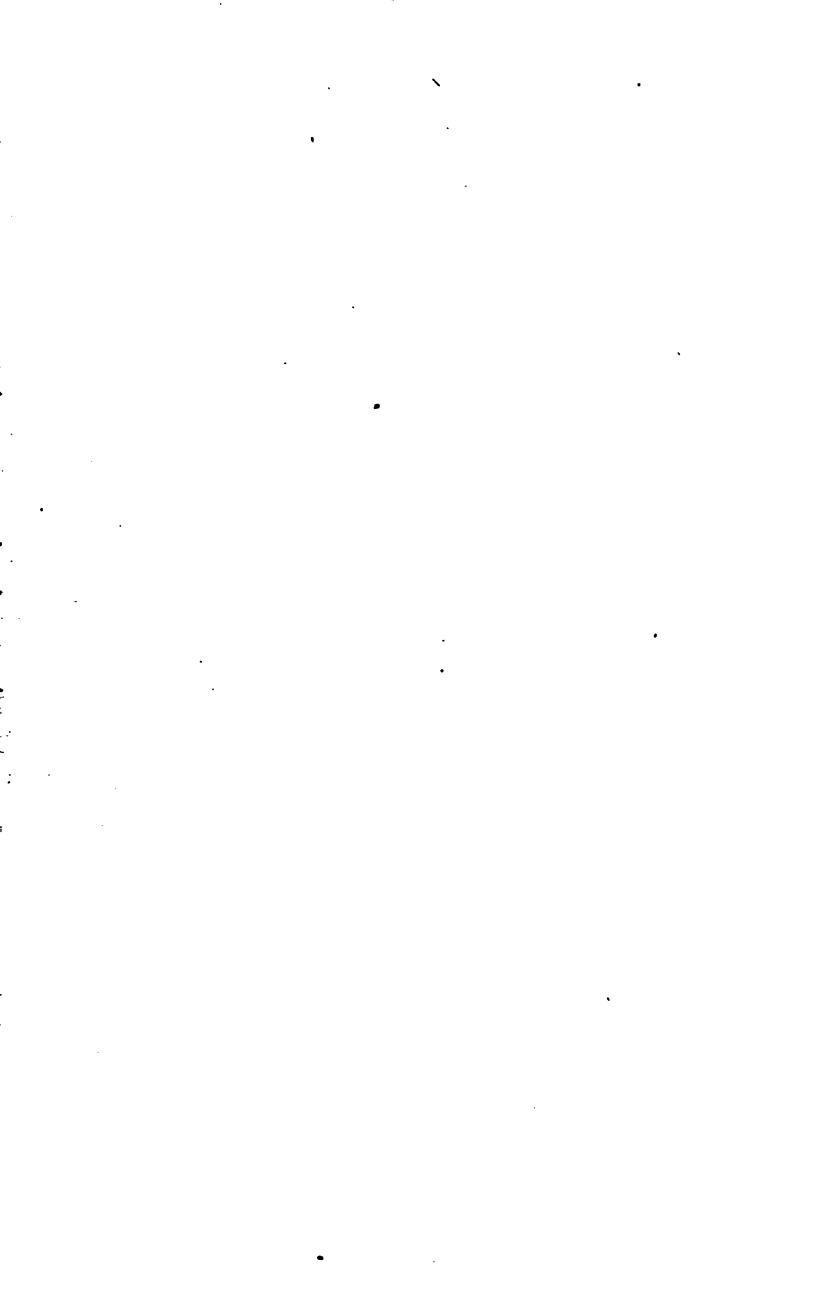
The first edition of this work having been for some time out of print, it seemed proper, in publishing a new edition, to alter its plan in some respects, in order to facilitate the study of German Grammar by avoiding every thing which might discourage those who merely wish to acquire a practical knowledge of the German language. However, no one at all acquainted with the peculiar structure of this language, can be ignorant that it is in many respects and principally in its grammatical construction entirely different from both the ancient and the other modern languages; and that it is impossible for a stranger to speak German cor-

rectly, without having a previous knowledge of the theoretical part of grammar and applying this knowledge to the practical rules which must be observed in learning a foreign language. There are, it is true, many German Grammars, published for the use of Englishmen, which profess to avoid every difficulty founded on the nature of the German language, and try to do away with all the theory, giving only unscientific rules and exercises, and applying themselves more to the memory than to the understanding. Whatever success this method may have been attended with in the study of other modern languages, it has long been found useless in German, and it is in our days scarcely adhered to except by such teachers, as are themselves ignorant of the peculiar nature and grammatical structure of the language, and accordingly incapable of leading to a full understanding of it. Moreover, rules which are extremely simple, when founded upon proper theory, are frequently rendered very complicated and incomplete, when separated from their natural basis; and thus the study of the language is rendered notoriously difficult to foreigners.

The author is fully aware, that in introducing to the English reader a terminology in a great measure new, and in devoting more attention than is usually done, to the theoretical part of the Grammar, he incurs the risk of discouraging some of those, who are entire strangers to the principles of Grammar; but he may be permitted to state that a long experience in teaching the principles of the German language to Englishmen, appears to him fully to prove the practical advantages of the method, which he recommends. This new edition accordingly is, like the first, founded upon the author's system of German Grammar, which has been adopted by almost all modern German Grammarians, and has been introduced into a great number of our own schools. On the other hand, this edition must be considered as a new work of an entirely practical tendency. Being sensible of the difficulty of the German language, the author has been careful not only to avoid all those difficult parts of grammatical theory, which are not indispensably necessary for the beginner, but also to explain in a popular and intelligible way whatever might afford any difficulty to persons hitherto

45. 68.





such as are found in any of our numerous Anthologies.

In conclusion the student must not expect in a work like the present, intended to teach the Elements of the German language in a manner at once simple and practical, a full account of the peculiarities and anomalies of the Language. Those desirous of extending their studies farther in this direction, are referred to the author's larger and more extended Grammar (Becker's Schulgrammatik).

The present Grammar has been edited, in accordance with the principles explained above, under the author's direction, by his son, Mr. Bernhard Becker.

Offenbach, near Frankfort on the Maine.

June 22d 1845.

A. F. Becker.

C O N T E N T S.

PART I.

E t y m o l o g y.

	Pag.
CHAP. I. Of the letters and their pronunciation. §§.	
1—20	1
I. Vowels p. 2. Accent 3. Long and short vowels 4.	
II. Consonants 6. Capital letters 9. Reading exercises 10.	
CHAP. II. Of the parts of speech. §§. 21—49. . .	22
Subject and Predicate p. 22. Notional words and Relational words 23. Relations of Notions to other Notions	
24. Compound sentence 26. Relations of Notions to the speaker 28. Relation of sentences to the speaker	
30. Notional words. Verb 33. Substantive 34. Adjective. Relational words, Adverbs 35. Auxiliary verbs 35.	
Article, Pronouns, Numerals 36. Prepositions, Conjunctions, Relational Adverbs, Interjections 37.	
CHAP. III. Of the Formation of words. §§. 50—64 .	38
1. Derivation p. 38. I. Primary Derivatives 39. II. Secondary Derivatives 42. Affixes 43. 2. Composition 52.	
CHAP. IV. Of Verbs. §§. 65—95.	61
Conjugation p. 65. Simple forms of the Verb 69. Compound forms of Conjugation 72. Change of vowel in	

the Ancient Form 76. Alphabetic list of Verbs of the Ancient Form 90. Use of the Auxiliary Verbs <i>haben</i> and <i>sein</i> 92. Specimen of Conjugation 96.	
CHAP. V. Of Substantives. §§. 96—126	104
Gender p. 105. Declension 113. Of Proper Names 121. Use of the Articles 122. Plural Number 125.	
CHAP. VI. Of Adjectives. §§. 127—136	128
Declension p. 129. Comparison 136.	
CHAP. VII. Of Pronouns. §§. 137—156	137
Personal Pronouns p. 138. Demonstrative 139. Interrogative 140. Pronouns contracted with Prepositions 141. On the Use of Pronouns 141. Personal 141. Reflective 144. Possessive 145. Demonstrative 145. Correlative 148. Interrogative 150. Indefinite Pronouns 151.	
CHAP. VIII. Of Numerals. §§ 157—105	153
Definite p. 154. Indefinite Numerals 157.	
CHAP. IX. Of Adverbs §§. 166—174	162
Adverbs of Manner 162. of Locality 164. of Time 165. of causality 166. of Intensity 166. of Frequency 167. of Modality 167.	
CHAP. X. Of Prepositions. §§. 175—177	167
Original Prepositions p. 168. Derivative Prepositions 170.	
CHAP. XI. Of Conjunctions. §§. 178—182	171
Subordinative p. 172. Coordinative Conjunctions 173.	

P A R T II.

Syntax §. 183	176
Section I. Syntax of the Predicative Combination.	
CHAP. I. Of the Subject and Predicate, and their forms. §§. 184—201	177
Construction p. 178. Forms of the Subject 184. Predicate 185. its forms 186.	
CHAP. II. Of Active, Passive, Reflective and Impersonal Verbs. §§. 202—212	192
Use of the Passive Form p. 193. of the Reflective Verb 196. Impersonal Sentences 201.	

	Pag.
CHAP. III. Modality of the Predicate. §§. 213—220.	204
Affirmation and Negation p. 204. Possibility and Necessity of the Predicate 205.	
CHAP. IV. Of the Use of the Tenses. §§. 221—225	210
CHAP. V. Of the Use of the Moods. §§. 226—232	214
Section II. Syntax of the Attributive Combination.	
CHAP. VI. §§. 233—245	223
Forms of the Attribute p. 223. Attributive Adjective 224. Apposition 226. Attributive Substantive in the Genitive Case 227. Partitive Genitive 228. Attributive Substantive with a Preposition 231. Attributive Combination expressed by Compounds 232.	
Section III. Syntax of the Objective Combination.	
CHAP. VII. Classification of Objects. §§. 246—259	234
Completing and Adverbial Objects p. 234. Completing Objects 236. Adverbial Objects 240. Analysis 242. Arrangement of Objects 245.	
CHAP. VIII. Object in the Accusative Case. §§. 260—263	248
CHAP. IX. Personal Object in the Dative Case. §§. 264—273	253
CHAP. X. Genitive Object. §§. 274—279	260
CHAP. XI. Factitive Object. §§. 280—289	272
CHAP. XII. Object of Locality. §§. 290—299	279
Locality in a proper sense 281. in a metaphorical sense 284. Adverbs of Locality 286.	
CHAP. XIII. Object of Time. §§. 300—308	288
Point of Time p. 288. Duration of Time 291. Adverbs of Time 292.	
CHAP. XIV. Object of Manner. §§. 309—310	294
CHAP. XV. Object of Causality. §§. 311—319	296
Cause p. 297. The Means, the Materials 298. The Argument, the Motive 299. The Purpose 300.	
CHAP. XVI. Object of Co-existence. §§. 320—323	302
Gerund p. 303. Prepositions 304.	

	Page.
Section IV. Syntax of the Compound Sentence.	
§. 324	306
CHAP. XVII. Accessory Sentences. §§. 325—344 . .	307
Substantive p. 309. Adjective 310. Adverbial Accessory Sentences 314. of Time 315. of Manner 317. of Causality 320. of Co-existence 323.	
CHAP. XVIII. Of Verbals, and contracted Accessory Sentences. §§. 345—350	324
Infinitive p. 325. Participle 326. Contracted Accessory Sentences 327.	
CHAP. XIX. Co-ordination. §§. 351	332



GERMAN GRAMMAR.

PART I.

ETYMOLOGY.

CHAPTER I.

OF THE LETTERS AND THEIR PRONUNCIATION.

The German alphabet contains the same letters as the English :

A	a = a	J	j = j	S	ſ s = soft s
B	b = b	K	k = k	ß	= sharp s
C	c = c	L	l = l	T	t = t
D	d = d	M	m = m	U	u = u
E	e = e	N	n = n	V	v = v
F	f = f	O	o = o	W	w = w
G	g = g	P	p = p	X	x = x
H	h = h	Q	q = q	Y	y = y
I	i = i	R	r = r	Z	z = z

but some of these letters are pronounced in a manner different from the English.

(OBSERVATION. *ſ* is used in the beginning, *s* in the end of syllables, e. g. *ſehr*, *ſingen*, *le-ſen*, *laß*, *Hauß*, *Haü-ſer*, *häuß-lich*.

I. Vowels.

- 2 The sounds of the vowels in German are not materially altered by their position, as is the case in English: they are generally pronounced in the same manner in every position *).

German grammar divides the vowel sounds into:

1. the *primary* vowels:

a	pronounced like the French a, or E. a	in: father
e	" " " " " é, " " e, a	in: lend, name,
i	" " " " " i, " " i, e	in: bit, we
o	" " " " " o, " " o	in: on, rose,
u	" " " " " ou, " " u	in: bull, rude,

These are either *long* as in: *fam*, *Hahn*, *sehr*, *Meer*, *den*, *dir*, *mir*, *Dhr*, *Sohn*, *Thron*, *Huhn*, *Stuhl*, *du*, or *short* as in: *Kamm*, *fann*, *Karl*, *Herr*, *Fell*, *Welt*, *toll*, *Nord*, *Ort*, *Schutt*, *Hund*, *rund*.

2. the *modified* vowels:

ä pronounced like the French è

ö	" " " " "	eu
ü	" " " " "	u

These are *modifications* of the vowels a, o, u, caused by certain transformations of the words, e. g. in the formation of the plural number of many substantives, e. g.

long:	<i>Hahn</i> ,	plural	<i>Hähne</i>
	<i>Sohn</i> ,	"	<i>Söhne</i>
	<i>Stuhl</i> ,	"	<i>Stühle</i>
short:	<i>Kamm</i> ,	"	<i>Kämme</i>
	<i>Ort</i> ,	"	<i>Orter</i>
	<i>Sturm</i> ,	"	<i>Stürme</i> .

* Different languages always differ even in the pronunciation of the same sounds, and it is not possible to explain the peculiar sounds of the vowels of one language, by comparing them with those of another. The following directions concerning the pronunciation of German vowels, accordingly, are not to be considered as sufficient, and the learner in this respect must be referred to oral instruction.

3. the *diphthongs*:

ei *) pronounced like the E. y in: my, why

eu " " " " " oy in: boy

au " " " " " ou in: now, how

au is modified into äu, which is pronounced like eu.

Diphthongs are *long*, e. g. mein, dein, fein, neu, Heu, treu, Baum, Traum, Bäume, Träume.

OBSERVATION 1. The German letter *ȳ* (ypsilon) is never used as the sign of a consonant like the English y, but is always a vowel. Instead of the English y e. g. in such words as year, yes, the German language uses j, as in Jahr, ja. The letter *ȳ* only occurs at present in words of Greek origin, and then takes the sound of ü, e. g. Tyranntyrant, Mythologie mythology. Formerly the letter *ȳ* was used in some German words instead of i, principally in the diphthong ei, ey (seyn to be, bey at, instead of sein, bei). But this mode of spelling has been entirely rejected in modern German grammar.

OBSERVATION 2. The diphthong ai occurs in a few words only (der Main the river Main, der Hain the forest, die Waise orphan, der Rain grass-plot, Baiern Bavaria), and is pronounced almost like ei or like the E. aye.

The only difference in the pronunciation of German vowels arises from their being

- a. either accented or unaccented,
- b. either long or short.

a. ACCENT.

The accent of German words is regulated according to the same principles by which that of English words of Anglo-saxon origin is regulated. The primitive syllable, which is in general the first syllable of the word, takes the *principal accent*, whilst prefixes and affixes take either the *subordinate accent* or none at all, e. g.

*) This diphthong ei is not to be confounded with *te* which is no diphthong, but denotes a simple sound viz. that of long i, e. g. *fiel* is pronounced like *feel*, *fier* like *fear*.

Water	father	erstaunen	astonish
Better	weather	erwachen	awake
golden	golden	beweinen	bewail
mächtig	mighty	Erlaubniß	allowance
Freundschaft	friendship	Unternehmer	undertaker
Christenthum	christendom	Unternehmung	undertaking.

In particular, all terminations and affixes are *unaccented*, except: *lei, lein, ling, heit, feil, schaft, thum, sal, ung, bar, sam, haft, icht*, which take the semi-accent, and *ei, iren*, which take the principal accent.

The prefixes *be, er, ver, ent, zer* and the augment *ge* (see §. 51) are *unaccented*; the prefixes *durch, hinter, über, unter, um, wider, miß, voll*, are *semi-accented*, or take the *principal accent*, according to their different value (see §. 63); all other prefixes take the *principal accent*.

The personal pronouns, articles, and the monosyllable forms of the verb *sein* (to be) are *unaccented*. All other auxiliary verbs, pronouns, prepositions, and conjunctions are *semi-accented*.

b. LONG AND SHORT VOWELS.

- 4 All diphthongs are *long*.

All unaccented vowels are *short*.

A simple vowel accented is *short* when followed by a double consonant or two consonants originally belonging to the same syllable *).

Exceptions 1. The letter *h*, when connected with an other consonant, is only a sign of length; the preceding vowel accordingly is long, e. g. *Wuth* rage, *Rath* council, *roth* red etc

*) If the connexion of two consonants is effected merely by a combination of two words, this has no influence upon the preceding vowel: thus the vowel is long in the first part of the following compound words: *Tagwerk* days-work. *Todbett* death-bed. *Blutdurst* thirst after blood. The same is the case, if the second consonant belongs to an affix or termination, added by inflection or derivation: the preceding vowel is then long, e. g. in *lieb-lisch* lovely, *gelieb-t* loved (from *lieben*), *Gebur-t* birth (from *gebären* to bear), *Fahr-t* driving (from *fahren* to drive).

Art kind	Herb hearth	todt dead
Bart beard	Yferd horse	Bogt bailiff
zart tender	Schwert sword	Mond moon
Arzt physician	Werth value	Trost consolation
Warze wart	werth worth	wüßt waste
Magd maid-servant	Erde earth	Wüste desert
	Herde flock	husten to cough
	werden to become	Obst fruit.

If a short vowel is followed by a single consonant, ⁵ this consonant is in writing always *doubled*.

Long vowel.	Short vowel.
ſam, ſäme	Ramm, Rämme
Stahl, ſtählen	Stall, Ställe
ſtehlen, reden	ſtellen, retten
Beet, beten	Bett, betten
Stiel, ihm	ſtill, nimm
rieth, ſchien	ritt, Schiff
Sohn, ſchon	Sonne, Tonne
Bruder, Brüder etc.	Mutter, Mütter etc.

♠ is the double f, e. g. Glück, Noth, Stoth

Blig. Nutzen, trogen

wissen, lassen, essen

and that **ß** is not written but when followed by a vowel,
e. g. Fluß plur. Flüsse, Faß plur. Fässer, Haß, lassen, haßte.

ch and sch which express simple sounds (§. 7) must be considered as simple consonants: still they are never doubled in writing, although ch is often and sch always preceded by a short vowel, e. g. Voch, Bach, wach, Fisch, Tisch, waschen.

Consonants are not doubled in unaccented syllables and vowels e. g. *ich bin* I am, *er hat* he has, *an at*, *von from*, *mit with*, *ob if* etc. and in the adverbs *hin hence*, *weg away*, *ab off*, which commonly take the accent.

Signs of length.

- 6 Although it seems sufficient to mark short vowels in the manner already pointed out, German orthography, in a great many instances, distinguishes long vowels by particular *signs of length*, i. e. by letters which are not pronounced, but only mark the length of the vowel to which they are joined. This is done:

1. By *doubling* the vowels *a*, *e*, *o* in the following words:

Aal eel	Schnee snow	Moor moor, fen
Haar hair	See sea	Moos moss
Paar pair	Klee clover	Boot boat
Schaartroop, band	Heer army	and some words less
Saat seed	leer empty	usual.
Saal saloon	Meer sea	
Staat state	Speer spear	
	Beet garden-bed	
	Seele soul.	

2. By placing the vowel *e*, after long *i*, e. g. Bier beer, hier here (except in: mir to me, dir to thee, ihm to him, ihn him, ihnen to them or to you, wir we, ihr you or to her).

3. By placing the letter *h* after all other vowels e. g.

Jahr year	mehr more	Sohn son	Ruhm glory
Hahn cock	sehr very	Ohr ear	Huhn hen
wahr true	stehen to stand	Kohle coal	ruhen to rest.

II. Consonants.

- 7 The consonants in German are classed 1) according to the degree of their more or less perfect articulation, into *Semi-consonants*, *Liquids*, and *Mutes*; and 2) according to the organs, by the action of which they are formed, into *Palatal*, *Lingual*, and *Labial* sounds. The following table exhibits this classification of consonants and the English sounds, corresponding to them:

	Palatal	Lingual	Labial
Semi-consonants:	j (y)	ſ (soft s) ʃ (sh)	w (v)
Liquids:	ng (ng)	n (n) r (r) l (l)	m (m)
Mutes			
a. Tenuis:	f (k) q (q)	t or th (t)	p (p)
b. Mediae:	g (g, hard)	b (d)	b (b)
c. Aspirate:	ch (Scotch ch)	ß (sharp s) ß (ts)	f or v (f)

All consonants, used in the spelling of German words, ⁸ must be pronounced in reading or speaking, e. g. Knabe, Knecht, Licht, Halm, Löwe, Wunde, Freundschaft, jetzt etc. The letter **h** (h) alone is silent, when standing at the end of words or between two vowels; thus the words froh glad, nah near, nahen to approach, blühen to bloom, are pronounced like fro, na, na-en, blü-en.

The sound of **th** differs in no respect from that of **t**, e. g. the words der Thau dew, der Thon clay, are pronounced like das Tau rope, der Ton tone. The sound of the English **th** is not known in German.

The soft consonants **b**, **d**, **g**, **s**, when employed as *final* ⁹ consonants are *hardened*, and pronounced

b like p e. g. gab, lieb	like gap, liep
d " t e. g. Bad, Tod	" Bat, Tot
g " k e. g. Tag, Weg	" Tach, Wech
s " ß e. g. das Gras	" daß Graß.

When the preceding long vowel is shortened by derivation or inflection, the media is frequently changed into a tenuis, as in fliegen, flüch, leiden, litt, siedен, jott. When, at the same time, the tenuis **t** is added to the media as a termination, the media is commonly changed into the corresponding aspirate, as in Schlacht, Buht, Nacht, mochte, from schlagen, biegen, mögen; and Gift, Schrift, Trift, from geben, schreiben, treiben. In the same way

The sounds of the E. j and w do not occur in German.

The sound of f is almost as soft as that of the E. z in zone zeal (except the final s which is hardened §. 9), e. g. Sohn son, Sonne sun, Seele soul, reisen to travel, Haus house, Gras grass etc.

CAPITAL LETTERS

are used in German in all those cases, in which they ¹³ are employed in English. Capital letters are moreover used in the beginning of

1. all substantives and all words used substantively,
2. all pronouns used in addressing persons.

The pronoun ich I, on the contrary, is written with a capital initial after a full stop only.

READING EXERCICES.

- 14 Der Mensch denkt, Gott lenkt.
 Man devises, God disposes.
 Die Jugend vergeht, die Tugend besteht.
 Youth fades, virtue endures.
 Noth kennt kein Gebot.
 Necessity has (knows) no law.
 Noth bricht Eisen.
 Necessity will break iron.
 Neue Besen fegen gut.
 New brooms sweep clean (well).
 Der Abend krönt den Tag.
 The evening crowns the day.
 Übung macht den Meister.
 Practice makes perfect.
 Ein gebranntes Kind scheut das Feuer.
 A burnt child dreads the fire.
 Gelegenheit macht Diebe.
 Opportunity makes the thief.
 Ein edles Herz glänzt hell und hold,
 Ein gutes ist gediegenes Gold.
 A noble heart shines bright and kind,
 A good heart is solid gold.
 Noth lehrt beten.
 Need teaches to pray.
 Salz und Brot macht Wangen roth.
 Salt and bread make cheeks red.
- 15 Aller Anfang ist schwer.
 (All) beginning is difficult.
 Die Kunst ist lang, das Leben ist kurz.
 Art is long, life is short.

Stille Wasser sind tief.

Still waters run (are) deep.

Schweigen ist nicht immer gut.

Silence is not always good.

Ein Wolf im Schlaf fängt nie ein Schaf.

A sleeping wolf will never catch a sheep.

Ein tröstliches Wort ist des Gemüthes Speise.

A consolatory word is food for the mind.

Man soll den Tag nicht vor dem Abend loben.

One must not praise the day before night.

Ein guter Nachbar ist ein edles Kleinod.

A good neighbour is a precious jewel

Eine böse Zunge richtet oft viel Unglück an.

An evil tongue often causes much misfortune.

Gestrengte Herren regiren nicht lange.

Severe masters do not govern long.

An Gottes Segen ist Alles gelegen.

Every thing depends on God's blessing.

Morgenstunde hat Gold im Munde.

Early rising brings wealth.

Armut ist keine Schande.

Poverty is no crime.

Bei Nacht sind alle Katzen grau.

By night all cats are grey.

Jeder ist seines Glückes Schmied.

Every man is the architect of his own fortune.

Des Volkes Stimme ist Gottes Stimme.

The voice of the people is the voice of God.

Geduld überwindet Alles.

Patience overcomes every thing.

Wer rasch steigt, fällt plötzlich.

He who mounts rapidly, falls suddenly.

Wer bald gibt, gibt doppelt.

He who gives seasonably, gives double.

Wenn die Noth am größten ist, ist Gott am nächsten.
When need is at the greatest, God is nearest.

Leichter träget, was er träget,
Wer Geduld zur Bürde leget.

He can carry what he bears with greater ease, who
adds patience to his burdens.

Mit einem Herren steht es gut,
Der, was er befohlen, selber thut.

That master fares well who himself does what he
commands.

Ehre ist des Mannes Herz,
Demuth führt uns himmelwärts;
Strenge, die sich selbst bezwingt,
Schafft im Leben, was gelingt;
Treu' umfaßt sie alle drei,
Lieb' und Frieden noch dabei.

Honour is the soul (heart) of man; humility guides
us heavenwards; that severity which conquers itself,
is successful; in life fidelity embraces the whole three,
with love and peace in addition.

Wer Freunde sucht, ist sie zu finden werth;
Wer keinen hat, hat keinen noch begehrt.

He who seeks a friend, deserves to find one. He
who has none, has wished for none.

Geld bringt Gunst, aber nicht Kunst.
Money brings favour, but not skill.

Gott läßt uns wol sinken, aber nicht ertrinken.
God suffers us to sink, but not to be drowned.

Die Wahrheit richtet sich nicht nach uns, sondern wir
müssen uns nach ihr richten.

Truth does not conform herself to us, but we must
conform ourselves to her.

Wer da redet, was ihn gelüstet, der muß oft hören,
was er nicht gern höret.

He who speaks whatever he likes, must often hear
that which he does not like.

Eyheu und ein zärtlich Gemüth
 Heftet sich an und grünt und blüht;
 Kann es weder Stamm noch Mauer finden,
 Es muß verdorren, es muß verschwinden. Götthe.

A tender heart is like ivy, it cleaves (to the object of its affection) and puts forth leaves and blossoms; but if it finds neither tree nor wall, it speedily withers away.

Ah, was soll der Mensch verlangen?

17

Ist es besser ruhig bleiben?

Klammernd fest sich anzuhängen?

Ist es besser sich zu treiben?

Soll er sich ein Häuslein bauen?

Soll er unter Zelten leben?

Soll er auf die Felsen trauen?

Selbst die festen Felsen beben.

Eines schickt sich nicht für Alle.

Sehe jeder, wie er's treibe!

Sehe jeder, wo er bleibe,

Und wer steht, daß er nicht falle!

Götthe.

Ah, what shall man wish for?

Is it better to remain quiet

in confiding trustfulness?

Or is it better to wander around?

Shall he build himself a cabin?

Shall he live under tents?

Shall he place his trust in rocks?

Even the strong rocks tremble.

The same thing does not suit every body.

Let each see to his own actions,

each to his own station,

and let him who stands, take heed lest he fall.

Geh! gehorche meinen Winken,
 Nütze deine jungen Tage,
 Lerne zeitig klüger sein!
 Auf des Glückes großer Wage
 Steht die Zunge selten ein.
 Du mußt steigen oder sinken,
 Du mußt herrschen und gewinnen,
 Oder dienen und verlieren,
 Leiden oder triumphiren,
 Amboss oder Hammer sein. Göthe.

Lied eines alten schwäbischen Ritters an seinen Sohn.

Sohn, da hast du meinen Speer,
 Meinem Arm ist er zu schwer;
 Nimm den Schild und dies Geschosß,
 Tummle du fortan mein Rosß.
 Siehe, dieses greise Haar
 Deckt der Helm schon fünfzig Jahr;
 Jedes Jahr hat eine Schlacht
 Schwert und Streitart stumpf gemacht.

Herzog Rudolf hat dies Schwert,
 Art und Kolbe mir verehrt;
 Denn ich blieb dem Herzog hold
 Und verschmähte Heinrichs Gold.

Für die Freiheit floß das Blut
 Seiner Rechten; Rudolfs Muth
 That mit seiner linken Hand
 Noch dem Franken Widerstand.

Nimm die Wehr und wappne dich!
 Kaiser Konrad rüstet sich.
 Sohn, entlaste mich des Harns
 Ob der Schwäche meines Arms.

Züde nie umsonst dies Schwert
 Für der Väter freien Herd!
 Sei behutsam auf der Wacht,
 Sei ein Wetter in der Schlacht!

Go, follow my advice,
profit by your youth,
and learn betimes to be wise.
In the great balance (scales) of fortune
the tongue is rarely steady.
Thou must rise or fall,
rule and win,
or obey and lose,
suffer or triumph,
be the anvil or the hammer.

Song of an old Suabian knight to his son.

Son, there hast thou my spear,
it is too heavy for my arm;
take the shield and this dart,
manage thou henceforth my horse.

See, the helmet covers
this white hair for fifty years;
every year has a battle
blunted sword and battle-axe.

Duke Rodolf has this sword,
axe and club to me presented;
for I remained faithful to the Duke,
and despised Henry's gold

The blood of his right hand for freedom flow'd;
with his left hand
Rodolph's courage still
opposed the Frank (Henry).

Take the weapons and arm thyself!
Emperor Conrad equips himself.
Son, unburden me of sorrow
on account of the weakness of my arm.

Never draw this sword in vain
for the free hearth of thy fathers!
Be careful when upon the watch,
be a tempest in the battle.

Immer sei zum Kampf bereit,
Suche stets den wärmsten Streit!
Schone deß, der wehrlos steht,
Haue den, der widersteht!

Wenn dein Hause wankend steht,
Ihm umsonst das Fähnlein weht,
Trobe dann, ein fester Thurm,
Der vereinten Feinde Sturm.

Deine Brüder fraß das Schwert,
Sieben Knaben, Deutschlands werth;
Deine Mutter härmte sich
Stumm und starrend, und verblich.

Einsam bin ich nun und schwach;
Aber, Knabe, deine Schmach
Wär' mir herber siebenmal,
Denn der sieben Andern Fall.

Drum so scheue nicht den Tod,
Und vertraue deinem Gott!
So du kämpfdest ritterlich,
Freut dein alter Vater sich.

Stolberg.

Fabeln von Lessing.

Der Adler.

18 Man fragte den Adler: Warum erziehst du deine Jungen so hoch in der Luft?

Der Adler antwortete: Würden sie sich, erwachsen, so nahe zur Sonne wagen, wenn ich sie tief an der Erde erzöge?

Der Wolf und der Schäfer.

Ein Schäfer hatte durch eine grausame Seuche seine ganze Herde verloren. Das erfuhr der Wolf, und kam seine Con-
dolenz abzustatten.

Schäfer, sprach er, ist es wahr, daß dich ein so graufames Unglück betroffen (hat)? Du bist um deine ganze

Always be ready for the combat,
constantly seek the warmest struggle!
Spare him who unarmed implores,
strike him who resists!

If thy party waver,
if in vain their banner waves,
then defy, like a strong tower,
the storm of the combined enemy.

The sword devoured thy brothers,
seven youths, worthy of Germany;
thy mother grieved,
silent and aghast, and died.

Lonely am I now and weak,
but, boy, thy dishonour
were seventimes more bitter to me
than the fall of the seven others.

Do not then shun death,
but trust in thy God!
If thou fightest warrior like,
thy old father will be rejoiced.

FABLES BY LESSING.

The eagle.

The eagle was asked: Why do you bring up your 18 young ones so high in the air?

The eagle answered: Would they, when grown up, venture so near the sun, if I were to bring them up below, near the earth?

The wolf and the shepherd.

A shepherd had lost all his flock by a grievous disease. The wolf heard this, and came to offer his condolence.

Shepherd, said he, is it true, that so cruel a calamity has befallen you? You are deprived of your whole flock?

Herde gekommen? Die liebe, fromme, fette Herde! Du dauerst mich, und ich möchte blutige Thränen weinen.

Habe Dank, Meister Siegrim, versetzte der Schäfer. Ich sehe, du hast ein sehr mitleidiges Herz.

Das hat er auch wirklich, fügte des Schäfers Hund hinzu, so oft er unter dem Unglück seines Nächsten selbst leidet.

Das Roß und der Stier.

Auf einem feurigen Roße flog stolz ein Knabe daher. Da rief ein wilder Stier dem Roße zu: Schande! von einem Knaben ließ' ich mich nicht regiren!

Aber ich, versetzte das Roß. Denn was für Ehre könnte es mir bringen, einen Knaben abzuwerfen?

Die Sperlinge.

- 19 Eine alte Kirche, welche den Sperlingen unzählige Nester gab, ward ausgebeffert. Als sie nun in ihrem neuen Glanze dastand, kamen die Sperlinge wieder, ihre alten Wohnungen zu suchen. Allein sie fanden sie alle vermauert. Zu was, schrien sie, taugt denn nun das große Gebäude? Kommt, verlaßt den unbrauchbaren Steinhaufen!

Der Fuchs und der Storch.

Erzähle mir doch etwas von den fremden Ländern, die du alle gesehen hast, sagte der Fuchs zu dem weitgereisten Storche.

Hierauf fing der Storch an, ihm jeden Sumpf und jede feuchte Wiese zu nennen, wo er die schmachhaftesten Würmer und die fettesten Frösche geschmaust hatte.

Sie sind lange in Paris gewesen, mein Herr. Wo speiset man da am besten? Was für Weine haben Sie da am meisten nach Ihrem Geschmade gefunden?

Herkules.

Als Herkules in den Himmel aufgenommen wurde, machte er seinen Gruß unter allen Göttern der Juno zuerst. Der ganze Himmel und Juno erstaunte darüber. Deiner Fein-

The dear, harmless, fat flock ! I pity you, and I could shed tears of blood.

I thank you, master wolf, replied the shepherd. I see, you have a very compassionate heart.

That he has indeed, added the shepherd's dog, as often as he himself suffers by the misfortunes of his neighbour.

The horse and the bull.

A daring boy was galloping proudly along on a fiery horse. A wild bull cried out to the horse: Shame! I would not let myself be governed by a boy!

But I will, replied the horse. What honour could it bring me to throw a boy?

The sparrows.

An old church, which afforded innumerable nests to 19 the sparrows, was under repair. When it stood there in its new splendour, the sparrows came back to seek for their old habitations. But they found them all built up. Of what use now is that large edifice, cried they. come, leave the useless mass of stones!

The fox and the stork.

Tell me, if you please, something about foreign lands, all of which you have seen, said the fox to the far travelled stork.

Whereupon the stork began to mention to him every pool and every moist meadow, where he had tasted the most savoury worms and the fattest frogs.

You have been staying at Paris a long time, Sir. Where did you get the best dinners? Which wine did you find most to your taste?

Hercules.

When Hercules was received into heaven, he greeted Juno the first of all the Gods. The whole heaven and Juno were astonished. Meetest thou thine enemy,

din, rief man ihm zu, begehnest du so vorzüglich? Ja, ihr selbst, erwiederte Herkules. Nur ihre Verfolgungen sind es, die mir zu den Thaten Gelegenheit gegeben, womit ich den Himmel verdient habe.

Der Olymp billigte die Antwort des neuen Gottes, und Juno ward versöhnt.

20

Der Wolf auf dem Todbette.

Der Wolf lag in den letzten Zügen und schickte einen prüfenden Blick auf sein vergangenes Leben zurück. Ich bin freilich ein Sünder, sagte er; aber doch, hoffe ich, keiner von den größten. Ich habe Böses gethan, aber auch viel Gutes. Einmals, erinnere ich mich, kam mir ein blöden- des Lamm, welches sich von der Herde verirrt hatte, so nahe, daß ich es leicht hätte erwürgen können; und ich that ihm nichts. Zu eben dieser Zeit hörte ich die Spöttereien und Schmähungen eines Schafes mit der bewundernswürdigsten Gleichgültigkeit an, ob ich schon keine schützenden Hunde zu fürchten hatte.

Und das alles kann ich dir bezeugen, fiel ihm Freund Fuchs, der ihn zum Tode bereiten half, ins Wort. Denn ich erinnere mich noch gar wohl aller Umstände dabei. Es war zu eben der Zeit, als du dich an dem Beine so jämmerlich würgtest, das dir der gutherzige Kranich hernach aus dem Schlunde zog.

Der Esel und der Wolf.

Ein Esel begegnete einem hungrigen Wolfe. Habe Mitleiden mit mir, sagte der zitternde Esel; ich bin ein armes krankes Thier; sieh nur, was für einen Dorn ich mir in den Fuß getreten habe!

Wahrhaftig, du dauerst mich, versetzte der Wolf; und ich finde mich in meinem Gewissen verbunden, dich von diesen Schmerzen zu befreien.

Raum war das Wort gesagt, so war der Esel zerrissen.

cried they to him, with such preference? Yes, replied Hercules, it is only her persecutions which have given me an opportunity of performing those acts by which I have merited heaven

Olympus applauded the answer of the new god, and Juno was appeased.

The wolf on his death bed.

20

The wolf was lying in his last extremities and cast an examining glance on his past life. I am indeed a sinner, said he, but still, I hope, not one of the greatest. I have done what is evil, but also much that is good. Once upon a time, I remember, a bleating lamb, which had strayed from the herd, came so near me, that I could easily have despatched it; but I did it no injury. Just at the same time I heard the reproaches and abuse of a sheep with the most admirable indifference, although I had no protecting dogs to fear.

I can bear witness of all that, said his friend the fox, who came to prepare him for death. For I remember very well all the circumstances attendant on it. It was at the very time that you were so pityfully throttled by the bone, which the goodhearted crane afterwards drew out of your throat.

The ass and the wolf.

An ass met a hungry wolf. Have pity on me, said the ass, trembling; I am a poor sick animal; see what a thorn I have got in my foot!

Really, I pity you, replied the wolf; and I find myself bound in conscience, to relieve you from your pain.

These words were scarcely spoken, when the ass was torn to pieces.

CHAPTER II.

OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

- 21 Speech is the expression of thoughts by words. A thought expressed by words is a *Sentence*. Sentences are either

1. *simple*, as those in §. 14 and 15, or

2. *compound*, i. e. consisting of two or more simple sentences joined together, as those in §. 16.

A simple sentence (e. g. Man devises. God disposes. Youth fades. Virtue endures. New brooms, sweep clean. The school of experience teaches many useful lessons) consist of *two members*, viz:

1. The **Subject**, i. e. the person or thing spoken of e. g. Man, God, youth, virtue, new brooms, the school of experience.

2. The **Predicate**, i. e. that which is affirmed of the subject e. g. devises, disposes, fades, endures, sweep clean, teaches many useful lessons.

- 22 Both the subject and the predicate are either *simple* e. g. Man, God, youth, virtue—devises, disposes, fades, endures,—or *compound*, e. g. new brooms, the school of experience—sweep clean, teaches many useful lessons.

1. *Simple subject and simple predicate.*

The simple subject is expressed by a *substantive*, e. g. Man, God, youth, virtue.

The simple predicate is expressed by a *verb*, e. g. devises, disposes, fades, endures.

A substantive is the name of a person or thing or abstract quality.

A verb is a word which affirms. Verbs generally express actions.

2. *Compound subject and compound predicate.*

Substantives and verbs express *notions*, i. e. ideas of 23 beings or actions, formed in the mind. They are the essential parts of speech, and are termed **Notional words**. All notional words, however, express ideas in a *general* way, without distinguishing the particular species or individual being, or the particulars of an action. If therefore a particular species or individual or the particulars of an action are to be expressed, we add to the notional word other words individualizing its signification, in order to *limit* its general extent to a particular species or individual being or to a particular action, by expressing the particular *relations* in which the notion stands either to other notions or to the person speaking. Thus, *child*, is a general term to denote the whole of a species; in order to define the individual, the child of which we are speaking, we must say: The *young* child, or, the child of *my brother*, *my* child, *this* child etc. The verbs, to *read*, to *go* etc., are general terms denoting such actions; we must therefore add, *what* the child reads, *where* it goes etc.—reads *a novel*, goes *to church*, *will go home* etc.

Thus the subject as well as the predicate is often found to be *compound*, and from the substantive (subject) and verb (predicate) must be distinguished those accessory parts, which are added to explain in a more distinct way the particular *Relations, which the notions bear*

I. *to other notions,*

II. *to the person speaking.*

These relations are expressed

a. by **Relational words**, i. e. words which do not in themselves represent an idea or notion, like verbs and substantives, but merely point out the *relation* (the particular kind of connexion), existing between two notional words, or between a notional word and the speaker. Thus in "the brother of my friend just arrived from

town", brother, friend, arrive, town are notional words; *the, of, my, just, from* are *relational words*; *of* connects friend and brother; *from* connects arrived and town; *my* friend, explains whose friend is meant, with reference to the speaker; *just* points out the time, when he arrived, with reference to the speaker (i. e. to the time present to the speaker).

b. by **forms of inflection**, viz. by *declension* and *conjugation*. Thus in "William's brother arrived" etc. the termination **s** expresses the relation between William and brother; **ed** shows the time of his arrival, with reference to the time in which the sentence is spoken.

24 **Relations of notions to other notions.**

The relation of the predicate to the subject is termed the *Predicative relation*, and the combination of the subject and predicate, the *Predicative combination*, e.g. Youth fades, the child reads.

All words, qualifying or individualizing a *substantive*, are termed its **Attributes**. The relation of an attribute to its substantive is termed the *Attributive relation*, and the combination of a substantive with its attribute, the *Attributive combination*, e. g. a young child, the old man, the child of my brother, the school of experience, many useful lessons.

A word which qualifies a substantive, is termed an *Adjective*, e. g. young (child), old (man), useful (lessons). Adjectives however are not only used as attributes qualifying substantives, but also when connected with the *auxiliary verb to be*, take the place of a predicate, e. g. the child is young. The man is old. Such lessons are useful.

- 25 All words qualifying or individualizing a *verb* or *adjective* are termed its **Objects**. The relation of an object to verb its or adjective is termed the *Objective relation*, and the combination of a verb or adjective with its object, the *Objective combination*, e. g. reads a novel,

goes home, teaches lessons, very young, useful to every body.

A word which qualifies a verb or adjective, is termed *Adverb* e. g. *very young, reads correctly, sweep clean*. Adverbs can only be used as objects qualifying a verb or adjective in a particular way (see Chapter VI.) thus the words *immer always, bald soon*, can take no other place in the sentence but that of an object of time; *hier here, da there, himmelwärts heavenwards*; are always objects of place etc.

When Attributes and Objects are expressed by *substantives*, the particular relation is expressed

1. by the *cases* of the substantive e. g. Gottes Segen. Des Volkes Stimme ist Gottes Stimme. Noth kennt kein Gebot. Noth bricht Eisen. Das Werk lobt den Meister.

2. by particular relational words, termed *Prepositions* e. g. ein Wolf im Schafspelz. Bei Nacht sind alle Ragen grau. Die Wahrheit richtet sich nicht nach uns.

The German language, like the Latin and Greek, distinguishes *four cases*, by particular terminations, viz.:

the *Nominative*, denoting the Subject;

the *Accusative*,

the *Dative*,

} denoting the Objects;

the *Genitive*, denoting Attributes and sometimes Objects.

The English language, having lost almost all inflection, is to a greater extent reduced to the use of prepositions than the ancient languages or the German; thus the Genitive case, still employed in: my father's house, the king's bench etc., is generally expressed by the preposition *of*, e. g. the house *of* my father. The Dative case is either denoted by the preposition *to* e. g. he has given the book *to* your brother; or it is not distinguished from the Accusative case, which has no sign; e. g. he has given your brother the books.

EXERCISES.

Analyze the sentences in §. 14 and 15 in the following way:

1) Distinguish the Subject and the Predicate of each e. g.

Subject.	Predicate.
der Mensch	denkt.
Gott	kennt.
Noth	kennt kein Gebot.
Neue Befehle	lehren gut.

2) Distinguish in the same sentences the Subject and its Attributes, the Predicate and its Objects, in the following way:

1. Ein gebranntes	Attribute of 2.
2. Kind	Subject of 3.
3. scheuet	Predicate of 2.
4. das Feuer	Object of 3.

Compound sentence.

27 Simple sentences are connected with one another so as to form compound sentences. This is done either

1. by way of *Subordination*, or
2. by way of *Co-ordination*.

1. Subordination.

One sentence, being dependant on another sentence in such a way as to be merely its subject or its attribute or object, is termed an **Accessory sentence**; the other is the **Principal sentence**. For instance in the sentence: "He who mounts rapidly, falls suddenly" the predicate is "falls suddenly" and the whole sentence "who mounts rapidly" is its subject. It is therefore termed a *subjective accessory sentence*.

In: "He can carry what he bears, with great ease", "he can carry with great ease", is the *principal sen-*

tence, the predicate of which (can carry) is explained by the accessory sentence "what he bears," which being the object of the verb "carry" is termed an *objective accessory sentence*. "That master fares well who himself does what he commands." "That master fares well" is the principal sentence; in order to explain the subject (master), an accessory sentence is added "who himself does what he commands", which accordingly is termed an *attributive accessory sentence*. This accessory sentence however contains again another accessory sentence (what he commands), which being an explanation of the predicate *does*, must be its object and consequently is an *objective accessory sentence*.

2. Co-ordination.

Two sentences, each of which has an independent 28 meaning or is intelligible without the other, as, Die Jugend vergeht — Die Tugend besteht, form a compound sentence by way of Co-ordination, if there exists between them a relation of opposition, causality etc. Die Jugend vergeht, aber die Tugend besteht. Die Wahrheit richtet sich nicht nach uns, sondern wir müssen uns nach ihr richten (§. 16.)

Herzog Rudolf hat dies Schwert,
Art und Kolbe mir verehrt;
Denn ich blieb dem Herzog hold
Und verschmähte Heinrichs Gold (§. 17.)

Co-ordinate sentences are generally *contracted*, when they have the same subject or the same predicate, thus Geld bringt Gunst, aber Geld bringt nicht Kunst, is contracted into: Geld bringt Gunst, aber nicht Kunst (§. 16).

The different relations by which two sentences are connected, either in subordination or co-ordination are generally expressed by particular *relational words*, termed *Conjunctions*, as, aber *but*, sondern *but*, denn *for*, und *and* etc.

EXERCISES.

Analyze the sentences in §. 16 in the following way:

1 Wer	{	Accessory	{	Subject of 3.
2 rasch		Sentence.		Object of 3.
3 steigt,		Subject of 4.		Predicate of 1.
4 fällt	{	Predicate of 1—3.	{	
5 plötzlich		Object of 4.		
1 Ehre	{		{	Subject of 4.
2 ist				
3 des Mannes				Attrib. of 4.
4 Herz,				Predicate of 1 *).
5 Demuth	{		{	Subject of 6.
6 führt				Predicate of 5.
7 uns				Object of 6.
8 himmelwärts.				Object of 6.
9 Strenge,	{		{	Subject of 13.
10 die		Acc.		Subject of 12.
11 sich selbst		Sent.		Object of 12.
12 bezwingt,		Attr. of 9.		Predicate of 10.
13 schafft				Predicate of 9.
14 im Leben,				Object of 13.
15 was		Acc. Sent.		Subject of 16.
16 gelingt.		Obj. of 13.		Predicate of 15.

Relations of notions to the speaker.

- 29 Persons or things as well as their actions are pointed out as individual beings and actions by *their relations to the speaker*, which are either *relations of notions of being*, or *relations of notions of action*.

*) The Predicate is sometimes expressed by a Substantive; see Syntax, Chapter I.

1. Relations of Beings to the speaker.

a. *Personality*. Three *Persons* are distinguished viz. 30

1. the person speaking (first person);
2. " " spoken to (second person);
3. " " or thing spoken of (third person).

These different persons are expressed by the *Personal pronouns*: *I, thou, he etc.*

b. *Limitation*. Substantives, being (§. 25) expressive of general ideas of a whole class of beings, their signification is limited and individualised,

1. by the *Demonstrative pronouns*, e. g. *this* man, *that* man, *such* a man, which points out exactly the person meant by the speaker,

2. by the *Article* which, being either *definite*, e. g. *the* man, or *indefinite*, e. g. *a* man, merely serves to indicate, whether the person or thing which is the subject of discourse, has been already pointed out and individualised by other means, or not.

c. *Number*. All substantives are either in the

1. *Singular*, or
2. *Plural number*.

Number and quantity are moreover expressed by particular relational words, termed *Numerals*.

2. Relations of Actions to the speaker.

a. *Time*. The time in which an action is performed 31 is *present*, *past*, or *Future*, with reference to the time in which we are speaking. This is expressed by the *Tenses* of the verb, and in a particular manner by *Adverbs of Time*, e. g. he goes, he went, he will go, he goes *now*, he will *soon* go.

b. *Modality*. All actions are conceived in the mind 32 as being either :

1. *Real actions*, e. g. he *goes*, or
2. *Possible*, e. g. he *may go*, he *likes* to go, or
3. *Necessary*, e. g. he *must go*, he *certainly* will go.

Possibility and necessity are expressed by relational words viz. *α) Auxiliary verbs of Modality*, e. g. may, can, shall, will, must etc.

β) Adverbs of Modality, e. g. *certainly*; "he *likes* to go", is in German: er *gehört gern*.

Positive and Negative assertion is also comprehended under the head of modality. An assertion is made negative by the *Adverbs of Negation* *not*, *no* *).

Relations of sentences to the speaker.

- 33 A sentence formed by the combination of a subject and predicate is either

1. an *Asserting sentence*, e. g. the master teaches, he does not teach; the scholars learn, they do not learn.

2. or an *Interrogative sentence*, expressing a question e. g. does the master teach? do the scholars learn?

3. or an *imperative sentence*, expressing command or entreaty e. g. teach him German! learn German!

In imperative sentences, the subject, being generally the person spoken to, is often suppressed.

- 34 There are moreover three moods of assertion:

a. The sentence is a real assertion of the speaker e. g. the master teaches.

* In this place some other relations of less importance are neglected, for sake of greater simplicity. The above mentioned alone are essential to every predicate.

This mood is termed the *Indicative mood*.

b. The sentence is an imaginary assertion, contradicting reality, e. g. if the master would teach better, the scholars would learn more.

This mood is termed the *Conditional mood*.

c. The sentence is an assertion of an other person, spoken of, or quoted by the speaker, e. g. Charles says, that his master teaches him German.

This mood, which is not distinguished in the English language, is termed in German grammar the *Conjunctive mood*.

These various conceptions of the same thought, affecting not any single part of the sentence, but the whole of it, and depending not so much upon the nature of things, as upon their conception in the mind of the speaker, are considered as *Relations of the Sentence to the speaker*, and comprehended under the term *Mood of the sentence*.

Mood is expressed

1. by a different arrangement in the order of the words, as in questions.

2. by the *moods of the verb* (Indicative, Conjunctive, Conditional, Imperative).

The following table will give a proper view of the 35 different relations, which are represented by language.

TABLE OF RELATIONS.

Relations of Notions (words)	to other notions	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Predicative combination of the Subject and its Predicate. 2. Attributive combination of the Substantive and its Attribute. 3. Objective combination of the Verb (or Adjective) and its Objects
	to the speaker	Personality Limitation Number Modality Time
Relations of Thoughts (sentences)	to other sentences	Coordination of two independent sentences. Subordination of the accessory sentence.
	to the speaker	Mood of the assertion, 1. Asserting sentence. a. Indicative mood. b. Conditional " c. Conjunctive " 2. Interrogative " 3. Imperative "

The following table shows the different classes of words, or *parts of speech*, by means of which thoughts are expressed:

TABLE OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

I. *Notional words*. §. 23.

1. Verb §. 22.
2. Substantive §. 22.
3. Adjective §. 24.
4. Adverb §. 25.

II. *Relational words* §. 23.

5. Auxilliary verbs §. 31 and 32.
6. Article §. 30.
7. Pronouns §. 29. and 30.
8. Numerals §. 30.
9. Prepositions §. 26.
10. Conjunctions §. 28.
11. Adverbs §. 25.

I. NOTIONAL WORDS.

1. **Verb.**

Verbs are either *Objective or Subjective*.

A verb is said to be objective, when it requires an ³⁶ object in order to be understood; e. g. I love him, he gives lessons, he pays his debts, he insists upon your coming, he complained of his bad health. A verb is subjective, when it requires no object, e. g. he sleeps, I shall go.

Verbs are either *Transitive or intransitive*.

A verb is said to be transitive, when the action re- ³⁷ quires a *suffering object* acted upon, in the accusative case; all other verbs are intransitive. Thus in: I love him, he gives lessons, he pays his debts, the verbs (love, give, pay) are transitive, whereas in: he insists upon your coming, he complained of his bad health, he sleeps, I shall go, the verbs are intransitive.

All transitive verbs are objective, and all subjective verbs are intransitive. The particulars of these definitions will be explained in Syntax.

Verbs are inflected by *Tense*, *Mood* and *Person*, in order to express the different relations of the predicate.

When a verb assumes the form and value of an adjective, it is termed *Participle*; when it takes that of a substantive, it is termed *Infinitive*.

2. Substantive.

38 Substantives are divided into *Concrete and Abstract*

Concrete substantives are the names of persons or things e. g. man, town, house, Frederick, Berlin. Abstract nouns are the names of actions, qualities or conditions e. g. journey, question, splendour, friendship.

Concrete substantives are either

Common names, i. e. names common to all the individuals of persons or things which constitute a class e. g. house, man, town; — or

Proper names, i. e. names proper to one individual e. g. Frederick, Berlin, Germany; — or

Names of materials, i. e. of things in which there is no idea of individuality, but only an aggregate notion e. g. water, sand, milk.

Substantives which comprehend a multitude of individuals under one name, such as society, clergy, government, are termed *Collective* substantives.

39 Substantives are, moreover, either

Substantives proper, i. e. words used as substantives only, e. g. John, father, virtue, house; — or

Adjective substantives, i. e. adjectives used as substantives, e. g. the learned, the ancients; — or

Verbal substantives or *Infinitives*, i. e. verbs used as substantives e. g. *to sing* (or: *singing*) is pleasant, I like *walking*.

Substantives are inflected by *Number* and *Case*.

3. Adjective.

Adjectives (and Participles) take the place of an attribute qualifying a substantive, or of a predicate. The attributive adjective is in German inflected by *Gender*, *Number* and *Case* in order to agree with its substantive. 40

Adjectives are in the *Positive*, *Comparative*, or *Superlative degree*, e. g. good, better, best.

4. Notional Adverbs.

Adverbs are words which express the manner, time, 41 or place of an action e. g. he writes *well*, he reads *correctly*; he will arrive *early*, the troops marched *eastward*.

Adverbs admit of no inflection.

In German, adjectives, when used as adverbs of manner, commonly do not assume an affix, like the English *ly* in *hastily*, *correctly*; the words *rasch*, *richtig* etc. being used both as adjectives and as adverbs.

II. RELATIONAL WORDS.

5. Auxiliary verbs.

a. The verb *sein* *to be* is used to join the predicate 42 with its subject, e. g. man is mortal, the earth is a planet. It is therefore termed *Copula*.

When it implies the notion of *existing* e. g. there is a God, it is rather to be considered as a notional word.

b. The *Auxiliary verbs of Tense*, *haben* *to have* and *sein* *to be*, for the past, and *werden* for the future tenses.

The verb *werden* is also employed in German in the formation of the passive voice.

The verb *haben* when signifying *to possess* and *werden* *to become, to grow* (e. g. *der Mann hat Geld* the man has money; *er wird alt* he grows old), must be considered as notional words.

c. The *Auxiliary verbs of Modality*, *fönnen, mögen, dürfen, wollen, sollen, müssen*, express the relation of modality (§. 32), i. e. possibility or necessity of an action. They are used in a manner different from the English (can, may, dare, will, shall, must), as will be explained in Syntax.

6. Article.

- 43 An article is a word placed before a substantive to limit its signification (§. 30).

There is a *definite* and an *indefinite* article in German as in English, e. g. *der Mann* *the* man, *ein Mann* *a* man.

7. Pronouns.

- 44 Pronouns express the relations of *personality* (first second, or third person §. 29) or *demonstrative and interrogative limitation* (§. 30) e. g.; I saw *him*; *this* man, *that* book, *what* book? Pronouns are either:

Substantive pronouns, when indicating persons or things themselves, e. g. I saw *him*, *that* is not true — or

Adjective pronouns, when added to a substantive, e. g. *my* friend, *that* book.

Pronouns are inflected by gender, number and case.

8. Numerals.

- 45 Numerals express number or quantity in a definite or indefinite manner. They are either:

Definite numerals, e. g. *one, two, three etc.* — or

Indefinite numerals, e. g. *some, many etc.*

9. Prepositions.

Prepositions connect an object with its verb or ad- 46
jective, or an attribute with its substantive, and show
the relation between them, e. g. I go *to* England; he
lives *in* England; I speak *with* him *of* you; he is con-
tent *with* his fate — the difference *between* them; a
treatise *on* that subject etc.

10. Conjunctions.

Conjunctions connect two sentences, and show the re- 47
lation between them; e. g. my father arrived *and* I met
him; *but* he would not speak with me.

In contracted sentences (§. 28) conjunctions also con-
nect corresponding parts of two sentences; e. g. my fa-
ther *and* mother are come, which is a contraction of:
my father is come, and my mother is come.

11. Relational Adverbs.

Relational adverbs limit the signification of the pre- 48
dicate by relations to the speaker. The following kinds
of relational adverbs must be distinguished.

a. *Adverbs of Place*, formed from prepositions or pro-
nouns; e. g. he lives *here, there, below, behind*.

b. *Adverbs of Time*; e. g. *now, soon, then*.

c. *Adverbs of Manner*; e. g. *so, thus*, with which may
be classed the *adverbs of Intensity*: *very, much, almost*;
nearly etc. and the *adverbs of Frequency*; *often, some-*
times, frequently, generally etc.

d. *Adverbs of Modality*; e. g. *perhaps, certainly, in-*
deed, not, no.

12. Interjections.

Interjections express neither notions nor relations, and 49
are not in a grammatical connection with the sentence;
we therefore do not consider them as parts of the sen-
tence, but rather as sounds produced by the immediate
impulse of the sensation of joy, sorrow, admiration etc.

In German *joy* is expressed by *ah! heisa! juchhei! sorrow* by *ach! oh! admiration* by *ei! oh! disgust* by *fi, pfui!*

The expressions *wehe! o wehe! wehe dir! woe to you! leider! alas! Himmel! heaven! Gott lob! thank God!* and others of the same description which are frequently employed as interjections, are to be regarded as elliptical sentences.

CHAPTER III.

OF THE FORMATION OF WORDS.

50 There are two ways of forming words:

1. *Derivation*, by which new words are formed by means of affixes, or by changing their vowel;

2. *Composition*, by which new words are formed by joining two words into one.

1. Derivation.

All notional words are either *Roots* or *Derivative words*.

Roots are those primitive words, from which other words are derived, but which are themselves underived.

All roots are verbs (radical verbs). All verbs however are not roots; for there are a great number of derivative verbs. Radical and derivative verbs are distinguished from each other by different conjugation, as will be explained in Chapter IV.

All radical verbs are *monosyllable*; e. g. *bind-en* to bind, *schieß-en* to shoot, *geh-en* to go, *schlaf-en* to sleep. They are however frequently connected with *Prefixes* e. g. *verbind-en* to conjoin, *genießen* to enjoy, *be-gehen* to commit.

OBSERVATION. The signification of radical verbs is generally very indefinite, a great variety of meanings being frequently

expressed by one word; and in many cases we are not able to find English verbs which precisely correspond with the German. In this respect the learner must consult good dictionaries.

Derivative words are either Primary or Secondary derivatives.

I. *Primary derivatives* are those formed from roots by a change of the radical vowel.

II. *Secondary derivatives* are those formed by means of significant *affixes*.

I. Primary derivatives.

Substantives and adjectives are formed from radical 51 verbs by a *change of the radical vowel*

a. without any affix;

b. by the addition of one of the terminations *er, el, en, t, e* which however do not, like the affixes of secondary derivatives, affect the meaning of the words.

The following examples will illustrate the formation of primary derivatives:

Radical verbs.

Primary derivatives.

a. without any affix		b. with one of the terminations <i>er, el, en, te,</i>	
bind-en to bind	der Band volume	die Bind-e band	
	der Bund league	der Bünd-el bundle	
schlag-en to beat,	der Schlag stroke	die Schlach-t battle	
to strike			
sprech-en to speak	der Spruch sentence	die Sprach-e language	
flieg-en to fly	der Flug flight	die Flieg-e fly, der Flügel wing	
flieh-en to flee	der Floh flea	die Fluch-t flight	
grab-en to dig	das Grab grave	die Gruf-t tomb, die Grub-e pit	
		der Grab-en ditch	
bieg-en to bend	der Bug bow of a ship	die Buch-t bay, der Bogen arch, bow	
		der Büg-el stirrup	
		der Buck-el humpback	

1. *Primary substantives.*

der Mann man	der Schnee snow
der Kopf head	der See lake
der Arm arm	der Hirsch stag
der Fuß foot	der Hund dog
der Fluß river	der Sand sand
der Bach brook	der Wein wine
der Berg mountain	der Stein stone
der Zwerg dwarf	der Traum dream
der Baum tree	der Schaum foam
der Wald forest	der Stall stable
der Busch bush	der Wall rampart
der Weg way	der Zorn anger
der Ort place	der Dorn thorn
der Thurm tower	der Staub dust
der Wurm worm	der Raub prey
der Sturm storm	der Scherz joke
der Stern star	der Schmerz pain
der Mond moon	der Klang sound
der Schuh shoe	der Gang walking
der Stuhl chair	der Trank drink
der Tisch table	der Muth courage
der Fisch fish	der Hut hat
der Vater father	der Bruder brother
der Hammer hammer	der Keller cellar
der Jammer lamentation	der Teller plate
der Kummer grief	der Finger finger
der Schlummer slumber.	der Hunger hunger
der Flügel wing	der Vogel bird
der Zügel rein	der Nagel nail
der Adel nobility	der Spiegel looking-glass
der Tadel blame	der Hügel hill
der Garten garden	der Braten roast meat
der Boden bottom	der Laden shop, shutter
der Wagen carriage	der Husten cough
der Bogen bow	der Schnupfen cold (having a cold)

die Sonne	sun	die Schlange	snake
die Tonne	tun	die Stange	pole
die Fliege	fly	die Decke	cover
die Ziege	goat	die Ecke	corner
die Frage	question	die Mitte	middle
die Lage	situation	die Bitte	request
die Taube	dove	die Pfeife	pipe
die Traube	a bunch of grapes	die Seife	soap.

The syllable *Ge-* is prefixed to many primary derivatives without affecting their signification, and is then termed *Augment*, as in the words:

der Geruch	smell	das Gesicht	face, sight
der Geschmack	taste	das Gehör	hearing
der Gesang	song	das Gesetz	law
die Geduld	patience	das Geschütz	artillery
die Gefahr	danger	das Gebiß	teeth.

2. Primary adjectives.

Primary adjectives are formed in the same way as primary substantives, either without any affix, or by *er*, *el*, *en*, *e*; some of them also have assumed the augment *ge*.

weiß	white	groß	great
schwarz	black	klein	small
grün	green	lang	long
roth	red	kurz	short
gelb	yellow	alt	old
blau	blue	jung	young
bitter	bitter	edel	noble
sauer	sour	eitel	vain
heiter	serene	übel	ill
mager	lean	eben	even, plain
träge	lazy	gesund	sound
streng	severe	gewiß	certain
weise	wise	gering	small, little
leise	not loud	gerade	straight.

II. Secondary derivatives.

1. *Derivative verbs.*

- 52 Derivative verbs are formed from substantives and adjectives, merely by assuming the terminations of conjugation. In most of them however the vowel is modified (§. 2). Thus the verbs tränk-en to give drink, fällt-en to fell, dräng-en to press, schlacht-en to slaughter, stärk-en to strengthen, schwäch-en to weaken, würdig-en to deign, heilig-en to consecrate etc., are derived from the substantives Trank, Fall, Drang, Schlacht and the adjectives stark, schwach, würdig, heilig.

2. *Substantives and Adjectives.*

- 53 Secondary derivative substantives and adjectives are generally formed from primary derivatives by means of *affixes*; e. g. Schloss-er locksmith, mächt-ig mighty, Bünd-niß alliance, from Schloß, Macht, Bund. Those which are immediately formed from radical verbs, as, Sprech-er speaker, Kenn-er connoisseur, Sitz-ung session, denk-bar conceivable, are less frequent in German than in English. On the other hand new derivatives are sometimes formed from secondary derivatives, e. g. Dank-bar-feit gratitude, Beständ-ig-feit constancy, Würd-ig-feit dignity.

In secondary derivatives, formed by the affixes, er, ling, in, chen, lein, e, niß, sel, ig, isch, lich, the vowel of the primary derivative is commonly *modified* (§. 2. a, o, u, au into ä, ö, ü, äu) e. g. Garten—Gärtner; baden—Bäder; Zucht—Züchtling; Graf—Gräfin; Hund—Hündin; Sohn—Söhnchen; Baum—Bäumlein &c.

The affixes of secondary derivatives are significant, i. e. they modify the meanings of the words in such a way as to form either adjectives or names of persons or abstract substantives etc., as will appear from the following table.

TABLE OF AFFIXES.

er	forms names of male persons.
ling	„ „ „ „ „ and things.
in	„ „ „ female persons.
chen lein	{ form diminutive substantives.
e heit feit schaft ung ei	{ form feminine abstract substantives.
niß	forms feminine abstract substantives and neuter names of things.
sal fel	{ form neuter concrete and abstract substantives.
thum	forms neuter concrete substantives of a collective signification.
ig (icht) isch sam bar en lich haft	{ form adjectives.

Concrete substantives.

er.

- 54 *Names of male persons* are formed from names of things by the affix *er* e. g.

der Bürger	citizen (burgher)	from die Burg	castle
der Schäfer	shepherd	„ das Schaf	sheep
der Ritter	knight	„ der Ritt	ride
der Sänger	singer	„ der Sang	song

Names of male persons are formed in the same way from names of *countries* and *places* e. g.

Engländer	Englishman	from England	England
Irländer	Irishman	„ Irland	Ireland
Schweizer	Swiss	„ die Schweiz	Switzerland
Spanier	Spaniard	„ Spanien	Spain
Amerikaner	American	„ Amerika	America
Italiener	Italian	„ Italien	Italy
Römer	Roman	„ Rom	Rome
Wiener	an inhabitant of	Wien	Vienna
Österreicher	Austrian	from Österreich	Austria *)

OBSERVATION 1.—Substantives of this form, made from verbs, are not so common in German as in English. There are, however, some; such as, *Schneider* tailor, *Reiter* rider, *Leser* reader, *Schreiber* secretary.

* All names of nations are not formed in this way, some being primary substantives, from which the names of countries are formed e. g.

der Schotte	Scotchman	Schottland	Scotland
der Deutsche	German	Deutschland	Germany
der Franzose	Frenchman	Frankreich	France
der Däne	Dane	Dänemark	Danmark
der Russe	Russian	Rußland	Russia
der Türke	Turk	Türkei	Turkey
der Preuße	Prussian	Preußen	Prussia
der Sachse	Saxon	Sachsen	Saxony
der Bayer	Bavarian	Bayern	Bavaria
der Hesse	Hessian	Hessen	Hessia
der Schwabe	Swabian	Schwaben	Swabia
etc.		etc.	

These names of nations are however not to be employed as adjectives, as in: a French soldier, there being for that purpose particular forms in *isch*, *französisch*, *schottisch* etc. See §. 57.

OBSERVATION 2.—Names of countries, like *Schweden, Sachsen, Schwaben, Hessen*, are originally adjective-substantives, which imply at the same time the inhabitants of the countries, and therefore do not admit of the affix *er*.

OBSERVATION 3.—From the affix *er* we must distinguish that termination *er* which primary substantives frequently assume, and by which the signification is not affected (§. 51.).

ling.

Substantives formed by the affix *ling* (*ling*) are for the most part names of male persons, e. g.

Jüngling a youth	Jögling pupil
Fremdling a stranger	Häuptling chieftain
Günstling favourite	Zwilling twin (from <i>zwei</i> two)

in.

Names of females are made from names of males by the affix *in*, e. g.

der Hirt shepherd	die Hirtin shepherdess
der Held hero	die Heldin heroine
der Graf count	die Gräfin countess
der Fürst prince	die Fürstin princess
der König king	die Königin queen
der Freund friend	die Freundin female friend
der Feind enemy	die Feindin „ ennemy
der Koch cook	die Köchin „ cook
der Hund dog	die Hündin bitch
der Löwe lion	die Löwin lioness

OBSERVATION.—The final *n* of the termination *in* is doubled in the plural number, e. g. in *Hirtinnen*.

chen and lein.

Diminutives are formed from concrete substantives by the affixes *chen* and *lein*.

OBSERVATION. The affix *chen* is preferred after a liquid final consonant, or a final vowel; and *lein*, on the other hand, after a mute final consonant, and especially after a palatal one, e. g.

in Stühlchen, Söhnchen, Pärchen, Bäumchen, Eichen, little stool, son, hair, tree, egg; and Knäblein, Mägdelein, Bäcklein, Böcklein, little boy, girl, book, buck:

Abstract substantives.

e, heit and feit.

55 *Abstract substantives* are made from *adjectives* by the affixes *e, heit* and *feit*.

1. Abstracts formed from primary adjectives, take *e* or *heit*.

2. Those formed from secondary derivative adjectives take *feit*. When substantives in *feit* are formed from primary derivative adjectives, the syllable *ig* is inserted between the adjective and the affix, e. g. Frömmig-feit from fromm.

die Größe	greatness	die Wärme	warmth
die Länge	length	die Kälte	coldness
die Breite	breadth	die Nässe	wetness
die Tiefe	depth	die Stärke	strength
die Dicke	thickness	die Schwäche	weakness
die Höhe	height	die Güte	goodness
die Gesundheit	health	die Schwachheit	weakness
die Krankheit	sickness	die Kühnheit	boldness
die Freiheit	freedom	die Klugheit	prudence
die Schönheit	beauty	die Reinheit	purity
die Weisheit	wisdom	die Trägheit	idleness
die Dummheit	stupidity	die Seltenheit	rarity
die Dankbarkeit	gratitude	die Schlecht-ig-feit	badness
die Fruchtbarkeit	fertility	die Frömm-ig-feit	piety
die Heiligkeit	holiness	die Feucht-ig-feit	humidity
die Sparsamkeit	parsimony	die Müd-ig-feit	} weariness
die Zärtlichkeit	tenderness	die Matt-ig-feit	

Some of those in *e, heit, feit* have assumed a concrete sense, as, die Fläche plain, die Flüssigkeit liquid, die Menschheit mankind, die Christenheit christendom, Geistlichkeit clergy etc.

ſchaft and thum.

Abstract substantives are made from *names of persons* by the affixes *ſchaft* and *thum*.

die Freundschaft	friendship	die Feindschaft	enmity
die Herrschaft	dominion	die Knechtschaft	slavery
das Fürstenthum	principality	das Christenthum	christianity.

OBSERVATION.—The most part of substantives, formed by these affixes, have a collective signification: viz. those formed by *ſchaft* imply a collection of persons, whilst those formed by *thum* signify a collection of things belonging to the persons; e. g. *Ritterschaft*, *Judenschaft*, *Priesterschaft*, *Bürgerschaft*, the whole body of the knights, Jews, priests, citizens; and *Ritterthum* chivalry, *Judenthum* Judaism, *Priesterthum* priesthood, *Heidenthum* paganism, *Herzogthum* dukedom. The substantives *Eigenschaft* quality, *Landschaft* landscape, *Wissenschaft* science, *Baarschaft* ready money, *Geräthschaft* instruments, *Briefschaften* letters, and *Eigenthum* property, *Heiligthum* sanctuary, *Alterthum* antiquity, *Reichthum* riches, *Wachsthum* growth, *Irrthum* error, are the only ones, made with these affixes from words which are not names of persons.

Ge.

Collective substantives are formed from primary substantives by the augment *Ge* and the affix *e*, which however is dropped in many words.

das Gebirge	ridge of hills	das Getöse	noise
das Gestirn	constellation	das Gedränge	crowd
das Gebüsch	bushes	das Gespräch	conversation
das Geräth	furniture	das Gemüth	mind, soul.

OBSERVATION.—In the same way, but without any modification of the vowels, *frequentative* substantives are formed from verbs e. g. *das Gerede*, *Gefinge*, *Geheul*, *Gemeßel* continued or repeated talking, singing, crying, slaughter.

niß, ſal and ſel.

Abstract substantives are made from verbs and substantives by the affixes *niß*, *ſal*, *ſel*, e g.

das Verhältniß	relation	das Bündniß	alliance
das Gedächtniß	memory	das Zeugniß	testimony
das Bedürfniß	want		etc.
das Hinderniß	impediment		
das Schicksal	fate	das Räthfel	riddle
	etc.		etc.

ei.

Secondary derivatives are made by the affix *ei*, which always takes the *principal accent*, and assumes the syllable *er* before it, when there is not already another unaccented termination. Substantives in *ei* are made:

a. from *verbs*. They then express the abstract notion of an action, in a bad sense.

die Heuchelei	hypocrisy	die Schmeichelei	flattery
die Hiererei	affectation	die Schwägerei	babbling

b. from *names of persons*. They then express the business, condition etc.

die Sklaverei	slavery	die Reiterei	cavalry
die Druckerei	printing office	die Jägerei	hunting.

Verbal substantives.

56 *Verbal substantives* are those abstracts, which have retained so entirely the notion of the verbs from which they are made, as still to admit of an objective relation, and to govern cases and prepositions.

a. Substantives in *ung* are formed from transitive verbs, the object of the verb being generally added in the Genitive case.

die Hinrichtung eines Verbrechers the execution of a criminal

die Eroberung einer Festung the conquest of a fortress

die Uebersetzung des Gedichts the translation of the poem

die Erziehung der Kinder the education of children

die Erbauung der Stadt the building of the town

die Krönung des Königs the coronation of the king.

Some are formed from reflective verbs, e. g.

die Bewegung	motion	die Verschwörung	conspiracy
die Erinnerung	remembrance	die Verstellung	dissimulation.

Substantives in *ung* are for the most part formed from compound verbs.

b. The *Infinitives* of verbs are used as *verbal substantives*. They take the article and are declined like other substantives, without, however, admitting of the plural number e. g.

das Lesen	reading	das Schreiben	writing
das Sprechen	speaking	das Reisen	travelling.

This form of verbal substantives is not used, in general, when an attribute or object is to be added; in which case the Infinitive without an article or the Supine (the infinitive with the preposition *zu*) is preferred. Thus we say: *ich bin von dem Sprechen müde*, I am tired with speaking; but, *ich bin müde von Politik zu sprechen*, I am tired of speaking of politics — *das Reisen ist kostspielig*, travelling is expensive; but, *in England zu reisen ist kostspielig*, travelling in England is expensive. *)

Many Infinitives however have assumed the signification of real substantives, and are used as such, e. g.

das Leben	life	das Verbrechen	crime
das Leiden	complaint	das Vergnügen	pleasure
das Essen	dinner	das Verlangen	desire

*) The different significations of abstract substantives formed from the same verb, appear in the following examples: *müde von dem Gehen*, fatigued with walking; *der Gang nach der Stadt*, the walk to town; *der Umgang mit Fremden*, the intercourse with foreigners; *die Umgehung einer Frage*, the avoiding of a question; *Talent zum Erfinden*, talent for contriving; *einen guten Fund thun*, to find a good thing; *die Erfindung des Schießpulvers*, the invention of gunpowder; *das Unterscheiden ist schwer*, distinguishing is difficult; *der Unterschied ist groß*, the difference is great; *die Unterscheidung des Einen von dem Andern*, the act of distinguishing one from the other.

das Schreiben letter	das Andenken remembrance
das Wesen being, creature	das Bewußtsein conscience
	etc.

Derivative adjectives.

- 57 Adjectives are formed by the affixes *ig* (*icht*), *isch*, *lich*, *en*, *bar*, *fam*, *haft*.

ig.

Adjectives in *ig* are formed 1) from abstract primary substantives

fleißig diligent	günstig favourable
mächtig mighty	nöthig necessary
prächtigt splendid	gütig kind.

2) from concrete substantives (without modifying the vowel).

sandig sandy	Some take <i>icht</i> :
waldig woody	bornicht thorny
salzig saltish	salzicht saltish
blumig flowery	bergicht mountainous.

OBSERVATION. — Moreover the following adjectives are formed from possessive pronouns and adverbs of time and place:

meinig mine	jetzig present
deinig thine	heutig of to-day
seinig his	hiesig of this place
unsrig our etc.	dortig of that place.

isch.

Adjectives in *isch* are made 1) from names of persons;

fnechtisch slavish	diebisch thievish
friegerisch warlike	heuchlerisch hypocritical
weibisch effeminate	herrisch imperious
kindisch childish	

2) from names of countries and places;

englisch English	kölnisch of Cologne
spanisch Spanish	frankfurtisch of Frankfort
schottisch Scotch	
schwedisch Swedish	

among which must be numbered, *deutsſch* German, and *irdiſch* earthly, *hölliſch* hellish, *himmeliſch* heavenly.

OBSERVATION 1. — Adjectives formed from compound names of countries and places by means of the affix *iſch*, would, if inflected, be offensive to eurythmy. We commonly employ, therefore, in their place, and as adjectives, the substantives made by the affix *er*, which then are not inflected; e. g. *daß heibelberger ſaß*, the Heidelberg tun; *die lüneburger ſeide*, the Lüneburg heath; *ein frankfurter Kaufmann*, a Frankfort merchant; instead of *heibelbergiſche* etc.

OBSERVATION 2. — Some adjectives are formed in the same way from *abstract* substantives e. g. *neidiſch* envious, *ſpöttiſch* mocking. Besides, the affix *iſch* is used instead of the lat. *icus* (Engl. *ical*), e. g. *logiſch* logical, *phyiſch*, physical etc.

iſch.

Adjectives in *iſch* are made 1) from abstract substantives.

<i>ängſtlich</i> anxious	<i>gebräuchlich</i> usual
<i>friedlich</i> peaceful	<i>gefährlich</i> dangerous
<i>ehrlich</i> honest	<i>abſcheulich</i> horrible
<i>redlich</i> faithful	<i>glücklich</i> fortunate
<i>jährlich</i> annual	<i>abſichtlich</i> intentional
<i>täglich</i> daily	<i>ausdrücklich</i> express.

2) from names of persons.

<i>männlich</i> male	<i>weiblich</i> female
<i>kindlich</i> child-like	<i>väterlich</i> paternal
<i>brüderlich</i> fraternal	<i>mütterlich</i> maternal
<i>königlich</i> royal	<i>kaiſerlich</i> imperial.

3) from adjectives.

<i>ältlich</i> elderly	<i>ſüßlich</i> sweetish
<i>röthlich</i> reddish	<i>weißlich</i> whitish
<i>fränklich</i> sickly	<i>reichlich</i> liberal.

The following words are never used as adjectives, but only as adverbs:

erſtlich firſtly
 folglich conſequently
 freilich it is true
 kürzlich lately
 neuſich „

gänzlich entirely
 ſchwerlich hardly
 ſicherlich ſurely
 wahrlich indeed,
 and ſome others.

en.

The affix en ſerves, as in Engliſh, to form adjectives from names of materials, e. g. golden golden, ſeiden ſilken. Before this affix the letter r is frequently inserted for the ſake of euphony, e. g. in bleiern leaden, hölzern wooden, gläſern made of glaſs.

bar, ſam, haſt.

Adjectives, formed in bar, ſam or haſt from abstract ſubſtantives or verbs, expreſs either a poſſibility or diſpoſition.

ſichtbar viſible
 dankbar thankful
 ſtandhaft conſtant
 ſündhaft vicious
 ſchwagghaft talkative
 lebhaft lively
 ſchmeichelhaft flattering
 denkbar conceivable
 trinkbar drinkable
 eßbar eatable.

furchtſam frightful
 arbeitſam diligent
 ſchamhaft baſhful
 tugendhaft virtuous
 folgsam obedient
 ſparſam ſparing
 wachſam watchful

Instead of bar, the affix ich is ſometimes uſed for the ſake of euphony, to form adjectives from verbs, as in:

beweglich moveable
 glaublich credible.

ſterblich mortal
 unbeſchreiblich inſcribable.

2. Composition.

- 58 When two notions, e. g. thoſe expreſſed by *boat* and *ſteam*, are connected in ſuch a way as to form only one notion, the words are united into one compound word e. g. *ſteamboat*. The German language contains

many more such compounds than the English, and indeed, the number is every day increasing by new compositions, formed by German writers. A few rules however will suffice to make the foreigner acquainted with the laws and peculiarities of German composition.

1. Compound substantives.

The compound substantive follows the gender and 59 declension of the second component, which is always a substantive; e. g. das Dampfboot. The first component is a substantive, or sometimes a verb or adjective, e. g. Tagebuch day-book, Schreibbuch writing-book, Sauerteig sour-dough (leaven).

The two components are either connected without any additional sign, or the first component takes one of the terminations e, r, l, n, s, which then are termed *signs of composition*. The signs s and n are originally terminations of the genitive case, whilst e, r, l are inserted merely for the sake of euphony and are not so usual as s and n.

der Land-mann peasant	der Land-s-mann one of the same country
der Mond-schein moon-shine	der Sonne-n-schein sun-shine
das Rath-haus town-house	der Rath-s-herr alderman
das Heide-fraut heath-plant	die Heide-l-beere bilberry
der Tag-lohn wages for day-labour	das Tag-e-werk day's work
	die Tag-es-zeit time of the day.

The first component always takes the principal accent, except in Rangerweile ennui, Geheimerrath privy counsellor, in which moreover the first component is sometimes declined as an adjective, and in Jahrhundert century, Jahrtausend a thousand years.

OBSERVATION. Substantives are not only compounded with substantives, adjectives and verbs, but also with the negative prefix Un, which likewise takes the principal accent, e. g. Unglück misfortune, Undank ingratitude, Unsinn nonsense. In a few cases the first component is

a preposition or adverb, as in: Antwort answer, Antheil portion, Abgrund abyss, Abgott idol, Urbild original, Urwelt primitive world etc. These compound substantives however must be distinguished from those derived from compound verbs, which in general have the same accentuation as the verb. Thus the prefix does not take the accent in Verstand understanding (from verstehen to understand) Begriff idea (from begreifen to conceive). But it is accentuated in Beistand assistance (from beistehen to assist), Angriff attack (from angreifen to attack). Those primary derivatives only, which are formed from verbs compounded with über, unter, um, wider take the accent on the preposition, e. g. Übergabe deliverance (from übergeben to deliver) Unterhalt support, from unterhalten to support) etc.

2. Compound adjectives.

- 60 Adjectives are compounded in the same manner as substantives e.g. hoffnungsvoll hopeful, leblos lifeless, liebend-würdig amiable, hellblau light-blue, grasgrün grass-green.

The accentuation of adjectives, compounded with the negative prefix un, is different according to their different significations. The prefix un is not accented, when the compound merely expresses the negative of the simple adjective e. g. unsterblich immortal, unendlich infinite, unmöglich impossible, unglaublich incredible. But it takes the accent when the adjective has a positive signification contrary to that of the simple e. g. ungesund ill, unedel base, ungerecht unjust etc.

3. Compound verbs.

- 61 Verbs are compounded either with *prefixes* or with *adverbs* and *prepositions*.

1. The prefix takes the subordinate accent, and is not separable from the verb. The compound is then termed an *inseparable compound*.

2. The adverb or preposition takes the principal accent, and is separable from the verb. The compound is then termed a *separable compound*.

In separable compounds, e. g. *aufstehen* to get up, *ausgehen* to go out, the adverb (or preposition) is separated from the verb in the following cases:

1. by the augment *ge* in the past participle: *ausgegangen* gone out, *aufgestanden* got up.

2. by the preposition *zu* in the supine: *auszugehen* to go out, *aufzustehen* to get up.

3. in the construction of the principal sentence: *er steht auf* he gets up, *er geht aus* he goes out.*)

a. Inseparable compound verbs.

The following are *inseparable prefixes*:

62

be	e. g. <i>beklagen</i> to bewail
ent	„ <i>entkleiden</i> to undress
er	„ <i>erwachen</i> to awake
ver	„ <i>vergeben</i> to forgive
zer	„ <i>zerstören</i> to destroy
miß	„ <i>mißfallen</i> to displease
voll	„ <i>vollbringen</i> to fulfill
wider	„ <i>widerstehen</i> to resist
hinter	„ <i>hintergehen</i> to deceive.

From these prefixes we must distinguish the *augment ge*, prefixed to verbs as well as substantives and adjectives, without however varying their signification, e. g. *genießen* to enjoy, *genesen* to recover, *gebrauchen* to use. The augment *ge* is inseparable and has no accent.

The prefix *be* denotes a transitive relation to an object acted upon, and therefore changes intransitive into transitive verbs (see Syntax §. 236), e. g.

<i>belachen</i> to laugh at	<i>begehen</i> to commit
<i>beweinen</i> to weep for	<i>besitzen</i> to possess
<i>bespochen</i> to discuss	<i>bereden</i> to persuade

*) Separable compound verbs entirely correspond to English verbs connected with adverbs e. g. to come back, to go up, to go down; but in German the adverb is frequently placed before the verb, e. g. in the infinitive *aufstehen*, *ausgehen*, *zurückkommen*; then the adverb and verb are written in one word, and it is in this form that they are found in dictionaries.

The prefix **be** serves also to form derivative verbs of a causative signification from substantives and adjectives e. g.

beglücken to make happy	befreien to set free
belohnen to reward	beruhigen to appease
begeistern to inspire	beschuldigen to accuse.

The prefix **ent** expresses privation (like the English un-) or separation; e. g.

enthaupten to behead	entgehen to escape
entfesselein to unfetter	entsetzen to depose
entkleiden to undress	entführen to carry off
entschuldigen to excuse	entsagen to renounce.

In entsprechen to answer, entbieten to bid, enthalten to contain, the prefix **ent** stands in place of **an**; and it has been changed into **emp** before the labial sound in empfehlen to recommend, empfangen to receive, empfinden to feel.

The prefixes **er** and **ver** signify a relation to an object, which is conceived as a personal one; **er** signifies *towards* or *in favour of a person*, acquiring or a progressive improvement and development; and **ver** *from* and *to the disadvantage* of the same, loss, deterioration and mistake; e. g.

erlauben to permit	verbieten to forbid
erlangen to attain	verlieren to loose
ersparen to save	verschwenden to spend
erscheinen to appear	verschwinden to disappear
erschaffen to create	vernichten to annihilate
erblühen to blossom	verblühen to decay
erwachsen to grow up	verwachsen to be hunch backed
erkennen to acknowledge	verkennen to mistake
erziehen to bring up	verziehen to spoil (a child)
etc.	etc.

In some instances however the prefixes **er** and **ver** are not opposed to one another in their significations, e. g. erfrieren to freeze to death, erschrecken to be frightened,

erlöſchen to be extinguished, verſchönern to embellish, verbeſſern to improve etc.

The prefix **zer** expresses dissolution or destruction; e. g.

zerfallen to fall to pieces	zerſtören to destroy
zerſpringen to spring „	zerbrüden to crush
zerſchlagen to beat „	zerbrechen to break
zerreißen to tear „	zermalmen to bruise.

The prefix **miß** expresses doing the contrary of the simple verb, or doing it in the wrong way; e. g.

mißfallen to displease	mißhandeln to ill-treat
mißglücken to fail	mißbrauchen to abuse
mißlingen „	mißrathen to turn out ill.

The prefix **voll** is used only in vollbringen to accomplish, vollenden to finish, vollführen to execute

The prefix **wider** *against*, in:

widerfahren to happen	widerlegen to refuse
widerrathen to dissuade	widerrufen to retract
ſich widerſetzen to oppose	widerſtehen to resist etc.

The prefix **hinter** *behind* is not frequent:

hinterbleiben to remain undone	hintertreiben to hinder
hintergehen to deceive	hinterlaſſen to leave behind.

The prepositions **durch** *through*, **um** *around*, **über** *over*, and **unter** *under*, are used in the composition of verbs, both as inseparable and unaccented *prefixes*, and as separable and accented *adverbs*. When these prepositions are used as prefixes, their original signification is generalized in a peculiar way, as will appear from the following list of the most usual *inseparable compounds*.

durch, *from one end to the other, thoroughly.*

durchbringen to penetrate	durchgehen to go through
durchſuchen { to search	durchſehen {
durchforſchen { thoroughly	durchbliden { to see through
durchirren to wander through	durchſchauen {

durchbohren to pierce

durchweben to interweave.

um denotes a *circuitous direction*.

umarmen to embrace

umfränzen to wreath

umfängen to surround

umlagern to encompass

umgeben „

umschließen to enclose

umgehen to avoid

umzingeln to surround

umgürten to gird

umschreiben to express by
paraphrase.**über** implies: a. *covering a surface or extending over a space*.

überbauen to build over

übersteigen to surpass

überhäufen to overburden

überblicken to survey

überschwemmen to overflow

übersehen to overlook

übermalen to paint over

übernachten to pass the night.

b. *surpassing somebody, or doing something too much*.

überbieten to overbid

überladen to overload

überleben to outlive

übertreiben to exaggerate

überflügeln to outflank

überarbeiten to fatigue

überlisten to overreach

sich überessen to eat too much

übermannen to overpower

überfüllen to overfill

übertreffen to surpass

übereilen to spoil by hurry

überwinden

überfüttern to overfeed.

überwältigen (to overcome

überstimmen to outvote

c. *giving and receiving*.

überbringen to bring

überlassen to yield up

überschicken to send

übertragen to transfer

überliefern to deliver

übernehmen to accept.

d It has a metaphorical sense in:

überreden to persuade

überfallen to attack suddenly

überzeugen to convince

überraschen to surprise

überlegen to consider

übertreiben to exaggerate

übersetzen to translate

übertreten to transgress

überzählen to calculate

übergehen to omit.

unter implies a. *below, under.*

untergraben to undermine	unterschreiben to subscribe
unterjochen to subjugate	unterstreichen to underline
unterstützen to support	unterzeichnen to sign.

b. *prohibiting.*

unterdrücken to suppress	unterlassen to intermit
unterbrechen to interrupt	unterschlagen to keep by fraud
untersagen to interdict	unterbleiben to remain undone.

c. It has a metaphorical sense in:

unterhandeln to negotiate	untersuchen to examine
unterhalten to entertain	unterscheiden to distinguish
unternehmen to undertake	unterwerfen to subdue
unterrichten to instruct	sich unterreden to converse.

b. *Separable compound verbs.*

The prepositions *durch, um, über, unter* and many other 64 prepositions and adverbs form *separable compound verbs*, and then take the *principal accent*; e. g.

ablegen to put off	anlegen to put on
einlegen to put in	umlegen to put down
zurücklegen to put back	weglegen to put away.

They are separated in the past participle, e. g. *abgelegt, angelegt, eingelegt, umgelegt, zurückgelegt, weggelegt*, in the supine, *abzulegen, anzulegen, umzulegen* etc. and in the construction of the principal sentence, e. g. *ich lege an, du legest an* etc.

Many verbs, compounded with *durch, um, über, unter* have different significations, according as they are either inseparable, with the full accent laid upon the verb, or separable, with the full accent laid upon the adverbial component; the former being generally transitive, the latter, on the other hand, having for the most part an intransitive signification. Thus we distinguish:

*Inseparable.**Separable.*

<i>durchbringen</i> , to penetrate	{ from	<i>durchbringen</i> , to make one's way through.
<i>durchgehen</i> , to walk from one end to the other	{ —	<i>durchgehen</i> , to go through, to escape.
<i>durchlaufen</i> , to run from one end to the other	{ —	<i>durchlaufen</i> , to run through.
<i>durchreisen</i> , to travel over	{ —	<i>durchreisen</i> , to travel through.
<i>durchsehen</i> , to penetrate (a plot)	{ —	<i>durchsehen</i> , to look through (a book).
<i>durchstreichen</i> , to wander over	{ —	<i>durchstreichen</i> , to strike out.
<i>überführen</i> , to convince	{ —	<i>überführen</i> , to convey over.
<i>übergehen</i> , to pass in silence	{ —	<i>übergehen</i> , to go over, to pass over.
<i>überschreiten</i> , to transgress	{ —	<i>überschreiten</i> , to step over.
<i>übersetzen</i> , to translate	{ —	<i>übersetzen</i> , to go over (across a river).
<i>übertreiben</i> , to exaggerate	{ —	<i>übertreiben</i> , to distil (spirits).
<i>unterhalten</i> , to entertain	{ —	<i>unterhalten</i> , to hold under.
<i>unterschieben</i> , to substitute falsely	{ —	<i>unterschieben</i> , to shove under.
<i>umgehen</i> , to go round, to avoid	{ —	<i>umgehen</i> , to make a round-about, to converse.
<i>umfleiden</i> , to clothe about	{ —	<i>umfleiden</i> , to change dress.

The adverb *wieder* again, is used as an inseparable prefix in *wiederholen* to repeat.

CHAPTER IV. OF VERBS.

Verbs are in point of signification either *Notional* or *Relational verbs*. 65

A. Notional verbs are either *Transitive* or *Intransitive* (§. 37). Transitive verbs are in the *Active* or *Passive voice*, e. g. he loves the child, the child is loved by him. I wrote a letter, the letter was written by me. Verbs, originally transitive, as to prepare, to distinguish, to apply, are frequently made intransitive again, by adding the reflective pronoun (myself, thyself, himself etc.); e. g. I prepare myself for—, he applies himself to—, they distinguish themselves from—; and such verbs are termed *Reflective verbs*.

As to their formation (see Chapt. III) verbs are

1. either *roots* or *derivative verbs* ;

2. either *simple* or *compound*: and compound verbs are either *separable* or *inseparable* (§. 61—64).

B. Relational verbs or *Auxiliary verbs* (§. 42) express only *time*, or *modality*, or the *passive voice* of a notional verb, which then is termed the *Principal*; e. g. he *has* sung er hat gesungen, he *is* gone er ist gegangen, he *will* sleep er wird schlafen, he *must* sing er muß singen, I *will* go ich will gehen, Cesar *was* murdered Cäsar wurde ermordet.

Verbs are inflected by Person, Number, Tense and Mood. 66

Verbs have *three persons* and *two numbers*.

Verbs have *six tenses* to denote the *time* of the action, viz.

- | | |
|---------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Present</i> | er redet, he speaks, is speaking
er springt, he springs, is springing |
| 2. <i>Imperfect</i> | er rebete he spoke, was speaking
er sprang he sprang |

- | | |
|-----------------------|---|
| 3. <i>Perfect</i> | er hat geredet he has spoken.
er ist gesprungen he has sprung |
| 4. <i>Pluperf.</i> | er hatte geredet he had spoken
er war gesprungen he had sprung |
| 5. <i>Future</i> | er wird springen he will spring
er wird reden he will speak |
| 6. <i>Past Future</i> | er wird geredet haben he will have spoken
er wird gesprungen sein he will have sprung. |

Two of these tenses, the Present and Imperfect, are *simple* as in English, formed by terminations only; the rest are formed by auxiliary verbs, joined with the participle or infinitive of the Principal.

Verbs have four Moods to denote the different relations of the sentence to the speaker (§. 33, 34) viz.

1. *Indicative*, used in real assertion of the speaker: e. g. er spricht richtig he speaks correctly.

2. *Conjunctive*, used in an assertion of another person, spoken of or quoted by the speaker: e. g. Man sagt, er spreche nicht richtig, they say that he speaks incorrectly.

3. *Conditional*, used in conditional sentences: e. g. wenn er besser spräche if he would speak better.

4. *Imperative*, used in expressing command or entreaty: e. g. Sprich! speak!

In German the Imperative is formed only in the Present tense; the Conjunctive and Conditional only in the Present, Perfect, and Future tenses.

67 *Verbs have two Infinitives and two Participles (present and past).*

The infinitive expresses the sense of the verb in a substantive form, it is a *verbal substantive*; the participle in an adjective form, it is a *verbal adjective*: e. g. „To rise early is healthful.“ „An early rising man.“ „The newly risen sun.“ In E. the verbal in *ing* is frequently used as a substantive, e. g. „Rising early is healthful“, and then it is equivalent to as an infinitive. This is never done in German, and care is to be taken, in translating from E. into G., to distinguish, whether a verbal in *ing* is infinitive or participle.

The infinitive is frequently preceded by the preposition *to* zu, e. g. to speak zu sprechen. The infinitive with zu *to*, is in this Grammar called *Supine*.

In compound verbal forms the preposition zu always precedes that part which is in the infinitive, as in English; e. g. to have seen gesehen (participle) zu haben (inf.); to be loved geliebt zu werden. The same takes place in separable compound verbs, e. g. auf zu stehen to get up, auszugehen to go out, zurück zu kommen to come back, and when the verb is preceded by an object, e. g. Brod zu essen to eat bread, nach Hause zu gehen to go home etc.

In general the *supine* is employed in German, whenever in English the infinitive is preceded by *to*.

The *supine* connected with the verb haben *to have* or sein *to be*, always implies either *possibility*, e. g. he *has* much money *to spend* er hat viel Geld auszugeben; a large prize *is to be gained* ein großer Preis ist zu gewinnen; or *necessity*, e. g. he *has* a difficult task *to perform* er hat eine schwere Arbeit zu verrichten, great debts *are still to be paid* große Schulden sind noch zu bezahlen.

It is to be observed that, in such expressions, the German language never admits of the passive voice, but always employs the supine of the active voice instead of the passive: e. g. — *is to be gained* ist zu gewinnen, — *is to be paid* ist zu bezahlen. What *is to be done*? Was ist zu thun?

When a substantive is connected with this supine, qualifying it as an attribute, its termination en (zu gewinnen) is changed into end (zugewinnend), and thus a *participle* is formed, declined like other participles: e. g. the money to be spent das auszugebende Geld, the prize to be won der zu gewinnende Preis, the debts to be paid die zu bezahlenden Schulden.

The following table shows the Moods and Verbals, with their respective Tenses:

MOODS.

VERBALS.

SIMPLE TENSES.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Conjunctive.</i>	<i>Conditional.</i>	<i>Imperative</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles</i>
Present	er springt (he leaps)	er springe	er spränge	springe	springen	springend
	er redet (he speaks)	er rede	er redete	rede	reden	redend
Imperf.	er sprang					
	er redete					

COMPOUND TENSES.

Perfect	er ist gesprungen	er sei gesprungen	er wäre gesprungen		gesprungen sein	gesprungen
	er hat geredet	er habe geredet	er hätte geredet		geredet haben	geredet
Plup.	er war gesprungen					
	er hatte geredet					
Future	er wird springen	er werde springen	er würde springen			
	er wird reden	er werde reden	er würde reden			
PassFut.	er wird gesprun- gen sein	er werde gesprun- gen sein	er würde gesprun- gen sein			
	er wird geredet haben	er werde geredet haben	er würde geredet haben			

The German language does not admit of those compound forms, made by the verb *to be* and the present participle e. g. *he is writing, he was sleeping*; nor of those, formed by the verb *to do* and the infinitive, e. g. *he does not write, he did not sleep*; but always employs the simple forms; er *schreibt*, er *schlief*; er *schreibt nicht*, er *schlief nicht*, instead of them.

Conjugation.

In German, as in English, there are two different modes of conjugation, viz.

I. the ancient form (for roots), and

II. the modern form (for derivative verbs).

The ancient and modern forms differ only in the formation of the imperfect and past participle.

In the *ancient form* the vowel of the verb is *changed* in the imperfect and past participle, in a similar way as in English irregular verbs: e. g.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Past participle.</i>
singen to sing	sang sang	gesungen sung
bitten to bid	bat bade	gebeten bidden
kommen to come	cam came	gekommen come

For the particular rules for this change of vowel see §. 78 etc.

In the *modern form* the vowel is never changed, but both the imperfect and past participle adopt the termination *et* (*ed* in English), to which are added the terminations, indicating the different persons e. g.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Past participle.</i>
red-en to talk	red-et-e talked	gereb-et talked
leb-en to live	leb-et-e lived	geleb-et lived

The three persons, Singular and Plural, in all simple 70 tenses of the ancient and modern forms are formed by the following terminations:

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1st person	— e*)	— en
2d	— est	— et
3d	— e*)	— en

*) The first and third persons Sing. have no sign in the Imperfect of the ancient form. The third person Sing. has *et* in the Present Indicative of both forms.

The *Conditional mood* in the modern form does not differ from the imperfect; in the ancient form it takes the changed vowel of the imperfect, which moreover is modified if possible (§. 2; a into *ā*; o into *ō*; u into *ū*).

Further deviations from the general rule are to be found in the list of the verbs of the I. class.

The *Conjunctive mood* does not differ from the Indicative present, except by taking *e* in the 3d sing.

The *Imperative mood* has only the 2d persons Sing. and Plur., with the terminations:

Sing. — *e* *Plur.* — *et*

The *Infinitive* terminates in — *en*

The *Present participle* in — *enb*

The *past participle* in the anc. f. in — *en*
mod. f. in — *et*

and besides assumes the *Augment* *ge*.

71 Exception: *If the first syllable has not the accent, the verb takes no augment.* This is the case with

1. those verbs which have the accented termination
iren, e. g. *studiren* to study; part. *studirt*

regiren to rule " *regirt*
marſchiren to march " *marſchirt*.

2. those which are compounded with *unaccented prefixes* (§. 62.) e. g.

<i>beſuchen</i> to visit	part. <i>beſucht</i>
<i>erlangen</i> to obtain	" <i>erlangt</i>
<i>verlieren</i> to loose	" <i>verloren</i>
<i>entfliehen</i> to escape	" <i>entſprungen</i>

zerstören to destroy	part.	zerstört
übersetzen to translate	"	übersetzt
unternehmen to undertake	"	unternommen
umarmen to embrace	"	umarmt
widerstehen to resist	"	widerstanden
mißlingen to fail	"	mißlungen
vollenden to achieve	"	vollendet

etc.

In *separable compound verbs* (§ 64) the augment *ge* is placed between the separable adverb and the verb:
e. g.

anfallen to attack	part.	angefallen
abschreiben to copy	"	abgeschrieben
zuschließen to lock up	"	zugeschlossen
wegschicken to send away	"	weggeschickt
anfangen to begin	"	angefangen.

- 72 The personal terminations of the simple tenses of both forms of conjugation are seen in the following scheme:

Present tense of both forms.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Conjunctive.</i>	<i>Imperative.</i>
<i>Sing. 1.</i>	— e	— e	
„ 2	— eſt	— eſt	— e
„ 3	— et	— e	
<i>Plur. 1</i>	— en	— en	
„ 2	— et	— et	— et
„ 3	— en	— en	

Infinitive — en

Partic. pres. — end

— *past.* { ge — en
ge — et

	<i>Imperfect tense of the ancient form.</i>	<i>Conditional of the an- cient form.</i>	<i>Imperfect tense and Cond. of the mod. form.</i>
<i>Sing. 1</i>	—	— e	— ete
2	— eſt	— eſt	— eteſt
3	—	— e	— ete
<i>Plur. 1</i>	— en	— en	— eten
2	— et	— et	— etet
3	— en	— en	— eten

the vowel is changed

the vowel of the Imper-
fect is modified

SIMPLE FORMS OF THE VERB.

*I. Ancient form.**II. Modern form.**Infinitive* spring-en to leap

reb-en to speak

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present tense.

<i>Sing.</i> 1	ich spring-e	I leap	ich reb-e	I speak
2	du — eft	thou leapest	du — eft	thou speakest
3	er — et	he leaps	er — et	he speaks
<i>Plur.</i> 1	wir — en	we leap	wir — en	we speak
2	ihr — et	you leap	ihr — et	you speak
3	sie — en	they leap	sie — en	they speak

Imperfect tense.

<i>Sing.</i> 1	ich sprang	I leapt	ich reb-ete	I spoke
2	du — eft		du — eteft	
3	er —		er — ete	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	wir — en		wir — eten	
2	ihr — et		ihr — etet	
3	sie — en		sie — eten	

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

differs from the Indicative Present only in the

<i>Sing.</i> 3	er spring-e	er reb-e
----------------	-------------	----------

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i> 1	ich språng-e	I should	ich reb-ete	I should speak
2	du — eft	leap	du — eteft	
3	er — e		er — ete	
<i>Plur.</i> 1	wir — en		wir — eten	
2	ihr — et		ihr — etet	
3	sie — en		sie — eten	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i> 2	spring-e	leap	reb-e	speak
<i>Plur.</i> 2	— et		— et	

Participles.

<i>Pres.</i>	spring-ent	leaping	reb-ent	speaking
<i>Past.</i>	gesprung-en	leapt	gered-et	spoken

EXERCISES.

trinken to drink (anc. f.)	baden to bathe (mod. f.)
singen to sing "	bauen to build "
klingen to sound "	reisen to travel "
zwingen to compel "	fischen to fish "

to be conjugated in the same way.

74 The vowel *e*, in the terminations *est* and *et*, is frequently dropped.

1) In *est* the *e* is commonly dropped, except after *b*, *t*, *f*, *ß*, *z* and *sch*.

du hörst thou hearest, but:	du leidest thou sufferst
du singst " singing	du reitest " ridest
du gibst " giving	du bläsest " blowest
	du beißeßt " bitest
	etc.

2) In *et* the *e* is commonly dropped, except after *b* and *t*.

er hört, gehört, but er leidet
er singt er reitet
er liebt, geliebt gefleidet.

In those derivative verbs which have the termination *eln* (*el-en*) or *ern* (*er-en*) in the infinitive, the vowel *e* of the termination of *derivation* (*el*, *er*) is dropped in the first pers. sing. pres.; e. g. *ich hand-l-e*, I act; *ich wand-l-e*, I walk; *ich wand-r-e*, I wander: whilst the vowel *e* of the termination of *inflection* is dropped in all other forms; e. g. *hand-el-t*, *hand-el-t-en*, *gehand-el-t*, *hand-el-nd*, *hand-el-n*, *wand-er-t*, *wand-er-t-est*, *gewand-er-t*, *wand-er-nd*.

SIMPLE FORMS OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS

sein to be haben to have werden to become 75

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present tense.

S. 1	ich bin I am	— habe I have	— werde I become
2	du bist	— hast	— wirst
3	er ist	— hat	— wird
P. 1	wir sind	— haben	— werden
2	ihr seid	— habet	— werdet
3	sie sind	— haben	— werden

Imperfect tense.

S. 1	ich war I was	— hatte I had	— wurde I became
2	du warst	— hattest	— wurdest
3	er war	— hatte	— wurde
P. 1	wir waren	— hatten	— wurden
2	ihr waret	— hättet	— würdet
3	sie waren	— hatten	— wurden

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

S. 1	ich sei I am	— habe I have	— werde I become
2	du seiest	— habest	— werdest
3	er sei	— habe	— werde
P. 1	wir seien	— haben	— werden
2	ihr seiet	— habet	— werdet
3	sie seien	— haben	— werden

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

S. 1	ich wäre I would be	— hätte I would have	— würde I would become
2	du wärest	— hättest	— würdest
3	er wäre	— hätte	— würde
P. 1	wir wären	— hätten	— würden
2	ihr wäret	— hättet	— würdet
3	sie wären	— hätten	— würden

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. 2 sei be	habe have	werde become
P. 2 seid	habet	werdet

Participles.

<i>Pres.</i> seiend being	habend having	werdend becoming
<i>Past.</i> gewesen been	gehabt had	geworden become

The past participle of *werden*, when used in forming the passive voice, is not *geworden*, but *worden*.

COMPOUND FORMS OF CONJUGATION.

- 76 The *perfect and pluperfect tenses* are formed by the past participle of the principal verb and the *present and imperfect tenses* of the auxiliary verbs *haben* or *sein*. Which of the two auxiliary verbs is to be used, will be hereafter (§. 90) explained. It will suffice at present to characterise the tenses by the *third* person singular, the form of which is more marked, than that of the other persons.

PERFECT TENSE.

*Infinitive.**Supine.*

gesprungen sein	gesprungen zu sein	to have leapt
geredet haben	geredet zu haben	" " spoken
gewesen sein	gewesen zu sein	" " been
gehabt haben	gehabt zu haben	" " had

Indicative mood.

er ist gesprochen	he has leapt
er hat geredet	" " spoken
er ist gewesen	" " been
er hat gehabt	" " had

Conjunctive mood.

er sei gesprochen	he has leapt
er habe geredet	" " spoken
er sei gewesen	" " been
er habe gehabt	" " had

Conditional mood.

er wäre gesprungen	he would have leapt
er hätte geredet	„ „ „ spoken
er wäre gewesen	„ „ „ been
er hätte gehabt	„ „ „ had.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

er war gesprungen	he had leapt
er hatte geredet	„ „ spoken
er war gewesen	„ „ been
er hatte gehabt	„ „ had.

The *future tense* is formed by the infinitive present of the principal verb and the present tense of werden.

FUTURE TENSE.

Indicative mood.

S. 1 ich werde	I shall	
2 du wirst	thou wilt	leap
3 er wird	he will	speak
P. 1 wir werden	we shall	be
2 ihr werdet	you will	have.
3 sie werden	they will	

Conjunctive mood.

S. 1 ich werde	springen	I shall	leap
2 du werdest	reden	thou wilt	speak
3 er werde	sein.	he will	be
ic.	haben	etc.	have.

Conditional mood.

S. 1 ich würde	springen	I should	leap
2 du würdest	reden	thou wouldst	speak
3 er würde	sein	he would	be
ic.	haben	etc.	have.

The *past future tense* is formed by the infinitive perfect of the principal verb and the present tense of werden.

PAST FUTURE TENSE.

Indicative mood.

- 3 S. er wird gesprungen sein ꝛ. he will have leapt
 er wird geredet haben ꝛ. " " " spoken.

Conjunctive mood.

er werde gesprungen sein ꝛ. he will have leapt
 er werde geredet haben ꝛ. " " " spoken.

Conditional mood.

er würde gesprungen sein ꝛ. he would have leapt
 er würde geredet haben ꝛ. " " " spoken.

In accessory sentences (§. 27.) the present indicative of the auxiliary verbs *haben* and *sein* is sometimes omitted for the sake of eurythmy, e. g. *der Mann, den ich gesehen (habe)*, „the man, whom I *have* seen“; *der Ort, wo ich gewesen (bin)*, „the place, where I *have* been“.

- 77 The *passive voice* is formed by the past participle of the principal verb and the auxiliary verb *werden* (to become, to grow), and its conjugation is effected merely by conjugating the auxiliary verb through all its tenses, simple and compound, and through all moods, e. g.

P A S S I V E V O I C E.

PRESENT TENSE.

Infinitive.

geliebet werden to be loved.

Indicative mood.

er wird geliebet he is loved.

Conjunctive mood.

er werde geliebet he is loved.

Conditional mood.

er würde geliebet he would be loved.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

er wurde geliebet he was loved.

PERFECT TENSE.*Infinitive.*

geliebt worden sein to have been loved.

Indicative mood.

er ist geliebet worden he has been loved.

Conjunctive mood.

er sei geliebet worden he has been loved.

Conditional mood.

er wäre geliebet worden he would have been loved.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

er war geliebet worden he had been loved.

FUTURE TENSE.*Indicative mood.*

er wird geliebet werden he will be loved.

Conjunctive mood.

er werde geliebet werden he will be loved.

Conditional mood.

er würde geliebet werden he would be loved.

PAST FUTURE TENSE.

er wird geliebet worden sein he will have been loved.

CHANGE OF THE VOWEL IN THE ANCIENT FORM.

- 78 Verbs of the ancient form change their vowel in the imperfect tense and past participle. All verbs of this form may be reduced into *three classes*, according to their original vowel, and these classes again are subdivided, according to the particular change of this vowel.

The first class contains all radical verbs with the vowel *i* or *e*, and a few with *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, *au*.

The second class contains all radical verbs with the diphthong *ei*

The third class contains all radical verbs with the vowel *a* and a few with *au*, *o*, *u*.

These vowels are changed according to the following scheme :

Infinitive. Imperfect tense. Past participle.

CLASS I.

<i>Subdiv.</i> 1	<i>i</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>u</i>
„ 2	<i>i</i> or <i>e</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>o</i>
„ 3	<i>i</i> „ <i>e</i> (<i>ä</i> , <i>ö</i> , <i>ü</i> , <i>au</i>)	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>
„ 4	<i>i</i> „ <i>e</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>e</i>

CLASS II.

<i>Subdiv.</i> 1	<i>ei</i>	<i>i</i> (short)	<i>i</i> (short)
„ 2	<i>ei</i>	<i>ie</i> (long)	<i>ie</i> (long)

CLASS III.

<i>Subdiv.</i> 1	<i>a</i> (<i>au</i> , <i>o</i> , <i>u</i>)	<i>ie</i>	<i>a</i> (<i>au</i> , <i>o</i> , <i>u</i>)
„ 2	<i>a</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>a</i>

- 79 The change of the vowel is sometimes attended by a charge of the following consonant, according to §. 5.

When a long radical vowel, in consequence of being changed by conjugation, becomes short, the following consonant is doubled; and if it is *b*, it is changed into *tt*, e. g.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect tense.</i>	<i>Past participle.</i>
with a long vowel	— short vowel	— short vowel
reiten	ritt	geritten
streiten	stritt	gestritten
schneiden	schnitt	geschnitten
leiden	litt	geilitten
beißen	biß, plur. bissen	gebissen
fließen	floß " flossen	geflossen
schießen	schoß " schossen	geschossen.

When on the other hand a short vowel becomes long, the following double consonant is changed into a single one e. g.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect tense.</i>	<i>Past participle.</i>
with a short vowel	— long vowel	— short vowel.
kommen	kam	gekommen
treffen	traf	getroffen
fallen	fiel	gefallen
schaffen	schuf	geschaffen
messen	maß, plur. maßen	gemessen
vergessen	vergaß " vergaßen	vergessen.

Many verbs with the original vowel *e* change this vowel into *i* (short) or *ie* (long) in the second and third persons sing. indic. pres. and in the singular of the imperative mood; the same verbs drop the termination *e* of the singular of the imperative mood, e. g.

<i>Indicative present.</i>				<i>Imperative.</i>
<i>Sing.</i>	ich gebe	du gibst	er gibt	gib
<i>Plur.</i>	wir geben	ihr gebet	sie geben	gebet
<i>S.</i>	ich helfe	du hilfst	er hilft	hilf
<i>P.</i>	wir helfen	ihr helfet	sie helfen	helfet
<i>S.</i>	ich stehle	du stiehlest	er stiehlt	stiehl
<i>P.</i>	wir stehlen	ihr stehlet	sie stehlen	stehlet
<i>S.</i>	ich nehme	du nimmst	er nimmt	nimm
<i>P.</i>	wir nehmen	ihr nehmet	sie nehmen	nehmet.

This irregularity will be marked in the following list by adding merely the imperative mood; but it is to be observed that the second and third pers. sing. ind. pres. always correspond with the imperative mood.

Second subdivision i or e (ä) — a — o			
Infinitive.	Imperative.	Imperfect.	Conditional.
to begin	beginnen	begann	begönne
" win	gewinnen	gewann	gewönne or gewänne
" run	rennen	rann	rönne
" think	sinnen	sann	sönne
" spin	spinnen	spann	spönne
" swim	schwimmen	schwam	schwömme or schwämme
" come	kommen	kam §. 73.	käme
" command	befehlen *)	befahl	beföhle
" recommend	empfehlen	empfohl	empföhle
" steal	stehlen	stahl	stöhle
" take	nehmen	nahm	nähme
" bear (children)	gebären	gebar	gebäre
" be worth	gelten	galt	gölte
" chide	schelten	schalt	schölte
" help	helfen	half	hülfe
" conceal	bergen	berg	berge
" die	sterben	starb	stürbe
" spoil or be spoiled	verderben	verdarb	verdürbe
			verdorben §. 71.

*) *sehen* to err, to miss, and *erschrecken* to frighten, are conjugated in the modern form.

82

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Conditional.</i>	<i>Past part.</i>
to sue for	werb	warb	würbe	geworben
" throw	wurf	warf	würfe	geworfen
" burst, split	birst	barst, borst	börste	geborsten
" break	brich	brach	bräche	gebrochen
" speak	sprech	sprach	spräche	gesprochen
" sting	stich	stach	stäche	gestochen
" be frightened	erschrick	erschraf	erschreie	erschrocken §. 71
" hit	triff	traf §. 79	träfe	getroffen

Third subdivision

i (ie, ü) }
e (ä, ö, au) }

— o — o

Infinitive

to shove	schieben
" disperse	stieben
" bend	biegen
" fly	fliegen
" weigh	wiegen
" tell lies	lügen
" deceive	betrügen
" flee	fliehen
" pull	ziehen
" freeze	frieren

Imperfect tense

schoß
sob
bog
flog
wog
log
betrog
sob
zog
fior

Past participle.

geschoben
gestoben
gebogen
geflogen
gewogen
gelogen
betrogen §. 71.
gestoben
gezogen
gefroren

to lose	verlieren	verlor		verloren §. 71
" offer, bid	bieten	bot		gebotten §. 79
" boil	sieden	sott	§. 79	gefotten "
" flow	fließen	floß	"	geflossen "
" enjoy	genießen	genoss	plur. floffen	genossen
" pour	gießen	goß	" genossen	gegossen
" shoot	schießen	schoss	" gossen	geschossen
" shut	schließén	schloß	" schossen	geschlossen
" sprout	sprießen	sproß	" schloffen	gesprossen
" grieve	verdrießen	verdroß	" sprossen	verdrossen §. 71
to glimmer	glimmen	glomm	" verdroffen	
" climb	klimmen	klomm		geglimmen
to creep	kriechen	kroch		gekrochen
" smell	riechen	roch		gerochen
" drip	triefen	tröpf	tröpf §. 79	getroffen
to lift up	heben	hob		gehoben
" weave	weben	wob		gewoben
" induce	bewegen*)	bewog		bewogen §. 71
" perform or	performen			
" practise	pfelegen*)	pflag		gepflogen

*) bewegen to move, and pfelegen to nurse, take care, or to be accustomed, are conjugated in the modern form.

	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Past participle</i>
to ferment	gähren		gohr	gegohren
" shear	scheren		schor	geschoren
" fester	schwären		schwör	geschworen
" swear	schwören		schwör	geschworen
" fight	fechten	sicht	socht	gefochten
" twine	flechten	flucht	flocht	geflochten
" thrash	breischen	brisch	brosch	gedroschen
" become	erlöschē	erlösch	erlösch	erloschen S. 71
" extinguished	verlöschē	verlösch	verlösch	verloschen "
" milk	messen		molt	gemolten
" melt	schmelzen	schmilz	schmolz	geschmolzen
" spring forth	quellen	quill	quoll	gequollen
" swell	schwellen	schwill	schwoll	geschwollen
to drink, applied	saufen		soff	gesoffen
beasts				
" suck	saugen		sog	gesogen
" snort	schmauben		schnob	geschnoben
" screw	schrauben		schrob	geschroben

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Past participle.</i>
to lie	liegen.		gelegen
" beg	bitten	lag	gebeten
" sit	sitzen	bat §. 79	gesehen
" tread	treten	saß	getreten
" eat	essen	trat	gegessen
" devour	fressen	aß, aßen	gefressen
" measure	messen	fraß	gemessen
" forget	vergessen	maß	vergessen
" recover, from illness		vergaß	
" read	lesen	genas	genesen
" see	sehen	las	gesehen
" happen	geschehen	saß	gesehen
" give	geben	geschah	gegeben
		gab	

Class II.

The *Original vowel*, *ei*, is changed in the past tense and past participle into *i*, which is *short* (*i*) or *long* (*ie*), according as the final consonant is *hard* or *soft*.

<i>First subdivision ei — i — i</i>		<i>Past participle.</i>	
<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>		
10 grow pale	erblich	erblichen	
„ resemble	gleich	geglichen	
„ sneak	schleich	geschlichen	
„ stroke	strich	gestrichen	
„ yield	wich	gewichen	
„ seize	griff	gegriffen	
„ pinch	kniff	gekniffen	
„ whistle	pfeiff	gepfeiffen	
„ grind	schliff	geschliffen	
„ suffer	litt	gelitten	
„ cut	schnitt	geschnitten	
„ glide	glitt	gegittien	
„ step	schritt	geschritten	
„ quarrel	stritt	gestritten	
„ ride	ritt	geritten	
„ bite	bisß	gebissen	
„ tear	riß	gerissen	
„ slit	schliß	geschliffen	
„ throw	schmiß	geschmissen	
„ apply oneself	besiße	besessen	§. 71

Second subdivision ei — ie — ie

to cry	schreien	schrie	geschrieben
" spit	spieen	spie	gespien
" prosper	gedeihen	gebieh	gebiehen
" lend	leihen	lieh	geliehen
" accuse of	zeihen	zieh	geziehen
" remain	bleiben	blieb	geblieben
" rub	reiben	rieb	gerieben
" write	schreiben	schrieb	geschrieben
" push, to drive	treiben	trieb	getrieben
" shun	meiden	mied	gemieden
" part, separate	scheiden	schied	geschieden
" be silent	schweigen	schwieg	geschwiegen
" ascend	steigen	stieg	gestiegen
" shine	scheinen	schien	gesehen
" praise	preisen	pries	gepriesen
" show	weisen	wies	gewiesen

Class III.

The original vowel *a* (in a few verbs: *au, o, ei*,) is not changed in the Participle, is modified in the 2d and third pers. sing. pres. and changed into *ie* or *a* in the past tense.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>First subdiction</i>	<i>a — te — a</i>	<i>Singul. Indicat. Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Past participle.</i>
--------------------	-------------------------	-------------------	----------------------------------	-------------------	-------------------------

to blow	blasen	2. Pers. du bläst	3. Pers. er bläst	blies	geblasen
" roast	braten	du brätst	er brät	briet	gebraten
" advise	rathen	du rätst	er rät	rieth	gerathen
" sleep	schlafen	du schläfst	er schläft	schlie	geschlafen
" fall	fallen	du fällst	er fällt	fiel	gefallen
" hold	halten	du hältst	er hält	hielt	gehalten
" catch	fangen	du fängst	er fängt	hing	gefangen
" hang	hängen	du hängst	er hängt	hing	gehängen
" let	lassen	du lässest	er läßt	ließ	gelassen
" cut	bauen	du bauest	er baut	baute	gebaut
" run	laufen	du läufst	er läuft	lief	gelaufen
" call or to be					
" called	beissen	du beißest	er beißt	biess	gebeissen
" push	stoßen			stieß	gestoßen
" call	rufen			rief	gerufen

<i>Second subdiction</i>	<i>a — u — a</i>	87
--------------------------	------------------	----

to dig	graben	grub	gegraben
" load	laden	lud	geladen
" ask	fragen	frag or fragte	gefraget

to beat	ſchlagen	bu ſchlägeſt	er ſchlägt	ſchlug	geſchlagen
" bear	tragen	bu trägeſt	er trägt	trug	getragen
" move	fabren	bu fahreſt	er fährt	fuhr	gefabren
" create	ſchaffen *)	bu ſchaffeſt	er ſchafft	ſchuf	geſchaffen
" grow	wachſen	bu wächſt	er wächſt	-wuchs	gewachſen
" wash	waſchen	bu wäſcheſt	er wäſcht	wuſch	gewaſchen

In the following the participle only is conjugated in the ancient form.

to bake	baden	gebaden
" fold	ſalten	geſalten
" ſplit	ſpalten	geſpalten
" grind	malen	gemalen
" salt	ſalzen	geſalzen

*) ſchaffen to work, is conjugated in the modern form

betraten to marry, beſatſchlagen to deliberate, veranlaſſen to occaſion, and wiſſfabren to comply, being derivatives of ſeit, Rathſchlag, Anlaß &c., are conjugated in the modern form.

Irregular Verbs.

Besides the auxiliary verbs *sein*, *haben*, and *werden*, which have been explained §. 74, the following only are really irregular.

1. Verbs taking the terminations of the ancient form

	<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Imperfect tense</i>	<i>Past part.</i>
to go	gehen	ging	gegangen
to stand	stehen	stand	gestanden
to do	thuen	that	gethan

2. Verbs taking the termination of the modern form, but changing, at the same time, their vowel.

	<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Imperf. t.,</i>	<i>Condition.</i>	<i>Past part.</i>
to bring	bringen	brachte	brächte	gebracht
to think	denken	dachte	dächte	gedacht
to burn	brennen	brannte	brennte	gebrannt
to know	fennen	fannte	fennte	gefannt
to name	nennen	nannte	nennte	genannt
to run	rennen	rannte	rennte	gerannt
to send	senden	sandte	sendete	gesandt
to turn	wenden	wandte	wendete	gewandt

Senden and wenden are also conjugated regularly in the modern form.

The following verbs form the sing. pres. by a change of vowel and without any termination in the 1st and 3d persons (like the imperfect tense of the ancient form); the rest is conjugated in the modern form, thus:

<i>Infinitive</i>		<i>Present tense</i>		<i>Indicative.</i>
dürfen	ich darf	du darfst	er darf	wir dürfen &c.
können	ich kann	du kannst	er kann	wir können "
mögen	ich mag	du magst	er mag	wir mögen "
müssen	ich muß	du mußt	er muß	wir müssen "
sollen	ich soll	du sollst	er soll	wir sollen "
wollen	ich will	du willst	er will	wir wollen "
wissen	ich weiß	du weißt	er weiß	wir wissen "

Conjunctive Conditional Imperf. t., Past part. *)

ich dürfe ic.	dürfte ic.	durfte	gedurft
ich könne	könnte	konnte	gekonnt
ich möge	möchte	mochte	gemocht
ich müsse	müßte	mußte	gemußt
ich solle	sollte	sollte	gesollt
ich wolle	wollte	wollte	gewollt
ich wisse	wüßte	wußte	gewußt

The past participle of the auxiliary verbs of modality 90
dürfen, können, mögen, müssen, sollen, wollen, is used in
forming the perfect and pluperfect tenses only when the
principal verb is omitted; if these auxiliary verbs are
connected with the infinitive of another verb, the *in-*
finite is employed instead of the participle in the
perfect and pluperfect tenses, e. g. er hat tanzen wol-
len, aber er hat es nicht gekonnt, „he wished to dance,
but he could not;“ er hat sprechen müssen, obgleich er
es nicht gewollt hat, „he has been obliged to speak,
though he did not wish it;“ er hat nicht kommen kön-
nen, „he could not come.“

The same rule applies to some other verbs requiring
an *infinitive* (without *zu*, *to*) after them, such as: lassen
to let, sehen to see, hören to hear etc., e. g. ich habe ihn
gehen lassen (not gelassen), „I have let him go;“ ich
habe das Kind schreiben sehen, „I have seen the child
write;“ ich habe sie singen hören, „I have heard her
sing.“

*) For the use of this participle see §. 76.

ALPHABETIC LIST OF THE VERBS OF THE ANCIENT
FORM AND OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS. *)

	B.	erschrecken see §. 81	gleiten see §. 84
baden	see §. 87	essen 83	glimmen 82
befehlen	81		graben 87
befleissen	84	F.	greifen 84
beginnen	81	fahren 87	
beißen	84	fallen 86	S.
bergen	81	fallen 87	haben 74
bersten	81	falten 86	halten 86
betrügen	82	fangen 82	hängen 86
bewegen	82	fechten 82	hauen 86
biegen	82	finden 80	heben 86
bieten	82	flechten 82	heißen 86
binden	80	fliegen 82	helfen 81
bitten	83	fliehen 82	
blasen	86	fließen 82	
bleiben	85	fragen 87	R.
bleichen	84	fressen 83	tennen
braten	86	frieren 82	klimmen 82
brechen	81		klingen 80
brennen	88	G.	kneifen 84
bringen	88	gähren 82	kommen 87
		gebären 81	können 89
		geben 83	friecken 82
D.		gedeihen 85	
denken	88	gehen 88	L.
dingen	80	gelingen 80	laden 87
dreischen	82	gelten 81	lassen 86
dringen	80	genesen 83	laufen 86
dürfen	89	genießen 82	leiden 84
		geschehen 83	leihen 85
E.		gewinnen 81	lesen 83
empfehlen	81	gießen 82	liegen 83
erlöschen	82	gleiches 84	lügen 82

*) Those compound verbs, which are not in this list, are conjugated in the same manner as the simple ones.

RECEIVED

Page 1
1st
2nd
3rd
4th
5th
6th
7th
8th
9th
10th

The first of these
is the fact that
the government has
been very successful
in its policy of
expansion. It has
been able to increase
the size of the
economy without
causing inflation.
This is a very
important achievement.
It shows that the
government has been
able to manage the
economy very well.
This is a very
important achievement.
It shows that the
government has been
able to manage the
economy very well.

The second of these
is the fact that
the government has
been very successful
in its policy of
expansion. It has
been able to increase
the size of the
economy without
causing inflation.
This is a very
important achievement.
It shows that the
government has been
able to manage the
economy very well.
This is a very
important achievement.
It shows that the
government has been
able to manage the
economy very well.

For the use of the

wiegen	see §. 82	wollen	see §. 89	ziehen	see §. 82
winden	80	3.		zwingen	80
wissen	89	zeigen	85		

USE OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS

haben and sein.

The perfect and pluperfect tenses of all verbs are formed by the past participle and the auxiliary verbs *haben to have* and *sein to be* (§. 75). Which of the two is to be used, depends chiefly upon the *signification* of the verb.

1. *sein to be*, is used with the following verbs:

a. *The aux. verbs sein and werden.*

Perf. ich bin gewesen — ich bin geworden

Plpft. ich war gewesen — ich war geworden.

b. All those *intransitive verbs* (§. 62), simple or compound which express:

change or transition of their subject from one condition into another or:

motion from one place to another.

e. g.	Der Mann ist gestorben	the man has died
	Der Knabe ist gewachsen	the boy has grown
	Das Blei ist geschmolzen	the lead is melted
	Der Dieb ist verschwunden	the thief has disappeared
	Das Wasser ist gefroren	the water has frozen
	Der Kranke ist genesen	the patient has recovered
	Ein Unglück ist geschehen	a misfortune has happened
	Das Feuer ist ausgegangen	the fire has gone out
	Das Schiff ist gescheitert	the ship has been wrecked.

and

Er ist gekommen	he has come
" " angekommen	" " arrived
" " gefallen	" " fallen
" " entkommen	" " escaped

Er ist gesprungen	he has jumped
" " gelaufen	" " run
Der Feind ist geflohen	the enemy has fled
Der Mond ist aufgegangen	the moon has risen.

All other verbs take *haben*, namely:

92

a. *all transitive verbs* (governing an accusative case) e g.

Er hat Sie gesehen	he has seen you
Er hat ein Buch geschrieben	he has written a book.

b. *all reflexive verbs* (governing the accus. case of the reflexive pronoun, *miß* myself, *diß* thyself, *sich* himself etc.)

e. g. Er hat sich geweigert	he has refused
" " " getäuscht	he has been mistaken
" " " gesetzt	he has seated himself
" " " gelegt	he has lain down
" " " verändert	he has changed.

c. *all impersonal verbs.*

e. g. Es hat geregnet	it has rained
" " gefroren	it has frozen.

d. *the auxiliary verbs of mood.*

e g. Er hat kommen können	he could have come
Er hat nicht gewollt &c.	he would not etc.

e. *all intransitive verbs*, not comprehended under the rule in §. 91. except *bleiben* to remain, which takes *sein*: *ich bin geblieben*.

The use of the aux. verbs *haben* and *sein*, being determined by the signification of the principal verb, it frequently happens that the same verb, according to its different significations. takes both *haben* and *sein*, or that verbs which by themselves require one auxiliary verb, assume the other, whenever their signification is altered in consequence of their being compounded with prefixes or adverbs.

This will be made more evident by the following examples:

Ich habe den Stod gebrochen Der Stod ist gebrochen
I have broken the stick. The stick has broken.

Der Arzt hat den Kranken geheilt Die Wunde ist geheilt
The physician has cured the The wound has healed.
patient.

Das Pferd hat das Kind ge- Das Kind ist an das Fen-
treten ster getreten
The horse has kicked the child. The child has stepped to
the window.

Die Sonne hat den Schnee ge- Der Schnee ist geschmolzen
schmolzen
The sun has melted the snow. The snow has melted.

Es hat heute Nacht gefroren Das Wasser ist gefroren
There has been a frost to night. The water has frozen.

Ich habe sehr gefroren Die Pflanzen sind erfroren
I have been very cold. The plants have been frozen.

Das Pferd hat das Schiff gezogen Das Heer ist nach Frank-
reich gezogen
The horse has pulled the ship. The army has gone to
France.

Der Tisch hat sich gezogen Die Störche sind nach Afrika
gezogen.
The table is warped. The storks have migrated
to Africa.

Es hat in der Stube gezogen
There has been a draught in
the room.

Ich habe das Kind aus-gezogen Ich bin aus-gezogen
I have undressed the child. I have changed lodgings.

Die Blume hat gestern geblüht Heute ist sie verblüht
The flower bloomed yester- Today it is faded.
day.

Ich habe gehungert Ich bin verhungert
I have been hungry. I am starved.

Ich habe geschlafen
I have slept.

Ich bin eingeschlafen
I have fallen asleep.

The whole of the conjugation of verbs is explained 94 by the following specimen of the ancient and modern forms of conjugation, including the passive voice and the reflective form, and of the conjugation of the auxiliary verbs of modality.

ANCIENT FORM OF CONJUGATION.

Indicative.

Sing. ich springe, I spring
 du springest (springst)
 er (sie, es) springet (springt)
Plur. wir springen
 ihr springet (springt)
 sie springen.

Sing. ich sprang, I sprung
 du sprangest (sprangst)
 er sprang
Plur. wir sprangen
 ihr spranget
 sie sprangen.

Conjunctive.

Present Tense.

ich springe, I spring
 du springest
 er springe
 wir springen
 ihr springet
 sie springen.

Imperfect Tense.

ich spränge, I should spring
 du sprängest
 er spränge
 wir sprängen
 ihr spränget
 sie sprängen.

Perfect Tense.

ich sei
 du seiest (seist)
 er sei
 wir seien
 ihr seiet
 sie seien

ich wäre
 du wärest
 er wäre
 wir wären
 ihr wäret
 sie wären

I should have
 sprung
 gesprungen.

S. ich bin
 du bist
 er ist
P. wir sind
 ihr seid
 sie sind

I have sprung
 gesprungen.

Pluperfect Tense.

S. ich war
du warst
er war
P. wir waren
ihr waret
sie waren

I had sprung
gesprungen.

P. ich werde
du wirst
er wird
S. wir werden
ihr werdet
sie werden

I shall spring
springen.

ich werde
du werdest
er werde
wir werden
ihr werdet
sie werden

I shall spring
springen.

ich würde
du würdest
er würde
wir würden
ihr würdet
sie würden

I should spring
springen.

S. ich werde
du wirst
er wird
P. wir werden
ihr werdet
sie werden

I shall have
sprung
gesprungen sein.

ich werde
du werdest
er werde
wir werden
ihr werdet
sie werdet

I shall have
sprung
gesprungen sein.

ich würde
du würdest
er würde
wir würden
ihr würdet
sie würden

I should have
sprung
gesprungen sein.

Imperative.

Sing. springe spring
Plur. springet.

Infinitive.

Pres. springen (to) spring
Perf. gesprungen sein (to) have sprung.

Participles.

Pres. springend springing
Perf. gesprungen sprung.

Supine.

Pres. zu springen to spring.
Perf. gesprungen zu sein to have sprung.

MODERN FORM OF CONJUGATION.

Indicative.

S. ich höre I hear
 du hörst (hörst)
 er (ſie, es) höret (hört)
P. wir hören
 ihr höret (hört)
 ſie hören.

Conjunctive.

Present Tense.

ich höre I hear
 du hörſt
 er höre
 wir hören
 ihr höret
 ſie hören.

Conditional.

ich hörte I should hear
 du hörteſt
 er hörte
 wir hörten
 ihr hörtet
 ſie hörten.

Imperfect Tense.

S. ich hörte I heard.
 du hörteſt
 er hörte
P. wir hörten
 ihr hörtet
 ſie hörten.

Perfect Tense.

S.	ich habe	I have heard
	du hast	
	er hat	gehört.
P.	wir haben	
	ihr habet	
	sie haben	

ich habe	I have heard
du habest	
er habe	gehört.
wir haben	
ihr habet	
sie haben	

ich hätte	I should have heard
du hättest	
er hätte	gehört.
wir hätten	
ihr hättet	
sie hätten	

Pluperfect Tense.

S.	ich hatte	I had heard
	du hattest	
	er hatte	gehört.
P.	wir hatten	
	ihr hättet	
	sie hatten	

ich hatte	I had heard
du hattest	
er hatte	gehört.
wir hatten	
ihr hättet	
sie hatten	

ich hätte	I should have heard
du hättest	
er hätte	gehört.
wir hätten	
ihr hättet	
sie hätten	

Future Tense.

S.	ich werde	I shall hear
	du wirst	
	er wird	hören.
P.	wir werden	
	ihr werdet	
	sie werden	

ich werde	I shall hear
du werdest	
er werde	hören.
wir werden	
ihr werdet	
sie werden	

ich würde	I should hear
du würdest	
er würde	hören.
wir würden	
ihr würdet	
sie würden	

<i>Indicative.</i>		<i>Conjunctive.</i>		<i>Conditional.</i>	
S. ich werde du wirst er wird P. wir werden ihr werdet sie werden	I shall have heard gehört haben.	<i>Past Future Tense.</i>		ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden	I should have heard gehört haben.
		ich werde du werdest er werde wir werden ihr werdet sie werden	I shall have heard gehört haben.		
		<i>Imperative.</i>		<i>Infinitive.</i>	
		Sing. höre hear Plur. höret.	Pres. hören (to) hear Perf. gehört haben (to) have heard.		
		<i>Participles.</i>		<i>Supine.</i>	
		Pres. hörend hearing Perf. gehört heard	Pres. zu hören to hear. Perf. gehört zu haben to have heard.		
Passive Voice.					
<i>Indicative.</i>		<i>Conjunctive.</i>		<i>Conditional.</i>	
S. ich werde du wirst er wird P. wir werden ihr werdet sie werden	I am heard gehört.	<i>Present Tense.</i>		ich würde du würdest er würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden	I should be heard gehört.
		ich werde du werdest er werde wir werden ihr werdet sie werden	I am heard gehört.		

Imperfect Tense.

S. ich wurde } I was heard
 du wurdest }
 er wurde } gehört.
 P. wir wurden }
 ihr wurdet }
 sie wurden }

Perfect Tense.

S. ich bin } I have been ich wäre } I should have
 du bist } heard du wärest } been heard
 er ist } gehört worden. er wäre } gehört worden.
 P. wir sind } wir wären }
 ihr seid } ihr wäret }
 sie seien } sie wären }

Pluperfect Tense.

S. ich war } I had been
 du warst } heard
 er war } gehört worden.
 P. wir waren }
 ihr waret }
 sie waren }

<i>Indicative.</i>		<i>Conjunctive.</i>		<i>Conditional.</i>	
<i>Future Tense.</i>		<i>Future Tense.</i>			
<i>S.</i> ich werde	I shall be	ich werde	I shall be heard	ich würde	I should be
du wirst	heard	du werdest		du würdest	heard
er wird	gehört werden.	er werde	gehört werden.	er würde	gehört werden.
<i>P.</i> wir werden		wir werden		wir würden	
ihr werdet		ihr werdet		ihr würdet	
sie werden		sie werden		sie würden	

<i>Past Future Tense.</i>			
<i>S.</i> ich werde	I shall have	ich würde	I should have
du wirst	been heard	du würdest	been heard
er wird	gehört worden	er würde	gehört worden
<i>P.</i> wir werden	sein.	wir würden	sein.
ihr werdet		ihr würdet	
sie werden		sie würden	

Infinitive.

Pres. gehört werden (to) be heard
Perf. gehört worden sein (to) have been heard.

Participles.

Perf. gehört heard
Fut. zu hörend to be heard

Supine.
Pres. gehört zu werden to be heard.
Perf. gehört worden zu sein to have been heard.

Conjugate in the same way the following verbs :

Ancient form.

fallen to fall
 schreiben to write
 schlafen to sleep
 essen to eat
 nehmen to take
 geben to give etc.

Modern form.

reisen to travel
 arbeiten to work
 sagen to say
 bestellen to order
 weinen to weep
 lachen to laugh etc.

REFLECTIVE VERB.

95

Present Tense.

S. ich schäme mich I am ashamed P. wir schämen uns
 du schämest dich ihr schämet euch
 er schämet sich sie schämen sich.

Imperfect Tense.

ich schämte mich I was ashamed etc.

Perfect Tense.

ich habe mich geschämt I have been ashamed etc.

Future Tense.

ich werde mich schämen I shall be ashamed etc.

VERB WITH AN AUXILIARY VERB OF MODALITY.

Present Tense.

ich kann (soll, will &c.) schlafen I can sleep etc.

Imperfect Tense.

ich konnte schlafen I could sleep etc.

Perfect Tense.

ich habe schlafen können I could have slept, or
 I have been able to sleep etc.

Future Tense.

ich werde schlafen können I shall be able to sleep etc.

CHAPTER V.

OF SUBSTANTIVES.

- 96 Substantives are divided into *Concrete*, as, *man, house, garden, hero*; and *Abstract*, as, *humanity, virtue, heroism, length, etc.* Concrete substantives are either *Common names, Proper names, or Names of materials* (§. 38). As to their formation, substantives are either *Simple, or Compound*, and simple substantives are either *Primary, or Secondary derivatives* (Chap. III.)

Substantives express *notions*; they are general terms, denoting the whole of a species (§. 23). Therefore the definite or indefinite *article* is generally added to point out a particular individual (§. 43), as: *the man, a man, the house* etc.

The declension of substantives in German depends upon their gender, and the gender is not determined, as in English, by their signification, but by their derivation. Names of inanimate things are masculine, or feminine, as well as neuter; and even pronouns, standing in the place of masculine or feminine substantives, must be masculine or feminine, in order to agree with what they represent. Thus for instance: *der Ofen* (the stove), being masculine, it is said: *er ist schwarz* „(he is black);“ *ich sehe ihn* „(I see him);“ *die Thür* (the door) is feminine; accordingly we say: *sie ist offen* „(she is open);“ *machte sie zu* „(shut her)“ etc. The gender of *animate* beings, however, depends upon their being either *male* or *female* *).

*) The following substantives are to be excepted, being *neuter*: *das Weib, das Frauenzimmer* (woman), *das Kind* (child); and all diminutives in *chen* or *lein* (§. 54, e. g. *das Männchen* (the little man), *das Mädchen* (young girl), *das Fräulein* (miss) etc. Moreover the following rules must be observed:

1. *The names of seasons, months, and days are masculine*, as: *der Frühling, der Sommer, der Sonntag, der Mai* &c.

Gender.

The gender of German substantives is determined by 97 their derivation, as will appear from the following rules:

1) *Substantives which have neither an affix, nor the augment ge, are masculine.*

2) *Substantives which have the augment ge, are neuter.*

3) *Substantives which have one of the affixes: er, ei, en, ling, are masculine.*

4) *Substantives which have one of the affixes: e, ei, in, heit, feit, ſchaft, ung, are feminine.*

5) *Substantives which have one of the affixes: ſten, lein, niß, ſal, ſel, thum, are neuter.*

Examples for these rules may be found, in sufficient number, in Chapter III.

EXCEPTIONS.*)

1. *Substantives without an affix are masculine; 98 the following are exceptions:*

Feminine:

die Art kind	die Bruſt breast	die Burg castle
die Banf bench	die Bucht bay	die Fahrt passage

2. *Most proper names of rivers are feminine, as: die Donau (Danube), die Elbe, die Weſer, die Moſel &c. (except: der Rhein, der Main, der Neckar, der Lech, der Inn, and some others.)*

3. *Proper names of countries and towns are neuter, except. die Schweiz (Switzerland), die Pfalz (Palatinate), die Laußi (Lusatia), and some others.*

4. *Infinitives, phrases, letters etc., used as substantives, are neuter, as: das Eſſen (eating, dinner), das Geſehen (going), das Vaterunſer (the Lord's prayer), das Vergißmeinnicht (the forget-me-not), das A und das O (the A and the O) etc.*

*) The following lists contain thoſe substantives only, the gender of which ought to be learned by heart, becauſe they are frequently uſed. Substantives of an irregular gender, when leſs uſual, are added in the notes. Thus the following are fem:

die Faust fist	die Luft air	die Schlucht deep valley
die Flucht flight	die Lust pleasure	die Schmach shame
die Flut flood, tide	die Macht might	die Schrift writing
die Flur field	die Maus mouse	die Schuld guilt
die Form form	die Milch milk	die See sea
die Fracht freight	die Nacht night	die Spur trace
die Frucht fruit	die Noth need	die Stadt town
die Gans goose	die Nuß nut	die Stirn forehead
die Gunst favour	die Pest plague	die That deed
die Hand hand	die Pflicht duty	die Thür door
die Haut skin	die Post post	die Wahl choice
die Huld favour	die Prachtsplendour	die Wand wall
die Jagd hunting	die Qual torment	die Welt world
die Kost food	die Saat seed	die Wuth rage
die Kraft strength	die Scham shame	die Zahl number
die Kunst art	die Schaar troop	die Zeit time
die Last load	die Schlacht battle	die Zucht discipline.
die List cunning		

99

Neuter :

das Amt office	das Boot boat	das Feld field
das Bad bath	das Breit board	das Fell skin
das Band band, tie	das Brod bread	das Fest festival
das Beil hatchet	das Buch book	das Fett fat
das Bein leg	das Dach roof	das Fleisch flesh
das Bett bed	das Ding thing	das Garn yarn
das Bier beer	das Dorf village	das Geld money
das Bild image	das Ei egg	das Gift poison
das Blatt leaf	das Eis ice	das Glas glass
das Blei lead	das Erz ore	das Glied limb
das Blut blood	das Faß cask	das Glück luck

Die Andacht, Bahn, Brunn, Brut, Frist, Fuhr, Gicht, Gier, Glut, Gruft, Haft, Haft, Hut (guard), Kluft, Kur, Willfür, Laus, Markt, Mast, Mauth, Milz, Rath, Ohm, Pacht, Pein, Raft, Ruhr, Sau, Schau, Scheu, Schicht, Schnur, Schur, Sicht, Streu, Sucht, Tracht, Trift, Wacht, Wehr, Zier, Zunft; and those compound with kunst, and sicht. The following are neuter: das Nas, Antlip, Bestek, Ed, Fack, Floss, Harz, Heft, Hirn, Leid, Loth, Mal, Malz, Mus, Reiß, Scheit, Schmalz, Stift, Berdek, Berließ, Wehr, Wert, Berg.

das Gold gold	das Loch hole	das Schild sign of
das Grab grave	das Loos lot	an inn
das Gras grass	das Mahl meal	das Schilf reed
das Haar hair	das Marf marrow	das Schloß lock,
das Haupt head	das Maß measure	castle
das Haus house	das Maul mouth	das Schwein swine
das Heer army	das Meer sea	das Schwert sword
das Heil safety	das Mehl meal	das Seil rope
das Hemd shirt	das Moos moss	das Sieb sieve
das Herz heart	das Nest nest	das Spiel play
das Heu hay	das Netz net	das Stroh straw
das Holz wood	das Obst fruit	das Stück piece
das Horn horn	das Ohr ear	das Tau cable
das Huhn hen	das Öl oil	das Thal dale
das Jahr year	das Paar pair	das Thier animal
das Joch yoke	das Pech pitch	das Thor gate
das Kalb calf	das Pfand pledge	das Tuch cloth
das Kind child	das Pferd horse	das Vieh beast
das Kinn chin	das Pfund pound	das Volk people
das Kleid clothing	das Rad wheel	das Wachs wax
das Knie knee	das Recht law	das Weib woman
das Korn corn	das Reh roe	das Werk work
das Kraut herb	das Reich kingdom	das Wild game
das Kreuz cross	das Rind yung ox	das Wort word
das Lamm lamb	das Rohr reed	das Zelt tent
das Land land	das Ross horse	das Zeug stuff
das Laub foliage	das Salz salt	das Ziel limit
das Licht light	das Schaf sheep	das Zink zink
das Lied song	das Schiff ship	das Zinn tin.
das Lob praise		

2. Substantives with the augment *ge* are neuter; 100 the following are exceptions:

Masculine:

der Gebrauch use	der Genuß enjoy-	der Geschmack taste
der Gedanke thought	ment	der Gestank stink
der Gehalt contents	der Geruch smell	der Gewinn gain.
(of a vessel)	der Gesang song	or Gewinnst

Feminine:

die Geberde gesture die Gefahr danger die Geschwulst tum-
 die Gebühr duty die Gemeinde parish our
 die Geduld patience die Geschichte history die Gestalt figure
 die Gewalt power

and those which have one of the affixes: in, ung, heit,
 feit, schaft.

3. Substantives with affixes.

- 101 *Substantives in er are masculine; the following are exceptions:*

*Feminine: *)*

die Aber vein die Kammer chamber die Schulter schoul-
 die Butter butter die Leiter ladder der
 die Dauer duration die Mauer wall die Steuer tax
 die Feder pen die Schleuder sling die Trauer mourning
 die Feier celebration

*Neuter: *)*

das Alter age das Lager couch das Pulver powder
 das Fenster window das Vaster vice das Ruder oar
 das Feuer fire das Leder leather das Silber silver
 das Fieber fever das Messer knife das Ufer shore
 das Futter food for das Muster pattern das Wasser water
 animals das Opfer sacrifice das Wetter weather
 das Kloster monas- das Pflaster plaister, das Wunder wonder
 tery pavement das Zimmer room-
 das Kupfer copper das Polster cushion

- 102 *Substantives in el are masculine; the following are exceptions:*

*Feminine **):*

die Deichsel pole of die Distel thistle die Fadel torch
 a carriage die Fabel fable die Gabel fork

*) The following are less usual: die Acker, Auster, Blatter, Eister, Fister, Kelter, Klammer, Klapper, Leber, Leiter, Letter, Marter, Mafer, Ratter, Kummer, Biber, Wimper, Zeder, Ziffer, Zither — and das Gitter, Malter, Nieder.

**) The following are less usual: die Ahsel, Angel, Drossel,

die Insel island	die Pappel poplar	die Sichel sickle
die Kartoffel potatoe	die Regel rule	die Tafel table
die Kugel ball	die Schachtel box	die Trommel drum
die Muschel shell	die Schüssel plate,	die Wurzel root
die Nadel needle	dish	die Zwiebel onion.
die Orgel organ		

Neuter :

das Mittel means	das Siegel seal	das Orakel oracle
das Segel sail	das Exempel ex- ample	das Kapitel chapter.

Substantives in en are masculine; the following are 103 exceptions:

Neuter :

das Becken basin	das Kissen cushion	das Wesen being
das Eisen iron	das Laken sheet	das Zeichen sign.
das Füllen colt	das Wappen arms	

and a great number of abstracts which, being infinitives, are neuter (§. 96), as:

das Essen dining, dinner	das Leben life	das Vergnügen plea- sure.
-----------------------------	----------------	------------------------------

Substantives in e are feminine; the following are 104 exceptions:

Masculine :

a) *Many names of male persons, as:*

der Bote messenger; der Knabe boy etc.

b) *The following names of animals:*

der Affe ape	der Hase hare	der Rabe raven
der Falke falcon	der Ochse ox	der Weihe kite,
der Drache dragon	der Löwe lion	

Eichel, Fessel, Fiebel, Geißel, Gurgel, Hummel, Mandel, Nessel, Rubel, Rassel, Schaufel, Schindel, Semmel, Spindel, Stoppel, Troddel, Trüffel, Wachtel, Windel — and das Scharmügel, Biesel.

c) and:

der Käse	cheese	der Haufe	heap	} which, commonly, assume the affix en: der Frieden etc.
der Buchstabe	letter	der Name	name	
der Friede	peace	der Same	seed	
der Funke	spark	der Wille	will	
der Glaube	belief	der Schade	damage	

Neuter:

das Auge	eye	das Ende	end	das Erbe	inheri- tance.
----------	-----	----------	-----	----------	-------------------

105 *Substantives in nist are neuter; the following abstracts are exceptions:*

Feminine:

die Bedrängniß	affliction	die Fäulniß	putrefaction
die Befugniß	authority	die Finsterniß	darkness
die Bekümmerniß	sorrow	die Kenntniß	knowledge
die Besorgniß	apprehension	die Verdammniß	damnation
die Betrübniß	affliction	die Verderbniß	corruption
die Empfängniß	conception	die Versäumniß	omission
die Erlaubniß	permission	die Wildniß	wilderness.
die Ersparniß	savings		

*Substantives in thum are neuter.**Masculine are:*

der Irrthum	error;	der Reichthum	riches;	der Wachsthum	growth.
-------------	--------	---------------	---------	---------------	---------

106 The following substantives, being of irregular formation, are not comprehended under the preceding rules:

der Habicht	hawk	die Heirat	marriage	der Abend	evening
das Dickicht	thicket	die Gegend	country	der Honig	honey
der Monat	month	die Jugend	youth	der Essig	vinegar
die Armut	poverty	die Tugend	virtue	der Pfennig	penny
die Heimat	home				

107 Some substantives have assumed *different genders* in different dialects, or have even altered their gender in particular significations, or in particular compounds only; in consequence of which they are now employed in two genders. Thus we say:

der Verdacht suspicion	die Andacht devotion
der Hochmuth pride	die Sanftmuth gentleness
der Edelmuth generosity	die Großmuth magnanimity
	die Schwermuth melancholy
	die Wehmuth
	die Demuth humility
die Scheu shyness	der Abscheu horror
der Verkehr intercourse	die Rückkehr return.

A different signification is especially pointed out by a difference of gender in the following substantives:

der Band the volume of a book	das Band the ribbon
der Bund the alliance	das Bund the bundle
der Chor the chorus	das Chor the choir
die Erkenntniß knowledge	das Erkenntniß judicial decision, verdict
der Gehalt the contents	das Gehalt the salary
der Lohn reward	das Lohn the wages
der Mensch man	das Mensch wench
der Schild the shield	das Schild the sign of an inn
der See the lake	die See the sea
der Theil part of a whole	das Theil the share, portion
der Verdienst the profit of labour	das Verdienst the merit.

To these we must add the following words, which 108 have the same sound, but belong either to different roots, or to different forms of derivation:

der Erbe heir	das Erbe inheritance
der Geißel hostage	die Geißel scourge
der Harz the Harz forest	das Harz resin
der Heide pagan	die Heide heath
der Hut hat	die Hut guard
der Kunde customer	die Kunde knowledge
der Leiter conductor	die Leiter ladder
die Mark mark (8 ounces)	das Mark marrow, §. 101.
and province, e. g. Mark Brandenburg	

der Mast	mast of a ship	die Mast	fattening (pigs etc.)
der Messer	a person who measures	das Messer	knife
der Ohm	uncle	die Ohm	awme (a liq. meas.)
der Schenke	butler	die Schenke	ale-house
der Sprosse	sprout, descendant	die Sprosse	step of a ladder
der Stift	the peg, tag	das Stift	ecclesiastical establishment
der Thor	fool	das Thor	gate
die Wehr	defence	das Wehr	dam
der Weihe	kite	die Weihe	consecration.

109

GENDER OF FOREIGN SUBSTANTIVES.

Foreign substantives, on being adopted in German *), generally retain the gender of their original language. Some of them, however, which are assimilated in their form to words originally German, have assumed another gender, according to the analogy of their form, as:

<i>Masculine :</i>	<i>Feminine :</i>	<i>Neuter :</i>
der Körper body	die Kanone cannon	das Fenster window
der Zepter scepter	die Melone melon	das Fieber fever
der Tempel temple	die Zitrone lemon	das Pulver powder
der Punkt point	die Passage passage	das Echo echo
der Marsch march	die Oper opera	das Kameel camel
etc.	etc.	etc.

*) The German nation has never been subject to any of those political changes which have influenced the languages of the other modern nations, most of which are, like the English, the result of a mixture of Roman and Teutonic elements. The German language, however, has adopted many foreign words, taken from the Greek, Latin and French languages, which frequently differ from words originally German, by their foreign accentuation, as: Natur, Kultur, General, Abbotat, Kardinal, or even by their foreign pronunciation, as: Gente, Diner, which are pronounced like the French: *genie*, *diner*. There are, however, many foreign words which have been admitted into German at an early period, and which, by being constantly employed in popular language, have been entirely assimilated in their form to words originally German. Of this description are: Körper corpus, Pöbel people, Pulver pulvis, Fenster fenestra, and many others which are pronounced and written like words originally German.

DECLENSION.

110

Substantives are inflected by *Number* and *Case*. There are two *Numbers*, the *Singular* and *Plural*; and four *Cases*, the *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative* and *Accusative* (§. 30).

There are in German two declensions, the **Ancient** and the **Modern**, formed by adding the following terminations to the substantive:

*Ancient declension.**Modern declension.*

<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	—	<i>Plur.</i>	— e	<i>Sing.</i>	—	<i>Plur.</i>	— en
<i>Gen.</i>	— es		— e		— en		— en
<i>Dat.</i>	— e		— en		— en		— en
<i>Acc.</i>	—		— e		— en		— en

Many substantives of the ancient declension, a list of which will be given §. 125, take in the Plural the terminations

Nom. — er
Gen. — er
Dat. — ern
Acc. — er.

Ancient declension.

<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	der Berg	the mountain
<i>Gen.</i>	des Berg-es	of the mountain
<i>Dat.</i>	dem Berg-e	to the mountain
<i>Acc.</i>	den Berg	the mountain
<i>Plur. Nom.</i>	die Berg-e	the mountains
<i>Gen.</i>	der Berg-e	of the mountains
<i>Dat.</i>	den Berg-en	to the mountains
<i>Acc.</i>	die Berg-e	the mountains.

Modern declension.

<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	der Mensch	the man
<i>Gen.</i>	des Mensch-en	of the man
<i>Dat.</i>	dem Mensch-en	to the man
<i>Acc.</i>	den Mensch-en	the man

<i>Plur. Nom.</i>	die Mensch-en	the men
<i>Gen.</i>	der Mensch-en	of the men
<i>Dat.</i>	den Mensch-en	to the men
<i>Acc.</i>	die Mensch-en	the men

111

General rules of declension.

a) *Masculine and neuter substantives are inflected in the ancient declension.* (Exceptions § 122).

b) *Feminine nouns are inflected in the modern declension.* (Exceptions §. 124.)

c) *In substantives of the ancient declension, the vowels are, generally, modified in the plural number; viz.*

a	into ä;	as	Hand	hand	<i>Plur.</i>	Hände;
o	" ö;	"	Kopf	head	"	Köpfe;
u	" ü;	"	Thurm	tower	"	Thürme;
au	" äu;	"	Baum	tree	"	Bäume.

(Exceptions §. 126.)

d) *All substantives, ending in: er, el, en, en, lein, drop the vowel e in all terminations of declension, thus:*

*Ancient declension.**Modern declension*

<i>Nom. Sing.</i>	—	<i>Plur.</i>	—	<i>Sing.</i>	—	<i>Plur.</i>	— n
<i>Gen.</i>	— s	—	—	— n	—	— n	— n
<i>Dat.</i>	—	— n	—	— n	—	— n	— n
<i>Acc.</i>	—	—	—	— n	—	— n	— n

The same is often done in the sing. number of all substantives of the ancient declension.

e) *Feminine substantives take no terminations in the singular number.*

Exercises on the ancient declension.

<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	der Sohn	das Schiff	der König
	(the son)	(the ship)	(the king)
<i>Gen.</i>	des Sohnes	des Schiffes	des Königs
<i>Dat.</i>	dem Sohne	dem Schiffe	dem Könige
<i>Acc.</i>	den Sohn	das Schiff	den König

<i>Plur. Nom.</i>	die Söhne	die Schiffe	die Könige
<i>Gen.</i>	der Söhne	der Schiffe	der Könige
<i>Dat.</i>	den Söhnen	den Schiffen	den Königen
<i>Acc.</i>	die Söhne	die Schiffe	die Könige.

Decline: der Freund the friend, der Feind the enemy, der Fuß the foot, der Fluß (observe §. 5) the river, das Pferd the horse, das Werk the work, der Pfennig the penny, der Jüngling the youth.

<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	der Vater (the father)	der Löffel (the spoon)	der Garten (the garden)
<i>Gen.</i>	des Vaters	des Löffels	des Gartens
<i>Dat.</i>	dem Vater	dem Löffel	dem Garten
<i>Acc.</i>	den Vater	den Löffel	den Garten
<i>Plur. Nom.</i>	die Väter	die Löffel	die Gärten
<i>Gen.</i>	der Väter	der Löffel	der Gärten
<i>Dat.</i>	den Vätern	den Löffeln	den Gärten
<i>Acc.</i>	die Väter	die Löffel	die Gärten.

Decline: der Bruder the brother, der Apfel the apple, der Vogel the bird, der Hafen the port, das Messer the knife, das Zeichen the sign.

Feminine Substantives.

<i>Sing. Nom.</i>	die Braut the bride	die Mutter the mother
<i>Gen.</i>	der Braut	der Mutter
<i>Dat.</i>	der Braut	der Mutter
<i>Acc.</i>	die Braut	die Mutter
<i>Plur. Nom.</i>	die Bräute	die Mütter
<i>Gen.</i>	der Bräute	der Mütter
<i>Dat.</i>	den Bräuten	den Müttern
<i>Acc.</i>	die Bräute	die Mütter.

Decline: die Kunst art, die Hand hand, die Stadt town, die Nacht night, die Tochter daughter

Exceptions to rule a.

The following masculine substantive *do* decline according to the *modern form* :

1. der Bär	bear	der Herr, lord, master
der Bauer	peasant	der Hirt shepherd
der Fürst	prince	der Mensch man
der Graf	count	der Narr fool
der Held	hero	der Thor fool
der Gefell	companion	der Vorfahr ancestor.

2. *All those ending in e* (§. 104, a. b); as :

der Affe	ape	der Schütze	shooter
der Hase	hare	der Jude	jew
der Löwe	lion	der Schwabe	Swabian
der Ochse	ox	der Franke	Frank
der Rabe	raven	der Sachse	Saxon
der Bote	messenger	der Britte	Briton
der Knabe	boy	der Franzose	Frenchman.*)
der Riese	giant		

3. *All those names of persons*, taken from foreign languages (French, Latin, or Greek), which end in *t* or are formed from greek words in *λογος, σοφος, νομος* etc ; as :

der Advokat	advocate	der Jurist	lawyer
der Soldat	soldier	der Theolog	theologian
der Poet	poet	der Philolog	philologist
der Jesuit	jesuit	der Philosoph	philosopher
der Adjutant	adjutant	der Astronom	astronomer
der Protestant	protestant	der Patriarch	patriarch
der Student	student	der Monarch	monarch
der Phantast	humorist	der Geograph	geographer
der Christ	christian	der Anatom	anatomist etc.

and the foreign masculine substantives :

der Prinz	prince	der Ducat	ducat
der Tyrann	tyrant	der Comet	comet
der Katholik	catholic	der Planet	planet
der Elephant	elephant	der Konsonant	consonant

and some others, less usual.

*) Der Deutsche German, der Bediente servant, and some others are declined like adjectives; see §. 136,

The following substantives are declined according 113
the *ancient declension in the singular, and the modern in the plural* :

der Diamant diamond	der Rubin ruby
der Fasan pheasant	der See lake
der Forst forest	der Sporn spur
der Gevatter godfather	(plur. die Sporen)
der Juwel jewel	der Staat state
der Kapaun capon	der Stachel sting
der Konsul consul	der Stiefel boot
der Lorbeer laurel	der Thron throne
der Muskel muscle,	der Traktat treaty
der Pantoffel slipper	der Unterthan subject
der Pfau peacock	der Vetter cousin
der Psalm psalm	der Zins interest (paid for money)

das Auge eye	das Ende end	das Herz heart
das Bett bed	das Hemd shirt	das Ohr ear.

The singular number of: Herz is irregular; Gen. des Herzens; Dat. dem Herzen.

Exceptions to rule b.

The following feminine substantives are declined in 114
the *ancient form*, without, however, taking any termination in the singular number, according to §. 121.

die Angst anguish	die Luft air
die Ausflucht evasion	die Lust delight
die Art axe	die Macht power *)
die Bank bench	die Magd maid-servant
die Braut bride	die Maus mouse
die Brust breast	die Mutter mother
die Faust fist	die Nacht night
die Frucht fruit	die Naht seam
die Gans goose	die Noth affliction.

*) The compounds of Macht: Ohnmacht swoon, and Vollmacht credentials, are declined in the modern form.

die Geschwulst	tumour	die Ruß	nut
die Gruft	grave	die Sau	sow
die Hand	hand	die Schnur	string
die Haut	skin	die Stadt	town
die Kluft	fissure	die Tochter	daughter
die Kraft	force	die Wand	wall
die Kuh	cow	die Wurst	sausage
die Kunst	art	die Zunft	guild
die Laus	louse	die Zusammenkunft	meeting

and all those made by the *fix* *nif*, §. 116.

115

Plural of the ancient form in er:

The following substantives have the plural in *er*.

1. the masculine substantives:

der Bösewicht	malefactor	der Ort	place
der Dorn	thorn	der Rand	margin
der Geist	ghost	der Vormund	guardian
der Gott	God	der Wald	forest
der Leib	body	der Wurm	worm.
der Mann	man		

2. The neuter substantives:

das Amt	office	das Horn	horn
das Bad	bath	das Huhn	hen
das Band	ribbon	das Kalb	calf
das Bild	image	das Kind	child
das Blatt	leaf	das Kleid	clothing
das Brett	board	das Korn	grain
das Buch	book	das Kraut	herb
das Dach	roof	das Lamm	lamb
das Denkmal	monument	das Land	land
das Dorf	village	das Licht	candle
das Ei	egg	das Lied	song
das Fach	shelf	das Loch	hole
das Faß	cask	das Maul	mouth
das Feld	field	das Nest	nest
das Geld	money	das Pfand	pledge
das Gemach	room	das Rad	wheel

das Gemüth mind	das Reis selen
das Geschlecht race	das Rind young ox
das Gesicht face	das Schloß lock and palace
das Gespenst spectre	das Schild sign of an inn
das Gewand garment	das Schwert sword
das Glas glass	das Thal dale
das Glied limb	das Tuch cloth
das Grab grave	das Volk people
das Gras grass	das Weib woman
das Haus house	das Wort word.
das Holz wood	

3. All substantives terminating in thum (plur. thümer);
as: der Irrthum error, der Reichthum riches, das Für-
stenthum principality, das Kaiserthum empire.

Exceptions to rule c. Modification of the vowel in pl. 116

The vowels a, o, u, au are not modified in the plu-
ral of:

1) the following *masculine substantives*: *)

der Aal, eel	pl. die Aale
der Arm arm	" die Arme
der Docht wick	" die Döchte
der Dolch dagger	" die Dölche
der Halm stalk	" die Halme
der Huf hoof	" die Hufe
der Hund dog	" die Hunde
der Laut sound	" die Laute
der Mond moon	" die Monde
der Monat month	" die Monate
der Pfad path	" die Pfade
der Schuh shoe	" die Schuhe
der Stoff stuff	" die Stoffe
der Tag day	" die Tage.

*) The following: Amboss anvil, Anwalt attorney, Gemahl husband, Hauch breath, Kobold hobgoblin, Luchs lynx, Malsalamander, Staar starling, Trunkenbold drunkard, Unhold monster, Vielfraß glutton, Wiechopf hoop, are either unusual, or seldom used in the plural number.

2) All those *neuter substantives* which do not assume the sign *r* in the plural number (§. 115), as:

das Brod	loaf of bread	plur. die Brode
das Loos	lot	„ die Lose
das Ross	horse	„ die Rosse
das Schaf	sheep	„ die Schafe.

3) All those substantives which have one of the affixes: *er, el, en, or sal*, as:

der Maler	the painter	plur. die Maler
der Pudel	poodle-dog	„ die Pudel
der Namen	name	„ die Namen
das Schicksal	fate	„ die Schicksale &c.

The following only modify the vowel in the plural number:

der Acker	field	plur. die Äcker
der Bruder	brother	„ die Brüder
der Hammer	hammer	„ die Hämmer
der Schwager	brother-in-law	„ die Schwäger
der Vater	father	„ die Väter
der Boden	bottom	plur. die Böden
der Faden	fathom	„ die Fäden
der Garten	garden	„ die Gärten
der Graben	ditch	„ die Gräben
der Hafen	port	„ die Häfen
der Ofen	stove	„ die Öfen
der Schaden	damage	„ die Schäden.
der Apfel	apple	plur. die Äpfel
der Hammel	wether	„ die Hammel
der Handel	quarrel	„ die Händel
der Mangel	fault	„ die Mängel
der Mantel	cloak	„ die Mäntel
der Nagel	nail	„ die Nägel
der Sattel	saddle	„ die Sättel
der Schnabel	beak	„ die Schnäbel
der Vogel	bird	„ die Vögel.

117 There are some substantives which have two forms of the plural number, viz.

das Ding	thing	plur	die Dinge and Dinger
der Ort	place	„	die Orte and Örter
der Dorn	thorn	„	die Dornen and Dörner
der Hahn	cock	„	die Hähnen and Hähne
der Schwan	swan	„	die Schwänen and Schwäne

The different forms of the plural of the following substantives have different significations :

das Band	Plur.	die Bänder	ribbons
		die Bande	chains, ties
die Bank	„	die Bänke	benches
		die Banken	commercial banks
das Bett	„	die Bette	beds
		die Betten	bedding
das Gesicht		die Gesichter	faces
		die Gesichte	visions
das Horn	„	die Hörner	horns
		die Horne	different kinds of horn
die Sau	„	die Säue	pigs
		die Sauen	wild boars
das Wort	„	die Wörter	single words
		die Worte	words forming sentences (speech).
das Ding	„	die Dinge	things generally
		die Dinger	things, most part animals or creatures; e. g. die kleinen Dinger the small animals; die jungen Dinger the young girls
das Stück	„	die Stücke	pieces
		die Stücken	fragments.

Declension of Proper Names.

When proper names of persons are used in the plural number, they are declined as common names; viz. those of male persons in the ancient form, and those of females in the modern; e. g. die *Heinriche*, die *Marien*. In the singular number, names of males, and those of females which have not the termination *e*, have only the genitive case pointed out by the sign *s*; e. g. *Heinrichs*, *Elisabeths*. The names of females with the termination

e, take *enſ* in the genitive, and *en* in the dative and accusative cases; e. g.

Nom. Marie *Gen* Marienſ *Dat. and Acc.* Marien
 Karoline Karolinenſ Karolinen.

Those names of males, the final sound of which is an *s*, *ß*, *ſch*, or *x*, or *z*, also take the sign *enſ* in the genitive case; e. g. Voß-enſ, Marx-enſ, Friſ-enſ. Foreign names which have the unaccented terminations *aſ*, *eſ*, *iſ*, *uſ*, admit of no sign of declension; and all cases of proper names, which cannot be marked by inflection, are denoted by the definitive article (§. 121); e. g. *deſ* Eliäſ, *deſ* Ferreſ, *der* Doris, *dem* Plato.

Proper names of countries and places, like names of persons, have only the genitive marked by the sign *s*; e. g. Wiens, Berlins. When a final *s*, *ß*, *x*, or *z*, does not permit the sign of the genitive case to be assumed, or whenever another case is to be distinguished, the proper name is placed in apposition to a common name; e. g. *der* Stadt Mainz, *der* Feſtung Schweidniß, *dem* Königreich Spanien.

On the use of Articles.

- 119 The general rules for the use of the definite and indefinite articles being the same in German as in English, it will be sufficient to explain the particular cases in which the German practice differs from the English.

The definite article is placed before the following substantives:

der Himmel	heaven	der Adel	nobility
die Erde	earth	die Demokratie	democracy
das Paradies	paradise	die Natur	nature
die Hölle	hell	das Leben	life
das Fegfeuer	purgatory	der Tod	death
die Kirche	church	der Zufall	chance
das Chriſtenthum	christianity	das Schickſal	fate
das Judenthum	judaism etc.	das Glück	luck, fortune
das Parlament	parliament	das Geſeg	law
die Regierung	government	der Menſch	man (mankind).
die Monarchie	monarchy		

The definite article must be placed before the *proper names of months and days*; as, der Sonntag, der Montag, der März, der Dezember; before the names of *mountains*; as, der Vesuv Vesuvius, der Etna mount Etna; before the *feminine names of countries*; as, die Schweiz Switzerland, die Moldau Moldavia, die Türkei Turkey; before *proper names of persons when connected with an attributive adjective*; as, der arme Johann poor John, die kleine Sophie little Sophia, der junge Herr Jones young Mr. Jones, der heilige Petrus St Peter; and before *proper names and titles* when used in a familiar way; e. g. rufe den kleinen Johann call little John; grüße die Marie remember me to Mary; der Herr Stuart Mr. Stuart, die Frau Müller Mrs. Müller, die Königin Elisabeth Queen Elizabeth etc.

In German the definite article is employed in a peculiar way, in order to represent the whole of a genus or species of concrete things, or the whole extent of an abstract notion. Thus in expressions like: durch die Vernunft unterscheidet sich der Mensch von dem Thiere; by reason man is distinguished from beasts; der Fisch schwimmt und der Vogel fliegt, fishes swim and birds fly; *all men* (mankind), *all* beasts, fishes, and birds, are expressed by the definite article standing before the substantive in the singular number: and in expressions like: das Gold ist dehnbar, gold is ductile; das Wasser ist farblos, water is colourless; das Quecksilber ist ein flüssiges Metall, quicksilver is a liquid metal, *all* gold, water, or quicksilver, is understood. The same is done in the plural number; e. g. die Eichen sind schöne Bäume, oaks are fine trees; die Weiber haben ein stärkeres Gefühl für weibliche Fehler als die Männer, women have a much stronger sense of female error than men. In the same manner we say, e. g. das Leben ist kurz, die Kunst aber lang, *vita brevis, ars longa*; die Tugend ist kein leerer Schall, virtue is not an empty sound; der Glaube macht selig, faith is saving. Substantive-infinitives generally take the definite article; e. g. das Sprechen ist dem Menschen natürlich, language is natural to man; das Regieren ist eine

schwere Kunst, governing is a difficult art; er haßt das Studiren, „he hates study.“

The definite article is employed, instead of the indefinite, in such expressions, as: twice *a* week, zweimal die Woche; six miles *a* day, sechs Meilen den Tag; fifteen shillings *a* yard, 15 Schilling die Elle.

- 121 The definite article is frequently added if the case of a substantive can not be otherwise distinguished (by terminations or a preceding preposition). Thus it is said: das Leben der Fürsten the life of princes; but das Leben guter Fürsten, the life of good princes, because the gen. case is then distinguished by the termination of guter. — Augustus adoptirte den Tiberius, Augustus adopted Tiberius, but: Tiberius folgte auf Augustus, Tiberius succeeded Augustus; das Heer des Xerxes, the army of Xerxes, but: das Heer Napoleons, the army of Napoleon.

- 122 The article is frequently omitted in both languages or in one of them only, in particular phrases and idioms, e. g.

to go to bed	zu Bette gehen
to keep a school	Schule halten
(to go to school	in die Schule gehen)
to cast anchor	Anker werfen
to run the risk	Gefahr laufen
at table	bei Tisch
on foot	zu Fuße
on horseback	zu Pferde
in a coach	zu Wagen
word for word	Wort für Wort
point by point	Stück für Stück
from head to foot	von Kopf zu Fuß
from hand to mouth	von Hand zu Mund.

OBSERVATIONS.—The article is frequently omitted for the sake of eurythmy, when two or more substantives connected by *und* and, are to express one simple idea; e. g. du sollst Vater und Mutter ehren, thou shalt honour (thy) father and (thy) mother (parents); er hat Weib und Kind verlassen, he has left (his) wife and (his) children (his family); er gelobet mit Mund und Hand, he promises with (his) mouth and (his) hand (by

an oath). The same applies especially to expressions formed by alliteration; e. g. Haus und Hof verlassen, to leave house and home; sie sind mit Mann und Maus ertrunken, they were drowned altogether (with men and mice); Ross und Reuter, (the) horse and (his) rider; über Stock und Stein laufen, to run over sticks and stones; mit Rath und That beistehen, to assist in word and deed, with heart and hand. The article is also omitted in expressions like: ich habe es in Händen, I have it in (my) hands; er sieht es vor Augen, he sees it before (his) eyes; in which the possessive pronoun is generally added in English.

Titles of books take no article; as, deutsche Grammatik, a Grammar of the German language. 123

The English put the indefinite article before *few, hundred, thousand*, which words take no article in German; as, a few persons wenige Personen, a thousand years tausend Jahre.

The position of the article is in German the same as in English; but it never follows the words: *both, half*, nor the adjective with *so* or *too*; e. g. both the boys die beiden Knaben; half the world die halbe Welt, so large a town eine so große Stadt; too large a town eine zu große Stadt; such a liar solch (or so) ein Lügner, or ein solcher Lügner; all the children, alle die Kinder; all the world die ganze (whole) Welt.

Plural number.

Every language has its own peculiar practice, with regard to the use of the plural number. Many abstract substantives are not susceptible of the plural number in German, though the corresponding substantives in English in some cases assume it. Such are, 124

die Ankunft	arrival	der Rath	advice
der Argwohn	suspicion	der Raub	the spoil
der Beginn	the beginning	der Schein	appearance
der Bund	the alliance	der Schmuck	ornament
der Dank	thanks	der Strand	strand
die Ehre	honour	der Streit	the dispute
das Elend	misery	der Sturz	the fall
der Empfang	receipt	der Tadel	reproach
die Furcht	fear	der Tausch	exchange

das Glück fortune
 der Gram grief
 der Hader dispute
 der Jammer misery
 der Kauf the purchase
 der Kummer affliction
 die Liebe love
 das Lob praise
 der Lohn the reward
 der Mund mouth
 die Pracht splendour
 der Trost consolation

das Unrecht wrong
 das Unglück misfortune
 der Unterricht instruction
 der Verdacht suspicion
 der Verstand understanding
 der Verdruss vexation
 die Vorsicht precaution
 der Wahn the false idea
 der Zank quarrel
 der Zwang the constraint
 der Zwist dispute.

Along with which the substantive-infinitives, *Leben* life; *Vermögen* fortune; *Verlangen* wish; *Entzücken* rapture; *Ansehen* authority; *Einkommen* revenue, must be classed. In these substantives the plural number of the English is supplied either by the singular number, e. g. *viel Dank*, *Lob*, *Furcht* &c., many thanks, praises, fears; or by other synonymous substantives; e. g. *Bündnisse*, *Kümmernisse*, *Belohnungen*, *Tröstungen*, *Zwistigkeiten*, *Einkünfte*, alliances, afflictions, rewards, consolations, quarrels, revenues.

Names of materials, e. g. *Asche* ashes; *Sand* sand; *Thau* dew; *Schnee* snow; *Regen* rain; *Unkraut* weeds &c., do not assume the plural number; and along with them are to be classed, in this respect, all masculine and neuter names of plants; e. g. *Kohl* cabbage; *Hopfen* hops. Exceptions are *der Schwamm*, *der Pilz*, *das Gras*, *das Kraut*, *das Moos*, and some others, when different species of the same genus are to be expressed.

- 125 In German, as in other languages, some substantives are used only in the plural number. Some of them, e. g. *Ähnen* ancestors; *Eltern* parents; *Alpen* alps; *Beinkleider* and *Hosen* trousers; *Fußstapfen*, footsteps; *Gebrüder* brothers; *Geschwister*, brother and sister; *Gliedermaßen* limbs; *Leute* people; *Schranken* bounds, imply plurality of individuals; — but others, e. g. *Briefschaften* papers; *Einkünfte* revenue; *Gefälle* rents; *Kosten* expenses; *Masern* measles; *Molken* whey; *Ränke* tricks; *Rötheln* measles; *Sporteln* fees; *Treber* lees; *Trüm-*

mer ruins; *Truppen* troops; *Zeitläufte* occurrences of the time, express notions of materials conceived without any distinction of individuals in the plural number. *Fasten* Lent; *Ferien* vacation (holidays); *Ostern* Easter; *Pfingsten* Whitsuntide, and *Weihnachten* Christmas, were originally conceived as expressing a plurality of days; and the plural number has been retained in them, though they are not now conceived in the same way.

OBSERVATION 1. — *Leute* (French *gens*) implies a number of persons in the most indefinite way, without distinguishing either the species, as is done in *Menschen*, or the sex, as in *Männer*. In this way the plural forms, *Landleute* country people; *Eheleute* married people; *Ebelleute* noblemen; *Kaufleute* merchants, (from *Landmann*, *Ebelmann* &c.) are distinguished from *Ehrenmänner*, men of honour; *Amtmänner* bailiffs; *Ehemänner* married men (from *Ehrenmann* &c.); and from *Unmenschen* inhuman (beings); *Halbmenschen* half-men (from *Unmensch* &c.)

OBSERVATION 2. — The substantives *das Haar* the hair; *das Eingeweide* and *das Gedärm* the intestines; *das Gewürm* worms; *das Gebein* the bones of a body, although susceptible of the plural number, are also used collectively in the singular number.

The names of measures, numbers, or weights, when preceded by numerals, do not take the inflection of the plural number; e. g. *sechs Fuß lang* six foot long; *zwei Paar Schuhe* two pair of shoes; *drei Duzend Äpfel* three dozen of apples; *sieben Stück Vieh* seven head of cattle; *vier Pfund Brod* four pound of bread. The same applies to *Mann*, if it implies a number e. g. *ein Regiment von tausend Mann* a regiment of a thousand men. Feminine substantives, however, and those which imply a measure of time, and money are excepted from this rule; e. g. *sechs Ellen Tuch* six yards of cloth; *sieben Meilen* seven miles; *drei Jahre* three years; *sechs Pfennige* six pence. The expression *es ist vier Uhr* it is four o'clock, is elliptical, instead of *es ist vier an der Uhr*.

CHAPTER VI.

OF ADJECTIVES.

- 127 Adjectives are employed as *Attributive or Predicative* Adjectives. They are *Attributive Adjectives*, when used to qualify a substantive; as, *der gute Mann, das franke Kind, das schöne Glas*. But they are *Predicative Adjectives*, when standing in place of a verb, and expressing the predicate of a sentence; as, *der Mann ist gut, das Kind ist frank, das Glas ist schön*.

Adjectives are moreover termed *Substantive Adjectives*, when standing in place of a substantive, and expressing a person or thing; e. g. *der Gute, die Kranken, das Schöne*. The use of Substantive Adjectives is not so limited in German as in English; for all adjectives may be so used, both in the singular and plural numbers, and in all those cases in which the English language requires an additional substantive, to express the notion of *man, woman, or thing*; e. g. *ein Weiser, a wise man; der Arme, the poor man; die Armen, the poor people; die Guten, the good ones; die Alte, the old woman; eine Schöne, a fair one; das Gute, good things; das Neue, new things; das Große, great things*. This usage, however, is allowable only when the substantive understood implies either the notion of a *person* generally, and without any further distinction than that of *sex*, or the notion of *things* in the most general and indefinite way.

Substantive Adjectives are written with capital initial letters, like real substantives.

- 128 Adjectives are inflected by *Gender, Number, and Case*, according to the following rules.

1. The *Attributive Adjective* has the same Gender, Number, and Case, as the substantive to which it refers.
2. The *Substantive Adjective* has the Gender, Number,

and Case, which the substantive understood would have, if expressed.

3. The *Predicative Adjective* has no inflection.

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

There are in German two declensions, formed by adding the following terminations to the adjective.

Ancient declension.

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom. masc.</i>	— er	<i>fem.</i> — e	<i>neuter</i> — es	— e
<i>Gen.</i>	— es	— er	— es	— er
<i>Dat.</i>	— em	— er	— em	— en
<i>Acc.</i>	— en	— e	— es	— e

Modern declension.

<i>Nom. masc.</i>	— e	<i>fem.</i> — e	<i>neuter</i> e	— en
<i>Gen.</i>	— en	— en	— en	— en
<i>Dat.</i>	— en	— en	— en	— en
<i>Acc.</i>	— en	— e	— e	— en

All adjectives are inflected in both declensions, thus:

I. Ancient declension.

<i>Sing. Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> gut-er	gut-e	gut-es	gut-e
<i>Gen.</i> gut-es	gut-er	gut-es	gut-er
<i>Dat.</i> gut-em	gut-er	gut-en	gut-en
<i>Acc.</i> gut-en	gut-e	gut-es	gut-e

II. Modern declension.

<i>Nom.</i> gut-e	gut-e	gut-e	gut-en
<i>Gen.</i> gut-en	gut-en	gut-en	gut-en
<i>Dat.</i> gut-en	gut-en	gut-en	gut-en
<i>Acc.</i> gut-en	gut-e	gut-e	gut-en

When adjectives with one of the affixes *er*, *el*, *en*, are inflected, the vowel *e* of the *affix*, not that of the termination, is commonly dropped; as in:

edel	eben	bitter
edle	ebne	bittre
edlen	ebnen	bittren
edlem	ebnem	bittrem
edler	ebner	bittrer.

Ganz whole, and halb half, take no terminations when preceding neuter names of places and countries; e. g. ganz England, in ganz England, halb London, von halb London.

GENERAL RULES OF DECLENSION.

- 130 *Adjectives take the terminations of the modern declension, when preceded by an article, pronoun, or numeral which has a termination of the ancient declension.*

In all other cases they assume the terminations of the ancient declension.

a. The definite article *der, die, das*, and the simple demonstrative pronouns, *dieser this, jener that*, having the terminations of the ancient declension, are followed by an adjective in the modern declension.

e. g. the old man

this young man

Singular.

<i>Nom.</i> der alt-e Mann	dieser jung-e Mann
<i>Gen.</i> des alt-en Mannes	dieses jung-en Mannes
<i>Dat.</i> dem alt-en Manne	diesem jung-en Manne
<i>Acc.</i> den alt-en Mann	diesen jung-en Mann

Plural.

<i>Nom.</i> die alt-en Männer	diese jung-en Männer
<i>Gen.</i> der alt-en Männer	dieser jung-en Männer
<i>Dat.</i> den alt-en Männern	diesen jung-en Männern
<i>Acc.</i> die alt-en Männer	diese jung-en Männer

the little flower

this beautiful flower

Singular.

<i>Nom.</i> die klein-e Blume	diese schön-e Blume
<i>Gen.</i> der klein-en Blume	dieser schön-en Blume
<i>Dat.</i> der klein-en Blume	dieser schön-en Blume
<i>Acc.</i> die klein-e Blume	diese schön-e Blume

Plural.

<i>Nom.</i> die klein-en Blumen	diese schön-en Blumen
<i>Gen.</i> der klein-en Blumen	dieser schön-en Blumen
<i>Dat.</i> den klein-en Blumen	diesen schön-en Blumen
<i>Acc.</i> die klein-en Blumen	diese schön-en Blumen

the good child

that bad child

Singular.

<i>Nom.</i> das gut-e Kind	jenes schlecht-e Kind
<i>Gen.</i> des gut-en Kindes	jenes schlecht-en Kindes
<i>Dat.</i> dem gut-en Kinde	jenem schlecht-en Kinde
<i>Acc.</i> das gut-e Kind	jenes schlecht-e Kind

Plural.

<i>Nom.</i> die gut-en Kinder	jene schlecht-en Kinder
<i>Gen.</i> der gut-en Kinder	jener schlecht-en Kinder
<i>Dat.</i> den gut-en Kindern	jenen schlecht-en Kindern
<i>Acc.</i> die gut-en Kinder	jene schlecht-en Kinder.

b. The indefinite article *ein*, a; the numerals *ein* one, 131 *sein* no, and the possessive pronouns *mein* my, *dein* they, *sein* his, its, *ihr* her, *unser* our, *euer* your, *ihr* their, are declined after the ancient form, except, in the *nom. masc. and neut.*, and the *acc. neut. of the sing.*, in which cases they take no termination.

The following adjective, therefore, is inflected in the ancient declension, in the *nom. masc. and neut.*, and the *acc. neut. of the sing.*, and the rest in the modern declension; e. g.

an old man

a good child

*Singular.**Nom.* ein alt-er Mann

ein gut-es Kind

Gen. eines alt-en Mannes

eines gut-en Kindes

Dat. einem alt-en Manne

einem gut-en Kinde

Acc. einen alt-en Mann

ein gut-es Kind.

In the plural, there being no article, the adjective is declined in the ancient form.

Nom. alt-e Männer

gut-e Kinder

Gen. alt-er Männer

gut-er Kinder

Dat. alt-en Männer

gut-en Kindern

Acc. alt-e Männer

gut-e Kinder.

my young friend

my dear child

*Singular.**Nom.* mein jung-er Freund

mein lieb-es Kind

Gen. meines jung-en Freundes

meines lieb-en Kindes

Dat. meinem jung-en Freunde

meinem lieb-en Kinde

Acc. meinen jung-en Freund

mein lieb-es Kind

*Plural.**Nom.* meine jung-en Freunde

meine lieb-en Kinder

Gen. meiner jung-en Freunde

meiner lieb-en Kinder

Dat. meinen jung-en Freunden

meinen lieb-en Kindern

Acc. meine jung-en Freunde

meine lieb-en Kinder

my white goose

*Singular.**Plural.**Nom.* meine weiß-e Gans

meine weiß-en Gänse

Gen. meiner weiß-en Gans

meiner weiß-en Gänse

Dat. meiner weiß-en Gans

meinen weiß-en Gänsen

Acc. meine weiß-e Gans

meine weiß-en Gänse.

- 132 c. Adjectives, not preceded by an article, pronoun, or numeral, which has a termination of the ancient form, are declined in the ancient form themselves

*Singular.**Plural.*

old wine

<i>Masc. Nom.</i>	alt-er Wein	alt-e Weine
<i>Gen.</i>	alt-es Weines	alt-er Weine
<i>Dat.</i>	alt-em Weine	alt-en Weinen
<i>Acc.</i>	alt-en Wein	alt-e Weine

fresh air

<i>Fem. Nom.</i>	frisch-e Luft	frisch-e Lüfte
<i>Gen.</i>	frisch-er Luft	frisch-er Lüfte
<i>Dat.</i>	frisch-er Luft	frisch-en Lüften
<i>Acc.</i>	frisch-e Luft	frisch-e Lüfte

new bread

<i>Neut. Nom.</i>	frisch-es Brod	frisch-e Brode
<i>Gen.</i>	frisch-es Brodes	frisch-er Brode
<i>Dat.</i>	frisch-em Brode	frisch-en Broden
<i>Acc.</i>	frisch-es Brod	frisch-e Brode.

Wenig (undeclined) alt-er Wein, viel (undec.) frisch-e Luft, zwei (undec.) frisch-e Brode are declined in the same manner.

The Gen. Sing. masc. and neut. sometimes ends in en instead of es: alten Weines, frischen Brodes.

The nom. and acc. sing. neut. often drop their termination: frisch Brod, new bread; schön Wetter, fine weather.

Substantive Adjectives are inflected according to the 133 same rules.

*Singular.**Plural.*

the wise (man)

<i>Nom.</i>	der Weis-e	die Weis-en
<i>Gen.</i>	des Weis-en	der Weis-en
<i>Dat.</i>	dem Weis-en	den Weis-en
<i>Acc.</i>	den Weis-en	die Weis-en

a wise (man)

<i>Nom.</i>	ein Weis-er	Weis-e
<i>Gen.</i>	eines Weis-en	Weis-er
<i>Dat.</i>	einem Weis-en	Weis-en
<i>Acc.</i>	einen Weis-en	Weis-e

the old (woman)

<i>Nom.</i> die Alt-e	die Alt-en
<i>Gen.</i> der Alt-en	der Alt-en
<i>Dat.</i> der Alt-en	den Alt-en
<i>Acc.</i> die Alt-e	die Alt-en

good things

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> das Gut-e	Gut-es
<i>Gen.</i> des Gut-en	Gut-es
<i>Dat.</i> dem Gut-en	Gut-em
<i>Acc.</i> das Gut-e	Gut-es

The following substantive adjectives have no corresponding adjectives in English, but are always rendered by words which are really substantives:

officer der Beamte, ein Beamter
plur. die Beamten *plur.* Beamte
 servant der Bediente, ein Bedienter &c.
 an acquaintance der Bekannte, ein Bekannter
 the German der Deutsche, ein Deutscher
 stranger der Fremde, ein Fremder
 prisoner der Gefangene, ein Gefangener
 ambassador der Gesandte, ein Gesandter
 traveller der Reisende, ein Reisender
 relation der Verwandte, ein Verwandter.

When two adjectives precede and refer to the same substantive, both are declined in the same way, according to the preceding rules; e. g. der arme alte Mann, the poor old man, ein armer alter Mann, a poor old man. Armer alter Mann poor old man etc.

Exceptions of §. 130.

- 134 1. The adjective takes the terminations of the ancient declension, when preceded by the nom. or accus. plural of the following words:

einige	some	keine	no	alle	all
etliche	„	andere	other	solche	such
manche	several	viel	many		
mehrere	„	wenig	few		

e. g. Einige deutsche Kaiser, some german emperors; viele, mehrere, wenig treue Freunde, many, several, few true friends; viele deutsche Fürsten, many German princes. After *alle*, however, the adjective follows the ancient declension only, when pointed out by emphasis; e. g. *alle große Angelegenheiten*, all important affairs.

2. After *ich*, *du*, *wir*, *ihr*, the adjective takes the terminations of the modern declension; except in the nom. sing.

<i>Nom.</i> ich armer Mann	<i>plur.</i> wir armen Männer
<i>Gen.</i> mir armen Manne	uns armen Männern
<i>Dat.</i> mich armen Mann	uns armen Männern,

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Comparison is formed by the termination *er* for the ¹³⁵ *comparative*, and *est* (*st*) for the *superlative* degree in *all* adjectives; e. g. groß, great, größer, größest; angenehm, agreeable, angenehmer, angenehmst; merkwürdig, remarkable, merkwürdiger, merkwürdigst.

In the termination of the superlative degree, eurythmy requires the vowel *e* to be dropped when the final sound of the adjective is not a lingual consonant (*b*, *t*, *s*, *ß*, *sch*, *z*, *st*); e. g. schönst, the finest, instead of; schön-est-er; liebster, the dearest, instead of lieb-est-er; but on the other hand, breitest, the broadest; süßest, the sweetest; kürzest, the shortest. In participles, however, which have the unaccented termination *et* or *end*, the vowel *e* is also omitted; e. g. der gebildetste, the most accomplished; der reizendste, the most charming; and the practice is variable in those adjectives, the final sound of which is a vowel or a double liquid consonant; e. g. frei, free; froh, happy; dünn, thin; voll, full; starr, stiff.

In the comparative degree of those adjectives which have one of the affixes *el*, *er*, *en*, the vowel of that affix is commonly dropped as in their declension; e. g. edler, bitterer, ebner; but in the superlative they drop the other *e*; e. g. edelste, bitterste, ebenste, according to the first rule.

The vowels *a*, *o* and *u* are modified in the comparative and superlative degree of monosyllabic adjectives; e. g. in *stark*, strong, *stärker*, der *stärkste*; *fromm*, pious, *frömm*, der *frömmste*; *flug*, wise, *flüger*, der *flügste*. The following, however, are exceptions:

bunt, speckled	farg, stingy	fatt, satisfied
faß, fallow	lahm, lame	schlaff, slack
fade, insipid	laß, tired	schlanf, slender
falsch, false	lose, loose	schroff, rough
flach, flat	matt, wearied	starr, stiff
fröh, merry	morsch, mellow	stolz, proud
gerade, straight	platt, flat	straff, stiff
glatt, smooth	plump, clumsy	stumm, dumb
hohl, hollow	roh, raw	stumpf, blunt
hold, favourable	rund, round	toll, mad
kahl, bald	sacht, slow	voll, full
knapp, narrow	sanft, soft	zahm, tame.

As also those which have the diphthong *au*; e. g. *rauh*, rough; *taub*, deaf. Practice is variable with regard to *blaß*, pale, and *gesund*, sound.

136 The following forms of comparison are *irregular* or *defective*:

	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
gut good	besser better	best best
viel much	mehr more	meist or mehrst most
hoch high	höher higher	höchst highest
nah near	näher nearer	nächst nearest, next
	früher earlier	erst earliest, first
		lest last
	weniger less	mindest least

From the superlatives: *der erste* the first, *der letzte* the last, new comparatives are formed: *der erstere* the former, *der letztere* the latter; from *mehr* more, is formed: *mehrere* several.

The following comparative and superlative forms are made from *adverbs of place*:

außen outside	äußer outer	äußerst utmost
innen inside	inner inner	innerst inmost
vorn before	vorder fore	vorderst foremost and first
hinten behind	hinter hinder	hinterst hindmost
oben above	ober upper	oberst uppermost
unten below	unter under	unterst undermost.

All comparatives and superlatives are declined like adjectives, with the exception of *mehr more*, and *min-der less*, which are indeclinable; *früher, earlier*, is only used as an adverb.

CHAPTER VII.

OF PRONOUNS.

There are three kinds of pronouns, viz *Personal*, 137 *Demonstrative*, and *Interrogative*.

Pronouns are used in place of a *substantive*; as, *he, that, who*; — or of an *adjective*; as, *this house, which house*; — or of an *adverb*; as, *here, there, where*.

There are accordingly three classes of pronouns, viz.

1. *Substantive pronouns*,
2. *Adjective pronouns*,
3. *Adverbial pronouns*. *)

The adjective personal pronouns are termed *possessive pronouns*.

*) The adverbial Pronouns will be explained in Chap. IX.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

First person

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Substantive personal pronoun.	<i>Nom.</i> ich I	wir we
	<i>Gen.</i> meiner of me	unser of us
	<i>Dat.</i> mir to me	uns to us
	<i>Acc.</i> mich me	uns us
Possessive pron.	mein my	unser our.

Second person.

Substantive personal pronoun.	<i>Nom.</i> du thou	ihr you
	<i>Gen.</i> deiner of thee	euer of you
	<i>Dat.</i> dir to the	euch to you
	<i>Acc.</i> dich thee	euch you
Possessive pron.	dein thy	euer your

Third person.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Substantive personal pronoun.	<i>Nom.</i> er he	sie she.	es it
	<i>Gen.</i> seiner of him	ihrer of her	seiner of it
	<i>Dat.</i> ihm to him	ihr to her	ihm to it
	<i>Acc.</i> ihn him	sie her	es it

Plur. of all genders.

sie they
ihrer of them
ihnen to them
sie them

Possessive pron. sein his, its ihr her ihr their.

OBSERVATION. In the place of the genitive meiner, deiner, seiner, the obsolete forms mein, dein, sein are sometimes employed; e. g. vergiß mein, nicht, forget me not; gedenke mein, remember me.

The pronoun es is frequently *contracted*, for the sake of eurythmy, with other words standing before it, and the omission of the vowel is then marked by the

apostrophe ('); e. g. gib's mir, give it me; nimm's hin, take it. This contraction is commonly made use of, when es is preceded by other unaccented syllables, e. g. ist's gewiß? is it certain? hast du's gesehen? have you seen it? er hat mir's gesagt, he told it to me.

The *possessive pronouns* are declined according to 139 the ancient declension of adjectives, with this peculiarity that, when standing with a substantive, their termination is dropped in the *nom. masc. and neut.* and *acc. neut.* thus:

<i>Sing. Masc. Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> mein	mein-e	mein-e
<i>Gen.</i> meine-s	mein-er	mein-er
<i>Dat.</i> mein-em	mein-er	mein-en
<i>Acc.</i> mein-en, mein	mein-e	mein-e.

The termination is retained, however, when the subst. referred to is omitted; e. g. mein Hut ist weiß, deiner ist schwarz, my hat is white, yours is black; gib mir dein Pferd, und nimm meines, give me your horse and take mine.

When the possessive pronouns thus refer to a preceding substantive, they frequently take the definite article, in which case they sometimes assume the affix *ig*, and are declined according to the modern declension of adjectives; e. g. nimm mein Messer; du hast das deine (or deinige) verloren, und ich brauche das meine (or meinige) nicht, take my knife; you have lost yours, and I do not want mine.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The demonstrative pronoun *der, die, das*, which 140 is also used as the definite article, is declined according to the ancient form of adjectives, with a few alterations.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Masc. Neut.</i>		<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>der</i>	<i>das</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>die</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>des</i>	<i>des</i>	<i>der</i>	<i>der</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>dem</i>	<i>dem</i>	<i>der</i>	<i>den</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>den</i>	<i>das</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>die.</i>

The Gen. Sing. and Plur. and Dat. Plur., when standing without a substantive, take the forms:

<i>Gen. Sing. Masc. or Neut.</i>	dessen
„ „ <i>Fem.</i>	deren
<i>Gen. Plur.</i>	derer or deren *)
<i>Dat.</i>	„ denen.

2. Dieser *this*, and jener *that*, are declined according to the ancient declension of adjectives. The nom. and acc. neut. of dieser frequently drop the termination (es): dies (instead of dieses).

3. The *compound pronouns* derselbe *the same*, derjenige *he, (who)*, are declined like adjectives with the article (§. 133), thus:

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	derselbe	dieselbe	dasselbe
<i>Gen.</i>	desselben	derselben	desselben
<i>Dat.</i>	demselben	derselben	demselben
	etc.	etc.	etc.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

141 1. Interrogative substantive pronoun.

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	wer who	was what
<i>Gen.</i>	wessen whose	wessen (wess) of what
<i>Dat.</i>	wem to whom	(wanting)
<i>Acc.</i>	wen whom	was what.

2. Interrogative adjective pronoun.

Welcher, welche, welches *which*, is declined according to the ancient declension of adjectives.

*) The different employment of the two forms, derer and deren, will be explained §. 330—332.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i> welcher	welche	welches	welche
<i>Gen.</i> welches	welcher	welches	welcher
<i>Dat.</i> welchem	welcher	welchem	welchen
<i>Acc.</i> welchen	welche	welches	welche.

PRONOUNS CONTRACTED WITH PREPOSITIONS.

The neuter substantive pronouns *dies this*, *das that*, ¹⁴² and *was what*, are contracted with all prepositions; they are placed before them and assume the adverbial forms: *hier (hier) da wo*, if the preposition begins with a consonant, and: *hier, dar, wor*, if it begins with a vowel.

<i>hieran</i> on this	<i>daran</i> on that	<i>woran</i> on what
<i>hieraus</i> from this	<i>daraus</i> from that	<i>woraus</i> from what
<i>hierin</i> in this	<i>darin</i> in that	<i>worin</i> in what
<i>hiebei</i> at this	<i>dabei</i> at that	<i>wobei</i> at what
<i>hiedurch</i> by this	<i>dadurch</i> by that	<i>wodurch</i> by what
<i>hiezü</i> to this	<i>dazü</i> to that	<i>wozü</i> to what
etc.	etc.	etc.

These forms correspond the English: *therein, therefrom, whereby* etc.; but they are much more usual in German than in English (see §. 143, 148, 153).

ON THE USE OF PRONOUNS.

1. Personal pronouns.

The Germans, when addressing a person generally use ¹⁴³ the *third person plural* of the personal pronoun; e. g. *Sie sind nicht wohl*. you are not well; *wer ist Ihr Arzt?* who is *your* physician? *Sie kennen ihn nicht*, you do not know him.

Till within some centuries the Germans, like the French and the English, addressed each other in familiar conversation by the second person singular, and in formal intercourse by the second person plural. Since that period

another mode of address has been adopted, as expressive of respect, viz. by the third person plural (*sie*), whilst inferiors were and still are addressed in the third person singular (*er*, *sie*).

Although the Germans adopted these modern forms, they still retained the ancient form. There exists, therefore, a considerable variety in accomodating the mode of address to the different relations of superiority, inferiority, friendship, and love. The use of the third personal pronoun in the plural, *sie*, is generally received in the polite conversation of people of education; and even inferiors, if not in dependence on the speaker, would be offended if otherwise addressed. The second personal pronoun in the plural, *ihr*, is usual among peasants and other people of lower condition, and is never used by others except in addressing persons of that description. This practice is, however, more common in the country than in towns. The third personal pronoun in the singular, *er* for male and *sie* for female persons, is used only in addressing inferiors, particularly servants and others, who are dependent upon the speaker; it is also employed by the country people of some German provinces in speaking to their equals. Being considered however as indicating a want of respect, this mode of address should scarcely ever be used.

The natural address, *Du*, is much more usual at the present day in German than in other modern languages. As it excludes all ceremonious formality, it is reserved for relations of confidence, friendship, and love. We use it in addressing our family, our best friends, and the Supreme Being *).

OBSERVATION. — In addressing a person in writing, we always give a capital letter to the pronoun, personal or possessive, referring to that person; e. g. *ich bitte Sie (Dich, Euch) um Ihre (Deine, Eure) Freundschaft*, I beg for your friendship.

*) Schiller makes the Spanish prince Don Carlos say to his friend Posa: *Noch eine Bitte: Kenne mich du. Ich habe Deinesgleichen stets beneidet um dies Vorrecht der Vertraulichkeit.*

If you address a person with *Du* or *Sie*, you must always continue to use the correspondent pronouns:

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Du</i>	<i>Sie</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Deiner</i>	<i>Ihrer</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Dir</i>	<i>Ihnen reflect. Sich</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Dich</i>	<i>Sie " Sich</i>
<i>Possess.</i>	<i>Dein</i>	<i>Ihr</i>

e. g. *ich habe Dir geschrieben und Dich gebeten, mit Deinem Vater zu mir zu kommen; or: ich habe Ihnen geschrieben und Sie gebeten, mit Ihrem Vater zu mir zu kommen.*

The use of the pronoun *es* is more extensive in German than in English; and it is frequently applied even to notions of persons, not only without regard to gender; — e. g. *es ist der Arzt*, it is the physician; *es ist meine Mutter*, it is my mother, — but even when they are in the plural; e. g. *es sind Franzosen*.

The pronoun *es*, when it expresses a thing, is used only in the *nominative* and *accusative cases*, nor can it be used with a preposition before it. In the genitive and dative case, it is supplied by the *demonstrative pronoun*, which after a preposition is contracted into the adverbial forms *daran*, *damit*, &c. (§. 142); e. g. *er bot mir Geld an, aber ich bedarf dessen nicht*, he offered me money, but I am not in want of it *ich bin damit zufrieden*, I am content with it; *ich weiß nichts davon*, I know nothing of it.

The contracted adverbial forms must also be used, when referring to masculine or feminine *names of things*; *er spricht von der Musik, aber er versteht nichts davon*, he talks of music, of which he knows nothing; *er hat einen Stall und fünf Pferde darin*, he has a stable and five horses in it.

OBSERVATION. Persons cannot be expressed in this manner; we say: *ich finde einen Freund an ihm* (and not *daran*), I find a friend in him. Only the genitive *dessen*, *deren*, is sometimes used for the sake of perspicuity in place of the possessive pronoun *sein* and *ihr*, even when persons and not things are referred to; because the repetition of these pronouns, which, like the personal pronouns *seiner* and *ihrer*, are used both with and without

a reflexive signification, would sometimes produce an ambiguity of expression; e. g. er beschenkte seinen Vetter und dessen Sohn, he presented his cousin and his (the cousin's) son; sie beschenkte ihre Schwester und deren (not ihre) Tochter, she made presents to her sister and to her (the sister's) daughter.

Reflective pronouns.

- 144 Personal pronouns are termed *reflective*, when the person or thing denoted by the pronoun is the same with the subject of the sentence, as in: „I dress *myself*; he loves *himself*.“ In German the word *self* is not employed in this manner, the reflective signification being pointed out by the *simple personal pronoun* in the first and second persons, and by a particular reflective pronoun in the third. *)

Singular.

Dat. mir	{	myself	Dat. dir	{	thyself	{	sich himself
Acc. mich			Acc. dich				

Plural.

Dat. and *Acc.* uns ourselves, euch yourselves, sich themselves; e. g. ich kleide mich, I dress myself; Du rühmest Dich, thou praisest thyself; sie lobt sich, she praises herself; sie beschimpfen sich, they disgrace themselves.

The English pronouns *myself*, *himself* etc. are besides employed for expressing *exclusion* of another person, as in: I *myself* have done it; the physician *himself* is a patient. In this case the indeclinable pronoun *selbst* or *selber* is used in German: ich selbst, du selbst, er selbst &c.; e. g. ich selbst habe es gethan; der Arzt selbst ist krank; er kann sich selbst nicht heilen he cannot cure even himself; Du hast es selbst gesagt; you said so yourself. Du selbst mußt richten, Du allein Sch. Ich

*) The reflective signification is sometimes not expressed in English; e. g. he had no money with *him*. Our people have driven off their cattle along with *them*. In German the reflective pronoun is to be used in such constructions also: Er hatte kein Geld bei sich. Unsere Leute haben ihr Vieh mit sich fortgetrieben.

selber kann sie retten. Sch. Du selber sollst uns sagen was Du vorhast. Sch.

When *selbst* stands before a substantive or pronoun, it implies the same as *even* in English and has the subordinate accent; e. g. *selbst* der König konnte ihn nicht retten, even the king was not able to save him; *selbst* seine Feinde bewunderten ihn, even his enemies admired him. Einen Verblendeten entdeck' ich, den *selbst* des Tages volles Licht nicht heilt. Sch.

The reflective pronouns of the plural number are used also to express a *reciprocal* action between two or more subjects; e. g. die Knaben schlagen sich, the boys fight with one another; sie lieben sich, they love each other; wir werden uns wiedersehen, we shall see one another again. When however this reciprocal signification might be misunderstood and confounded with the mere reflective sense (e. g. sie lieben sich, they love themselves) the indeclinable pronoun *einander* is used for the three persons; e. g. sie lieben *einander*; ihr kennet *einander*, you know one another.

Possessive pronoun.

The *possessive pronoun* is always omitted in German, when there can be no doubt of the person meant by the speaker; e. g. ich habe den Arm gebrochen, I have broken my arm, der König hat eine Krone auf dem Haupte und ein Scepter in der Hand, the king has a crown upon his head and a scepter in his hand. Sie hatten die Hüte über die Augenbrauen gezogen, they had their hats pulled over their brows. Sie hielt das Schnupftuch vor die Augen, she put her handkerchief to her eyes.

Expressions like: a servant of ours, a relation of yours, are translated in a different way: einer meiner Bedienten one of my servants; einer meiner Verwandten, one of my relations.

2. Demonstrative pronouns.

Demonstrative pronouns are used to point out the particular or individual person or thing, meant by the speaker. This is done in two different ways;

1. by referring things merely to the *speaker*; e. g. *this* book (which I am showing you), *that* book, the *same* book (I have been speaking of) etc. These pronouns are termed *absolute demonstrative pronouns*;

2. by referring things to an *accessory sentence*; e. g. *the* book, *which he gave me*; *he, who does wrong* etc. In this case there is generally a *demonstrative pronoun* in the principal, and a *relative pronoun* in the accessory sentence; and the two, when taken together, are termed *correlative pronouns*.

A. *Absolute demonstrative pronouns.*

- 148 Dieser, jener, der, are absolute demonstrative pronouns. The pronouns *dieser* and *jener* (declined according to the ancient form of adjectives, §. 129) are *adjective pronouns*. *Dieser* is applied to those persons or things which are *nearer to the speaker* in point of time or of space: *jener*, on the other hand, to those which are *more distant from the speaker*; e. g. *dieser* Hut gehört mir, und *jener* dir, this hat is mine, and that is yours; *diesseits* und *jenseits* des Stromes, on this and on the other side of the river; in *dieser* und in *jener* Welt, in this and in the other world; in *diesem* Augenblicke und an *jenem* Tage, in this moment and on that day. The English expression, *the former* and *the latter*, are therefore commonly rendered in German by *jener* and *dieser*; e. g.

Heuchler und Hunde belecken die Teller;
Jene sind Schmeichler, und diese sind Veller;
Diese bewahren, bei denen sie zehren,
Jene verzehren die, welche sie nähren. Logau.

The adjective pronouns *dieser* and *jener* are frequently used *substantively*, like other adjectives (§. 127); e. g. *dieser* ist jung und *jener* ist alt, this man is young and that man is old; but then we avoid the use of the genitive cases *dieses*, *jenes*, *dieser*, because they are easily confounded with other cases.

The neuter pronoun *dieses* used substantively, is, like the indefinite *es* and the demonstrative *das*, frequently applied to the most general and indefinite notion of a subject, without distinction of gender and number; and in this signification the nominative and accusative *dieses* are commonly contracted into *dies*; e. g. *dies ist eine Rose*, this is a rose; *dies ist eine Sache von Wichtigkeit*, this is a matter of importance; *dies sind arme Leute*, these are poor people; *das sind Leute, die ich nie vergesse*, those are people I never forget; *das waren Karls Stuarts Zimmer*, these were the apartments of Charles Stuart. When the pronoun of the neuter gender *dieses*, used substantively, and applied to notions of things, is to be connected with prepositions, its place is usually taken by the adverbial pronoun *hier* (§. 142), which is contracted with the preposition into the forms *hieran*, *hieraus*, *hiervon*, *hiermit* &c. analogous to the forms *daran*, *daraus*, *davon* &c.; e. g. *hieran erkenne ich ihn*, by this (hereby) I know him; *hierin hat er Recht*, in this (herein) he is right; *hiervon weiß ich Nichts*, of this I know nothing; *ich zwingen ihn hiermit*, I force him by this.

Instead of *dieser*, particularly when used substantively, the pronoun *der*, *die*, *das* is frequently used, and in this case takes a stronger accent in order to distinguish it from the definite article; e. g. *der Baum trägt keine Frucht*, that tree bears no fruit; *der ist krank*, that (man) is ill; *die ist schön*, that (woman) is handsome; *das ist Gold*, that is gold. The neuter *das*, like *es* and *dies*, comes to be applied even to express persons without regard of gender and number; e. g. *das ist ein Zigeuner*, that is a gipsy; *das sind meine Schwestern*, these are my sisters; *das sind Käfer*, these are beetles.

The demonstrative *sich* is expressed by *solch*, which is declined like an adjective; when, however, it precedes the article, it is not declined; when it precedes an adjective, it has commonly the power of an adverb of intensity, and is generally translated by the adverb *so*; e. g. *sich a man*, *solch ein Mann* or *ein solcher*

Mann; ladies of such high breeding in such vulgar attitudes, Damen von so hoher Bildung in so gemeinen Stellungen.

Solch is never used as a predicate; see §. 201.

Such as, see §. 152

B. Correlative pronouns.

- 151 The following pronouns are used to connect attributive sentences with the principal ones:

in the principal:

in the accessory sentence:

der *)	{	<i>he, that</i>	{	welcher or	{	<i>who, which **).</i>
derjenige				der *)		
derselbe the same						

e. g. der, welcher (der) klug handelt, verdient Lob, *he who* acts wisely deserves praise; die, welche (die) Du suchst, ist nicht hier, *she whom* you seek is not here; das Buch, welches (das) ich gelesen habe, the book which I read; wenn ich diese Männer mit denen vergleiche, welche uns umgeben, so scheinen sie mir eine andere Art Wesen, when I compare these men with *those that* surround us, they appear almost an other order of beings.

Derjenige might be used in all these sentences in order to give more emphasis to the pronoun.

Derselbe *the same*, is generally followed by the relative pronoun *der*; e. g. derselbe Mann, der gestern hier war, the same man who was here yesterday; ich habe dasselbe Buch gelesen, das Du gelesen hast, I have read the same book which you have read. English expressions like: Charles is of *the same* opinion as John; Charles goes *the same* way as John, cannot will be rendered in the same manner in German; we commonly say; Karl und Johann sind derselben Meinung;

*) The demonstrative *der* has in the Gen. Plur. *derer*; when used in the relative sense, it has *deren* (§ 140).

**) In English *who* refers to persons and *which* to things; in German both *welcher* and *der* refer to persons as well as to things.

Karl und Johann gehen denselben Weg. If *the same* is employed absolutely, as in: they were of the *same* (of one) opinion, it is frequently expressed by the numeral *ein* (one), e. g. sie waren Einer Meinung; sie gehen Einen Weg (see §. 159).

When the neuter of the demonstrative pronoun is used *substantively* (without a substantive added to it in the principal sentence), the accessory sentence does not take *welches*, but *was*; e. g. das ist nicht wahr, was Du sagst, that is not true, that you say; ich sage dasselbe, was Du sagst, I say the same that you say.

The same is done in the masculine gender, when the accessory sentence precedes the principal; e. g. wer lügt, der stiehlt, he who lies, will steal.

The relative *welcher* ought never to be employed in 152 the *genitive case*, because *welches*, *welcher*, *whose* might be taken for another case; it must be supplied by *dessen*, *deren*, the genitive of *der*, *die*, *das*; e. g. der Mann, dessen (not *welches*) Kind gestorben ist, the man whose child died; ich habe einige Bücher, deren Preis ich nicht kenne, I have some books the price of which I don't know.

The relative pronoun, *welcher* or *der*, must take the first place in the accessory sentence and can only be preceded by prepositions; expressions, accordingly, like *by means of which*, *in connection with whom*, *all of whom*, ought to be avoided in German and translated in a different way; e. g. He went to the house of a book-seller *from one of whose windows* he was to be a spectator of a public show; er ging in das Haus eines Buchhändlers, aus dessen Fenster ic. He had three children, *all of whom* died in their infancy, er hatte drei Kinder, die alle früh starben. They risked several engagements, *in most of which* they were victorious, sie wagten mehrere Treffen, in denen sie meistens siegreich waren. They were daily entertained with songs, *the subject of which* was the happy valley, sie wurden täglich mit Liedern unterhalten, deren Gegenstand das glückliche Thal war.

The pronoun *welcher* is not used when referring to one of the personal pronouns (I, thou, he etc.), which are always followed by *der*; moreover, after a personal pronoun of the first or second person, the same pronoun is repeated after the relative *der*; e. g. *ich, der ich ihn kenne*, I who know him; *du, der du ihn kennst*, thou who knowest him; *er, der ihn kennt*, he who knows him. — *Süßer Friede, der du von dem Himmel bist, alles Leid und Schmerzen stillest, komm in meine Brust. Goethe.*

The correlatives *such as*, when equivalent to *those who*, are rendered in German by *diejenigen*, or *solche, welche* (or *die*); e. g. *such as are poor, diejenigen, welche arm sind*; but when the accessory sentence is intended to express an effect, it takes the conjunction *daß*; e. g. *she placed her chair in such a posture as to occupy almost the whole fire, sie setzte den Stuhl in eine solche Stellung, daß sie fast das ganze Feuer einnahm.*

The demonstrative pronoun is frequently omitted in German as in English; e. g. *what I told you, is true, was ich Ihnen sagte, ist wahr.* In German however it must not be omitted after a preposition; e. g. *he would have the half of what I had received, er wollte die Hälfte von dem haben, was ich erhalten hatte.*

The relative pronoun is never omitted in German, as is frequently done in English; e. g. *the man, I saw yesterday, der Mann, welchen (or den) ich gestern gesehen habe*; *the book I was reading, das Buch, welches (or das) ich las.*

3. Interrogative pronouns.

- 153 In interrogative principal or accessory sentences, the substantive pronouns *wer who*, *was what*, are employed when standing without a substantive; the adjective pronouns *welcher, welche, welches*, when standing with a substantive; e. g. *Wer ist da?* who is there? *Was bringst Du?* what do you bring? — *Welcher Arzt ist der beste?* what physician is the best? *Welches Buch willst*

Du lesen? which book will you read? — Ich weiß nicht, wer da ist, oder was Du bringst, I do not know who is there, or what you bring. Sage mir, welcher Arzt der beste ist, welches Buch du lesen willst, tell me what physician is the best, which book you will read.

The adverbial forms compounded with prepositions, as, *wovon*, *woran* &c. (§. 142), are only employed, and must be employed, instead of the substantive pronoun, when speaking of *things*; e. g. *wovon* spricht er? what does he speak of? (but: *von wem* spricht er? whom does he speak of?) *Woran* denkst Du? what do you think of? (but: *an wen* denkst Du? whom do you think of?) etc.

In asking after the *kind* or *species* of a thing, the compound adjective pronoun *was für ein* is used, in which only the last word (*ein*) is declined like the indefinite article; e. g. *was für ein* Mann? what kind of man? *Was für eine* Frau? what kind of woman? *Ein* is omitted before names of materials and before all substantives in the plural number; e. g. *Was für* Wein? what sort of wine? *Was für* Menschen? what kind of men?

Instead of *was für*, the indeclinable *welch* is sometimes used especially in expressions of surprise and admiration; e. g. *welch ein* Riese! what a giant! *welch ein* Ungeheuer! what a monster!

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

The indefinite pronouns express persons and things in an indefinite and general manner. Such are:

Jedermann	<i>everybody</i>	Etwas	<i>something</i>
Jemand	<i>somebody</i>	Nichts	<i>nothing</i>
Niemand	<i>nobody</i>	Man	<i>one.</i>

Jedermann, Jemand and Niemand take the termination *es* in the Gen. case (*Jedermanns*, *Jemandes*, *Niemandes*); Jemand and Niemand take the termination *en* in the Dative and sometimes in the Accu-

sative cases. *Etwas*, *Nichts* and *man* are not declined; e. g. Jedermann weiß, daß man sich irren kann, Every body knows, that one may err; Niemand kann zweien Herren dienen, Nobody can serve two masters; Wenn Jemand eine Reise thut, so kann er etwas erzählen. If any one makes a journey, he can relate something. Ist Jemand in der Stube? Is there anybody in the room? Hast Du etwas in der Hand? Have you anything in your hand?

The indefinite numerals, *einer* *one*, *keiner* *none*, are used instead of *Jemand*, *Niemand*; and *was* instead of *etwas*; e. g. Wenn Einer eine Reise thut, so kann er was erzählen. Keiner kann zweien Herren dienen.

Anybody, and *anything* are expressed by *Jemand* and *Etwas* only in conditional and interrogative sentences; e. g. if any body should know it, wenn Jemand es wissen sollte; does any body know any thing of it? Weiß Jemand Etwas davon? In negative sentences the negative pronouns *Niemand*, *nichts* are employed instead of *not—anybody* (or *thing*); e. g. I do not know any body here, Ich kenne hier Niemand; I do not know any thing of it, Ich weiß nichts davon..

When *any* is used adjectively, as *any* book, *any* news, it is commonly omitted in conditional and interrogative sentences; e. g. if any news is brought to you, wenn Ihnen Nachrichten gebracht werden. Is there any news? Sind Nachrichten da? and in negative sentences, *not—any* is translated by *kein*; e. g. I have not read any book, ich habe kein Buch gelesen.

In positive affirmative sentences *any* is expressed by *irgend* (*irgend Jemand*, *irgend ein Buch* &c.), or when equivalent to *every* by *Jeder*, *Jedermann*.

- 156 The indefinite pronoun *man*, *one*, is only used in the nominative case; the dative and accusative cases are supplied by *ein*, for the genitive case *one's*, the possessive pronoun *sein* is used, and for the reflective *one's self* *sich*; e. g. Man kommt nur hin um seine Freunde zu treffen, one merely comes to meet one's

friends. *Man* spräche gern mit ihm; aber er versteht einen nicht, one would like to speak with him, but he does not understand one. *Es* ist besser, einem *) sein Geld, als sein Leben zu nehmen, it is better to take away one's money, than one's life. *Man* kann nicht immer auf seiner Hut sein, one cannot always be on one's guard. *Man* muß seinen Nachbar wie sich selbst lieben, one ought to love one's neighbour as one's self. *Man* schämt sich fast über die Straßen zu gehen, one is almost ashamed to pass along the streets.

The indefinite pronoun *man*, is like the French *on*, used to a greater extent than the English *one*; e. g. *man* sagt, they say. Weiß *man*, wer diese blut'ge That verübte? Schiller. Is it known who committed this bloody deed? *Man* sollte sich viel Mühe geben, zu ic. much pains should be taken to etc.

When placed however after an adjective or adjective pronoun, in order to give them the value of a substantive the word *one* is not translated; e. g. a poor *one* ein Armer, the fair *ones* die Schönen, every one jeder, some one Jemand ic.

One when placed before proper names, as in: one William Curry, one Jenny Jones, is translated by ein gewisser (a certain); ein gewisser Wilhelm Curry, eine gewisse Johanna Jones.

CHAPTER VIII.

OF NUMERALS.

Numerals are either *definite*, as, *two, three, the third* or *indefinite*, as, *some, a few*.

*) For this Dative see Syntax §. 271.

1. *Definite Numerals.*

- 157 Definite numerals are *Cardinal*, as, *two, three, or ordinal*, as, *second, third*; and the latter are employed as *adjectives*, as, *the second, third house*; or as *adverbs*, as *secondly, thirdly*.

The German numerals are:

*Cardinal.**Ordinal.*

	<i>Adjective.</i>	<i>Adverbial.</i>
1. ein *) one	der erste the first	erstens firstly
2. zwei two	der zweite**) the second	zweitens secondly
3. drei three	der dritte the third	drittens thirdly
4. vier four	der vierte the fourth	viertens fourthly
5. fünf etc.	der fünfte etc.	etc.
6. sechs	„ sechste	
7. sieben	„ siebte	
8. acht	„ achte	
9. neun	„ neunte	
10. zehn	„ zehnte	
11. elf	„ elfte	
12. zwölf	„ zwölfte	
13. dreizehn	„ dreizehnte	
14. vierzehn	„ vierzehnte	
15. fünfzehn	„ fünfzehnte	
16. sechszehn	„ sechszehnte	
17. siebzehn	„ siebzehnte	
18. achtzehn	„ achtzehnte	
19. neunzehn	„ neunzehnte	
20. zwanzig	„ zwanzigste	

*) In order to distinguish the numeral, *Ein*, from the indefinite article *ein*, the former is generally written with an initial capital.

**) In ancient German *der andere*, the other, was used instead of *der zweite*, which practise is retained in *anderthalb*; see §. 159, 5.

21. einundzwanzig etc.	der einundzwanzigste etc.
30. dreißig	„ dreißigste
40. vierzig	„ vierzigste
50. fünfzig	„ fünfzigste
60. sechzig	„ sechzigste
70. siebenzig	„ siebenzigste
80. achtzig	„ achtzigste
90. neunzig	„ neunzigste
100. hundert.	„ hundertste
101. hundert ein etc.	„ hunderterste etc.
125. hundertfünfund- zwanzig etc.	„ hundertfünfundzwanzigste etc.
200. zweihundert	„ zweihundertste
300. dreihundert etc.	„ dreihundertste etc.
1000. tausend	„ tausendste
2000. zweitausend	„ zweitausendste
3000. dreitausend	„ dreitausendste
1000000. Million.	„ millionste.

Cardinal numbers are not declined, except *ein*, which ¹⁵⁸ is declined like the indefinite article (§. 131). *Zwei* *) and *drei* are declined in the genitive (*zweier*, *dreier*) and dative (*zweien*, *dreien*) cases, when these cases are not marked by other means; e. g. *die Zusammenkunft zweier Freunde*, the meeting of two friends; *ich habe es dreien gesagt*, I have said it to three persons; but we say: *die Zusammenkunft der zwei Freunde*, the meeting of the two friends; *ich habe es den drei Brüdern gesagt*, I have said it to the three brothers. In the same way the cardinal numbers from 4 to 12 assume the termination *en* in the dative case, when they are used substantively; e. g. *ich habe es fünf en gesagt*, I have said it to five persons; *er fährt mit sechs en*, he goes in a coach and six.

*) In ancient German the gender was distinguished in *zwei* by the forms: masc. *zween*, fem. *zwo*, neut. *zwei*: this practice is now obsolete.

The numbers *hundert* and *tausend*, when used substantively, are of the neuter gender, and then declined according to §. 111; *Million* is always employed as a substantive of the feminine gender with an article.

e. g. ein Hundert	ein Tausend	eine Million
einige Hunderte	einige Tausende	einige Millionen
some hundreds	some thousands	some millions.

Ordinal numbers are declined like adjectives;

e. g. N. der erste	mein zweiter	das dritte.
G. des ersten	meines zweiten	des dritten
D. dem ersten	etc.	etc.
A. den ersten		

159 The following numerals are formed by composition:

1. Variative.

einerlei of one kind *)
zweierlei of two kinds
dreierlei of three kinds
viererlei of four kinds etc.
vielerlei of many different sorts
mancherlei of several sorts

These are not declined.

2. Multiplicative.

einfach simple
zweifach twofold
dreifach threefold
vierfach fourfold etc.
vielfach manifold
mannigfach manifold

These are declined like adjectives.

3. Re-iterative.

einmal once
zweimal twice
dreimal three times
viermal four times etc.
vielman many times
mannigmal sometimes

These are not declined.

4. Fractional.

$\frac{1}{2}$ ein halb
$\frac{1}{3}$ ein drittel
$\frac{1}{4}$ ein viertel
$\frac{1}{5}$ ein fünftel
$\frac{5}{6}$ fünf sechstel etc.

These are neuter substantives, except *halb* which is an adjective.

*) *einerlei* signifies *the same* in: es ist einerlei, it is the same, it is indifferent.

5. *Dimidiative.*

1½ anderthalb literally	(one and) half of the second (§. 157. note)
2½ drittehalb „	(two and) half of the third
3½ vierttehalb etc.	three and half of the fourth etc.

These are not declined.

2. *Indefinite numerals.*

The following words are of the description of indefinite numerals: 160

kein <i>no</i>	viel <i>many, much</i>
jed-er *) <i>every</i>	wenig <i>few, little</i>
manch-e <i>some</i>	mehr <i>more</i>
einig-e *) <i>some</i>	weniger <i>less</i>
all-e <i>all</i>	ganß <i>whole</i>
mehrer-e <i>several</i>	beid-e <i>both.</i>
and-er <i>other</i>	

Indefinite numerals are considered as adjectives and are inflected accordingly; except *mehr* and *weniger*, which are indeclinable. They may, however, like other adjectives, be used as substantives: Keiner *no one*, Jeder *every one*, Einige *some ones* etc.; e. g. Jeder lobt sein Vaterland, every one praises his own country; Alle sind beschäftigt, Jeder auf seine Weise, all are busy, each in his own way; Viele sind berufen, aber Wenige sind auserwählt, many are called, but few chosen.

The use of indefinite numerals is in many cases different from the English. Particular attention is therefore to be paid to the following remarks.

Al, all, expresses both *number*, as in: alle Menschen, all men; in allen Dingen, in all things; an allen Orten, in all places; alle meine Freunde, all my friends:

*) jeßlich-er and jedwed-er *every*, and: etliche and etwelche *some*, are employed in the same manner as jeder and einige, but are less usual.

and *quantity*. In the latter case it is in the singular number, and is not declined, when followed by a pronoun; e. g. all mein Geld, all my money; all dieser Wein, all this wine; in aller Eile, in all haste. The definite article is never placed after all, as in English: alle Welt, *all the* world; alles Geld, *all the* money, aller Wein, *all the* wine.

All is never employed in the signification of *whole*; the Engl *all*, when it denotes the whole, is translated by ganz, which is not declined before neuter names of countries and towns; e. g. all the year, das ganze Jahr, all the day, den ganzen Tag; in all Venice, in ganz Venedig. Ganz England hütet meines Kerkers Thore. Sch. Ganz Frankreich bewaffnet sich.

Alles (neuter sing.) is also applied to *persons*; e. g. Alles freuet sich, all (every body) is happy. Wir folgt der Gluck, und Alles fliehet mich. Sch. Du liebst, wo Alles liebt. Sch.

All of us, all of them etc. is in German wir alle, sie alle &c.

- 162 Jed-er, e, es, every, each*). Jeder Augenblick ist theuer. G. Every moment is precious. Jeder braucht seine Gaben, und Jeder ist doch nur auf eigne Weise glücklich. G. Every one uses his gifts; and yet is happy only in his own particular way. Jeder lobt sein Vaterland, every one praises his own country. Alle sind geschäftig, Jeder auf seine Weise, all are busy, each in his own way; es sind zwei Brüder, und Jeder hat ein besonderes Geschäft, they are two brothers, and each of them has a separate business.

Every is translated by all, when not so much the single persons or things as generality is to be expressed; e. g. every year, alle Jahre; every day, alle Tage; his house is open to every body, sein Haus ist Allen offen; he knows every thing, er weiß alles; — every twenty paces, alle zwanzig Schritt (sing. § 126); every four hours, alle vier Stunden.

*) Each other einander; see §. 145.

Manch-e, some, expresses an indefinite number, and is used also in the singular number (E. *many a*). **Einige, a few**, denotes a smaller number, which is more particularly pointed out by **wenig few**; e. g. er hat manche Freunde, und einige haben ihm Beweise ihrer Freundschaft gegeben, he has a number of friends and some of them have given him proofs of their attachment. Er hat wenige Freunde, he has few friends. Dem Fleiß und Geschick sind wenig Dinge unmöglich, few things are impossible to diligence and skill. — Das macht mir manche schlaflose Nacht, that causes me *many a* sleepless night. Manches große Übel, many a great evil. Manches Mal, many a time.

Einig is used in the singular number before abstract substantives, and names of materials to denote quantity; e. g. einige Hoffnung, some hope; einiges Holz, some wood; einigermaßen, in some measure; einige Zeit, some time. Instead of **einig etwas** (undeclined) is frequently employed in this case; e. g. etwas Zeit, etwas Geld, etwas Verstand.

Einige and **etwas** always express number or quantity; when **some** merely expresses an indefinite single thing, it is to be translated by **irgend**; e. g. some one of his friends, irgend einer seiner Freunde; Mr. Burchell was always fond of being some innocent amusement going forward, Herr B. sah gern irgend einen unschuldigen Scherz vor sich gehen.

Viel and **wenig** express, the former a large, and the latter a small number or quantity, like the English *many—few*, and *much—little*. When they refer to *quantity*, they are not declined; e. g. viel Wasser und wenig Wein, much water and little wine. Da war wenig Ehre zu erwerben. Sch. there was little honour to be gained. Mit wenig Wiß und viel Behagen. G.

Applied to a number, on the contrary, they are always declined, if used as substantives; e. g. Vieles wünscht sich der Mensch. G. Man wishes for many things. Es können sich nur Wenige regiren Sch. Few people can govern themselves: but if used adjectively, they are

employed either with or without inflection; e. g. er hat viele Freunde, he has many friends. Maria hat noch viel verborgne Freunde &c. Mary still has many secret friends. Es braucht nicht viel Worte. &c. or vieler Worte. There is no need of many words.

OBSERVATION. Ein wenig, like *a little*, denotes a small quantity, without opposition to a greater one; e. g. ein wenig Wein, a little wine; ein wenig Salz, a little salt.

Mehr *more*, and weniger, *less, fewer*, are not declined; e. g. es gibt hier mehr Reiche, aber auch mehr Arme als anderswo, there are more rich but at the same time more poor here than elsewhere; es gibt hier weniger Ärzte, aber auch weniger Kranke als anderswo, there are fewer physicians, but also fewer patients here than elsewhere.

Mehrere, like the French *plusieurs*, has not the signification of the comparative degree, but answers to the English *several*; e. g. ich habe mehrere Briefe erhalten, I had several letters.

OBSERVATION. *More*, when it means *besides*, is translated by noch; e. g. he gave him five pieces more, er gab ihm noch fünf Stück; when she came to the house, three more children came out to meet her, — noch drei Kinder.

As much more is noch einmal so viel.

- 164 Beid-e, *both*, never admits the article nor any pronoun after it; e. g. both the poets, beide (or die beiden) Dichter; both my brothers, meine beiden Brüder; both these points, diese beiden Punkte.

Beide never takes the partitive genitive after it; the word standing in the genitive case in English, must agree with beide in German, and is placed before it; e. g. both of us, wir beide; with both of us, mit uns beiden; both of these books, diese Bücher beide.

When such expressions stand in the place of the subject, the word beide generally takes the place of the object of co-existence (§. 320); e. g. both of them were in church to-day, sie sind heute beide in der Kirche gewesen.

Both, in expressions, like: *both* silver and gold, *both* he and his father, is not translated by *beide*, but by conjunctions: *sowol Silber als Gold*; *er sowol als sein Vater*.

Either and *neither* *) are translated by *einer von beiden*, *keiner von beiden*; the word *beide* however is only added, when the sentence would be otherwise unintelligible; either of them, *einer von ihnen*; either way, *einer von den Wegen*; on neither side, *auf keiner Seite*; *not either* is *keiner von beiden*; e. g. I do not know either of them, *ich kenne keinen von beiden*.

Der Andere, *other*, was used in ancient German as an ordinal number (*the second*), but is now only employed to express a *different* individual or a kind; e. g. the other hand, *die andere Hand*; an other colour, *eine andere Farbe*; the others, *die Andern*; an other one, *ein Anderer*; among others, *unter Anderen*. But *the other day*; is in German *vor einigen Tagen*, or *neulich*. When *other* means a *second* or *third* thing of the same kind, it is translated by *noch ein*; e. g. Give me another cup of tea, *geben Sie mir noch eine Tasse Thee*.

Kein, *none*, is also used instead of *not a* or *not any*; see §. 214. When used substantively, it is always in the singular number; e. g. *None* of the ancient worshippers *were* now to be seen. *Keiner* der alten Verehrer war mehr zu sehen. *None* of these signals *were* returned from the land. *Keines* dieser Signale wurde vom Lande erwiedert. For its declension see §. 131.

Definite numerals are made indefinite by the adverbs *etwa*, *an*, *gegen* *about*, and *über* *above*; e. g. about five years ago, *vor etwa fünf Jahren*; I have about 20 florins, *ich habe gegen (etwa) zwanzig Gulden*; about six hundred men, *an die sechshundert Mann*; above two thousand horses, *über zweitausend Pferde*.

*) The numerals *either*, *neither* are to be distinguished from the conjunctions *either*, *neither*; see §. 181.

CHAPTER IX.

OF ADVERBS.

- 166 Adverbs are those inflexible words which *qualify a predicate*, by expressing the place, time, manner, intensity, frequency, or mood of the action.

Adverbs therefore are always, and can only be, *objects*; they have the same value as a substantive with a preposition; e. g. he acts prudently (with prudence); he lives here (in this town); he will come soon (in a few days) etc. *) This is the reason, why one language frequently employs an adverb for what is expressed by a substantive with a preposition in an other language; e. g. *happily*, zum Glück; *abroad*, in der Fremde; *home*, nach Hause; *indeed*, in der That; *zugleich*, at the same time; *diesseits*, on this side; *jenseits*, on the other side; the ladies, on their side, die Damen ihrerseits; *allmählig*, by degrees; *gegenwärtig*, at present; *unterwegs*, on the way etc.

I. *Adverbs of manner.*

- 167 All adjectives are employed as adverbs of manner, without assuming any distinctive termination (like the English *ly*:); as: er spricht schlecht, langsam, he speaks *badly, slowly*; er schreibt schön, he writes *beautifully*; er arbeitet fleißig, he works *diligently*.

*) The same word being frequently used in English as *Adverb*, *Preposition* and *Conjunction*, care must be taken not to confound these different significations, because they are expressed by different words in German. An adverb may easily be known by its expressing time or place etc., without any additional words, whilst a preposition is always connected with a substantive, and a conjunction with a sentence. Thus in saying: I saw him *before*, the word *before* is an adverb; but in I saw him *before* dinner, it is a preposition, and in I saw him, *before* he came here, it is a conjunction.

These adverbs of manner admit of a comparison, like adjectives. The comparative form is like that of adjectives. The superlative form is commonly connected with the preposition *an*, or *auf*, contracted with the definite article into *am* (*an dem*) and *auf's* (*auf das*). The preposition *an* is made use of to denote the highest degree, in comparison with others; as, *er schreibt am schönsten von Allen*, he writes best of all. *Der einzelne Mann entflieht am leichtesten*. G. A single man escapes easiest. *Unter allen Völkern haben die Griechen den Traum des Lebens am schönsten geträumt*. G. On the other hand, the preposition *auf* is employed, to denote a very high degree, without any comparison; as, *Ich bin auf's tödtlichste gekränkt*. G. I am most deeply offended.

The superlative without a preposition is only used in some phrases like: *er grüßt Sie freundlichst*, he salutes you most kindly; *ich danke herzlichst*, I thank you with all my heart, *ich war innigst gerührt*, I was most deeply touched. Sometimes it takes the termination *enst*; as, *ich danke bestenst, schönstent*.

The following words are only employed as adverbs of manner:

so thus, so
wie how, as
ebenso in the same way
grade so exactly so
anders otherwise

wohl *) well
vergebens in vain
umsonst in vain, gratis
blindlings blindly

*) The adverb *wohl* is applied to that alone which *pleases our feelings*; e. g. *wohlthätig* charitable, *wohlwollen* to wish well, *wohl aussehen* to look well. and differs in this respect from *gut*, which applies to that which is *good in itself*; e. g. *gut handeln* to act well, *gut schreiben* to write well.

eilends in haste
 zusehends visibly
 folgendermaßen in the following way
 glücklicherweise fortunately
 gern willingly.

The adverb *gern* is peculiar to the German language which makes a very extensive use of it; it is generally supplied in English by the verb *to like*; e. g. *er trinkt gern Wein*, he likes to drink wine; *er tanzt gern*, he likes to dance. *Wer gern lügt, der stiehlt gern*, he who is given to lie, will also steal. The comparative of *gern* is *lieber*, the superlative *am liebsten*; e. g. *Ich esse lieber Fleisch als Fisch*, I like meat better than fish. *Am liebsten bin ich zu Hause*, I like best being at home.

II. *Adverbs of locality.*

169 *Direction* of motion in general is expressed by

her (from a place to the speaker) — and
hin (from the speaker to a place).

The adverbs *her* and *hin* are not generally expressed by any words in English; they are employed to denote the particular direction of an action with reference to the speaker, and are therefore frequently compounded with other adverbs; as, *herein*, *hinein*, *heraus*, *hinaus*. A man, being *in* a room, will say: *komm herein*, come in; *gehe hinaus*, go out; but a man being outside will say: *gehe hinein*, come in; *komme heraus*, etc.

Besides *her* and *hin*, the following adverbs are most commonly used:

hier here
hierher hither
oben above
herauf up here
hinauf up there
 etc.

da und *dort* there
da = or *dorthin* thither
unten below
herunter down here
hinunter down there
 etc.

innen within	außen, draußen out of doors
hinein, herein in	hinaus, heraus out
vorn before	hinten behind
hüben on this side	drüben on the other side
rechts on the right	links on the left hand
aufwärts upwards	abwärts downwards
vornwärts forwards	rückwärts backwards
ostwärts eastward etc.	seitwärts sideways
diesseits on this side	jenseits on that side
fort, weg forth, away	zurück back
rings around	zusammen together
wo where	wohin whither
	woher whence
irgendwo anywhere	nirgendwo nowhere
überall every where	nirgendß nowhere

etc.

III. *Adverbs of time.*

170

The following adverbs express time:

da, dann then	wann when?
damals at that time	ehemals formerly
	vormalß " "
einst once	sonst " "
noch still	schon, bereits already,
jüngst lately	längst long ago
neulich lately, the other day	fürzlich not long ago
vorgestern the day before	morgens in the morning
yesterday	mittags at noon
gestern yesterday	vermittags in the forenoon
heute to-day	nachmittags " " afternoon
morgen to-morrow	abends " " evening
übermorgen the day after to-morrow	nachts " " night
nächstens in a few days	sogleich immediately
jetzt, nun now	bald soon
je, jemals ever	eben just now
	nie, niemals never

immer	always	nimmer	never
vorher	before	nachher	afterwards
zuerst	first	zuletzt	lastly, endlich at last
bisher	hitherto	seitdem	since
lange	for a long time	nicht mehr	no longer
manchmal	sometimes	mitunter	now and then
zuweilen	"	oft	often
indessen	"	meistens	mostly
inzwischen	meanwhile	zugleich	at the same time
unterdessen		spätestens	at the latest.
frühestens	at the earliest		

IV. *Adverbs of causality.*

171 The following adverbs express causality:

darum	therefore	warum	why
deswegen	therefore	weswegen	wherefore
desungeachtet	notwithstanding	folglich	accordingly
		also	"
nichtsdestoweniger	nevertheless		

V. *Adverbs of intensity.*

172 The following adverbs express intensity:

so—als	as—as	sehr	very, much *)
fast	nearly	faum	scarcely
beinahe	nearly	ganz, gar	quite
höchstens	at the most	wenigstens	at least
genug	enough	höchst	extremely
größtentheils	for the greatest part	meistentheils	for the most part
sogar	even	nur	only.

*) *Much* ought not to be translated by *viel*, when it denotes the intensity of a predicate, as in: I was much pleased, *ich war sehr* (not *viel*) *erfreut*. *Viel* is used as adverb of intensity before adjectives in the comparative degree; e. g. *viel besser*, much better; *viel größer*, much greater.

VI. *Adverbs of frequency.*

The following adverbs express frequency:

173

einmal once	zweimal twice etc. §. 159
oft often	selten seldom
zuweilen sometimes	abermals } once more.
mitunter now and then	nochmals }
wieder again	

VII. *Adverbs of modality.*

The following adverbs express mood, i. e. the greater or less positiveness of an assertion:

ja yes	nein no
wirklich indeed	nicht not
fürwahr	keineswegs not at all
wahrlich truly	etwa perhaps
doch yet, however	wol perhaps
zwar though	vielleicht perhaps
freilich indeed	vielmehr rather
	etc.

CHAPTER X.

OF PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions connect an object with its predicate, or an attribute with its substantive, and show the relation between them. Most of the prepositions are originally expressive of relations of locality, but denote also time, manner, causality, and almost all the relations of objects or attributes.

Prepositions govern *Cases*.

As to their formation we must distinguish *Original* prepositions and *Derivative* prepositions, formed from substantives or adjectives.

I. *Original prepositions.*

All original prepositions govern either the Dative or Accusative or both cases, as follows:

Prepositions governing the

<i>Dative.</i>	<i>Accusative.</i>
aus from, out of	durch through, by
außer besides	für for
bei at, near	gegen*) against, towards
binnen within	ohne without
mit with	um around
nach after, according to	wider against
nebst together with	
seit since	
von from, of	
zu to, at	

Dative and Accusative.

an at, in, on
 auf upon, on
 hinter behind
 in in, into
 neben at the side of
 über over, above
 unter under, among
 vor before
 zwischen between.

Some prepositions are contracted with the definite article into one word, viz.

an dem	into	am	an das	into	ans
bei dem	"	beim	auf das	"	aufs
in dem	"	im	durch das	"	durchs
von dem	"	vom	für das	"	fürs
zu dem	"	zum	in das	"	ins
zu der	"	zur	um das	"	ums

*) The form *gen* instead of *gegen*; e. g. *gen Himmel*, towards heaven, is rather obsolete.

The prepositions *an, auf, hinter, in, neben, über, unter, vor, zwischen* govern the *dative* case when *rest in a place* is implied, and the *accusative* case when *motion towards a place* is expressed; e. g.

*Dative case.**Accusative case.*

Das Bild hängt an der Wand, Ich hänge das Bild an die Wand,

the picture hangs on the wall. I hang the picture on the wall.

Das Buch liegt auf dem Tische, Ich lege das Buch auf den Tisch, the book lies on the table. I lay the book on the table.

Der Garten liegt hinter dem Hause, Ich gehe hinter das Haus,

the garden lies behind the house. I go behind the house.

Ich wohne in der Stadt, I live in the town.

Ich gehe in die Stadt, I go into the town.

Der Baum steht neben dem Thore, Ich pflanze den Baum neben das Thor,

the tree stands near the gate. I plant the tree near the gate.

Die Wolken stehen über den Bergen, Die Wolken ziehen über die Berge,

the clouds are above the hills. the clouds pass over the hills.

Der Hund liegt unter dem Tische, Der Hund kriecht unter den Tisch,

the dog lies under the table. the dog creeps under the table.

Ich stehe vor der Thür, I stand before the door.

Ich gehe vor die Thür, I go before the door.

Ich stehe zwischen beiden. I stand between both.

Ich stelle mich zwischen beide, I place myself between both.

This rule, however, merely extends to objects of locality. As to all other relations, as time, causality,

manner etc., particular rules will be given in the Syntax, where the use of the prepositions will be more distinctly explained.

II. *Derivative prepositions.*

- 177 Most of the following prepositions are formed by simple or compound substantives, for which reason they govern the *genitive* case.

Prepositions governing the Gen. case.

statt, anstatt	instead of	— halber, — halben	on account of
außerhalb	without, on the outside of	— wegen	on account of
innerhalb	within, on the inside of	um — willen	for the sake of
oberhalb	above, on the perside of	— kraft	by virtue of
unterhalb	below, on the derside of	um — vermöge	by virtue of
diesseits	on this side of	laut	according to
jenseits	on the other side of	zufolge	according to
längs	along	vermittelt	by means of
während	during	troß	in spite of
unweit	near, not far from	ungeachtet	notwithstanding.

Halber, halben, wegen, and um — willen are preceded by the substantive which they govern; e. g. Alters halber, on account of his age; der Freundschaft halben, on account of friendship; des Geldes wegen, um des Geldes willen, for the sake of money. They are contracted with the genitive of the personal pronouns into the irregular forms

meinethalben, meinethwegen, um meinethwillen,
 deinetthalben, deinetwegen, um deinetwillen,
 seinethalben, seinethwegen, um seinethwillen &c.

Troß and längs are also used with the dative case;

e. g. trotz meinem Befehle, in spite of my command;
längs dem Ufer, along the shore.

Zufolge governs the genitive, when preceding its substantive, but the dative when following it; e. g. dem Berichte zufolge and zufolge des Berichtes, according to the report.

The following derivative prepositions govern the *dative case*:

sammt together with	gegenüber opposite to
nächst next	gegenüber against, in opposi-
gemäß according to	tion to.

The following adverbs sometimes govern an accusative case preceding them, and are accordingly to be considered as prepositions:

entlang along	hinab down
hinauf up	hinunter down;

e. g. den Fluß entlang, along the river; den Berg hinauf, up the hill; die Treppe hinunter, down the staircase.

CHAPTER XI. OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions are words by which two sentences are 178 connected into a compound sentence (§. 27); e. g. he arrived *and* I departed; he arrived *when* I departed *).

*) When two sentences, connected with one another, have either the same subject, or the same predicate, or another essential part common to both sentences — e. g. *he* eats and *he* drinks; my brother *drinks* and my sister *drinks* — the two sentences are frequently *contracted* into one sentence; e. g. *he* eats and drinks, my brother and my sister drink. In this case also the conjunction in fact connects two sentences, though it appears only to connect two words.

Two sentences are connected either by way of *Subordination*, when one of them (which is termed the *Accessory sentence*) stands in the room of the subject, attribute or object of the other sentence (which is termed the *Principal sentence*, §. 28), or by way of *Co-ordination*, when two sentences, not depending upon one another, are connected into one sentence either by a relation of concord or of opposition (§. 28).

There are accordingly two kinds of conjunctions, viz *Subordinative* and *Co-ordinative*.

I. *Subordinative Conjunctions.*

- 179 It will be explained in the Syntax, that there are three kinds of accessory sentences, viz:

1. *Substantive accessory sentences, standing in the place of a substantive ;*

2. *Adjective accessory sentences, standing in the place of an adjective ;*

3. *Adverbial accessory sentences, standing in the place of an adverb.*

1. **Substantive accessory sentences** take the conjunctions *daß that* and *ob if, whether* ; e. g. *Ich weiß, daß er gestorben ist*, I know that he is dead; *ich weiß nicht, ob er gestorben ist*, I do know whether he be dead.

2. **Adjective accessory sentences** take one of the relative pronouns, as is explained §§. 151, 152.

- 180 3. **Adverbial accessory sentences** take different conjunctions according as they express an object of locality, time, manner, causality or co-existence.

a. *Locality* is expressed by *wo where*, to which is added one of the adverbs *her and hin* (§. 169), if the predicate of the accessory sentence implies a motion from or towards a place; e. g. *er liegt noch da*, *wo er gestorben ist*, he still lies, where he died; *gehe wohin du willst*, or *wo du hin willst*, go wherever you like.

b *Time* is expressed by

als, da when	nachdem after
wann, wenn when	ehe before
indess, indeffen whilst	seit since
während during	bis till.

Als and da are employed for past time, wenn and wann for present and future time; e. g. als er kam, ging ich fort, when he came, I went away; ich gehe fort, wenn er kommt, I shall go away, when he comes.

c. *Manner* is expressed by

wie as	als as
als ob as if	so daß so as to.

Wie is employed, when a *manner*, properly speaking, is to be expressed; als, on the other hand, when the *intensity* of the predicate is to be pointed out; e. g. er handelt nicht, wie er spricht, he does not act as he speaks; but er ist nicht so gut, als er aussieht, he is not so good as he seems to be.

d. *Causality* is expressed by

weil because	obgleich although
da since	ob schon "
wenn if	obwol "
wofern if	wenn gleich "
falls in case	wenn schon "
damit that.	wenn auch "
daß "	"

e. *Co-existence* is expressed by indem, which conjunction is peculiar to the German language, and is used instead of the English gerund; e. g. indem er dies sagte, ging er fort, having said this, he went away.

II. *Co-ordinative conjunctions.*

The co-ordinative conjunctions are conjunctions *pro-* 181
per, if they express merely the relation of one sentence to the other; e. g. und and; auch also; aber, allein, sondern but; nämlich namely; entweder either; oder or; denn

for; also consequently. Many co-ordinative conjunctions, on the other hand, must be considered at the same time as adverbs, denoting in reference to the predicate either a relation of place or time; e. g. *außerdem* besides; *denn* then; *ferner* further; — or a relation of causality; e. g. *daher* thence; *deswegen*, *darum* therefore; *demnach*, *somit*, *mithin* accordingly; — or a relation of mood; e. g. *weder* neither; *noch* nor; *gleichwol*, *zwar* however; *doch*, *dennoch* nevertheless. Conjunctions of this description we call *conjunctive adverbs*.

Conjunctions proper generally stand at the head of the sentence, with the exception of *aber*, *auch*, and *also*, which may be placed either at the head or in the middle of the sentence. Conjunctive adverbs, on the other hand, are in respect of their position treated like other adverbs.

The co-ordinative conjunctions are *Copulative*, *Adversative*, or *Causal*. In general, copulative conjunctions, as *und* and, serve to enlarge or complete a thought by adding another sentence; adversative conjunctions, as *aber* but, on the other hand, limit the thought expressed in an antecedent sentence: and causal conjunctions, as *denn* for, serve to express a relation of causality.

1. *Copulative conjunctions.*

The following conjunctions are used in German in the same way as the corresponding conjunctions are in English:

<i>und</i> and	<i>nicht nur</i> — <i>sondern auch</i> not only — but also
<i>auch</i> also	
<i>zudem</i> moreover	<i>nicht allein</i> — <i>sondern auch</i> not only — but also
<i>außerdem</i> besides	
<i>überdies</i> „	<i>nicht bloß</i> — <i>sondern auch</i> not only — but also
<i>sowol</i> — <i>als</i> as well — as	
<i>weder</i> — <i>noch</i> neither — nor	<i>theils</i> — <i>theils</i> on the one hand — on the other hand
<i>erstens</i> , <i>zweitens</i> &c. §. 137.	<i>erstlich</i> firstly
<i>dann</i> secondly	<i>ferner</i> further
<i>endlich</i> finally	

2. Causal Conjunctions.

The following conjunctions express a relation of causality:

denn for	•	darum therefore
also accordingly		daher „
mithin „		deswegen „
demnach „		desßhalb „
folglich consequently		

3. Adversative conjunctions.

The following conjunctions denote the second sentence to be in opposition to the first:

aber but!	nicht — sondern not — but
allein but	nicht — vielmehr not — but rather
hingegen on the contrary	entweder — oder either — or
dagegen „ „ „	sonst else
doch still, however	gleichwol however
jedoch „ „	dennoch nevertheless
indessen „ „	dessen ungeachtet notwithstanding.

The truth of the preceding sentence is frequently pointed out by the *concessive conjunctions*: zwar it is true, freilich indeed, wol no doubt.

PART II.

S Y N T A X.

183 Syntax treats of the connexion and arrangement of words in sentences, i. e. it points out the manner in which the different relations, existing between persons and things and their actions or qualities etc., are to be expressed by means of those inflections of substantives, verbs etc., or by connecting them with those relational words (prepositions, conjunctions etc.), which have been explained in the preceding part. The whole of Syntax is comprehended under the following heads :

- | | |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|
| Section | I. Predicative combination. |
| „ | II. Attributive combination. |
| „ | III. Objective combination. |
| „ | IV. Compound sentence. |
-

SECTION I.

SYNTAX OF THE PREDICATIVE COMBINATION.

CHAPTER I.

OF THE SUBJECT AND PREDICATE, AND THEIR FORMS.

A sentence is formed by the combination of a *Sub-* 184
ject and *Predicate* (§. 22). The *subject* is the person
 or thing spoken of. The *predicate* is the action, as-
 serted to be or not to be an action of the subject.

The subject of a simple sentence is expressed by a
substantive, or *pronoun*; e. g. der Mensch denft, or
 er denft.

The predicate is expressed by a *verb*, or by an *ad-*
jective or *substantive with the copula to be*; e. g. der
 Mensch lebt; er ist sterblich; ich bin ein Mensch.

The predicate always agrees with its subject in *Per-*
son and *Number*. The predicative verb, therefore, or
 the auxiliary verb is *inflected* by Person and Number;
 the *Time* of the action and the *Mood* of assertion (§. 34)
 are denoted by inflecting the verb in those *tenses* and
moods already explained §. 66.

When the predicate is expressed by an adjective or
 substantive with the auxiliary verb *to be*, or by one of
 the compound forms of conjugation, the *auxiliary verb*
 taking the inflections of person and number is termed
Copula (§. 42).

A sentence is either a *principal*, or an *accessory*
sentence (§. 27).

A principal sentence is

- a. an *asserting*,
- b. an *interrogative*, or
- c an *imperative sentence*. (§. 33).

Construction.

185 German differs very much from English in the arrangement of words in a sentence. In German the construction of a sentence depends not only on the grammatical signification of the words, expressing either the Subject or Predicate, or an Attribute or Object, which should therefore be carefully attended to; but on the kind of sentence itself, as being either principal or accessory (§. 27). Besides, *inverted* constructions are made use of to a greater extent in German than in English, and, of course, contribute much to increase the perspicuity as well as the vivacity and emphasis of German expression. The principal rules, however, are very simple, as will appear from the following explanation.

186 The predicate is expressed either by a simple verb or by a form compounded of two or more words, as in compound tenses; e. g. he *will come*; or in separable compound verbs; e. g. he *goes away*, he *will go away*; or the predicate is expressed by an adjective or substantive with the verb *to be*; e. g. he *is rich*, he *is a miser* etc.

In order to arrange a sentence in German, it is necessary to distinguish that part of the predicate which is inflected by person and number, and those parts which are not inflected; e. g.

Subject. Verb inflected. Predicate not inflected.

The boy	speaks	
The boys	speak	
The boy	has	spoken
The boys	have	spoken
" "	can	speak
The child	is	ill
" "	has	been ill
" "	must	be punished
" "	gets	up
" "	will	get up
" "	will	have got up.

When that part of the predicate which is not inflected, consists of two or three words, these words must be arranged in an order precisely the reverse of the English, that word which has the accent being first, thus:

<i>been ill</i>	<i>krank gewesen</i>
<i>be punished</i>	<i>bestraft werden</i>
<i>get up</i>	<i>auf stehen</i>
<i>have got up</i>	<i>auf gestanden sein.</i>

There are three forms of construction in German, viz. 187

1. *that of the principal sentence*

a. *direct,*

b. *inverted;*

2. *that of the accessory sentence.*

Construction is direct, when the subject stands first.

It is inverted, when another part of the sentence is placed before the subject;

e. g. *Direct:* You saw my father yesterday.

Inverted: Did you see my father yesterday?

or: Yesterday you saw my father.

The subject, inflected verb, and predicate not inflected are arranged in the following manner:

1. DIRECT PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.

<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Predicate</i>
	<i>inflected.</i>	<i>not inflected.</i>

2. INVERTED PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.

<i>Verb</i>	<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Predicate</i>
<i>inflected.</i>		<i>not inflected.</i>

3. ACCESSORY SENTENCE.

<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Predicate</i>	<i>Verb</i>
	<i>not inflected.</i>	<i>inflected.</i>

Objects are placed before the predicate not inflected, or if there is none, before the place which it would occupy.

The following examples will serve to illustrate the preceding rules.

1. DIRECT PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.

<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Verb inflected.</i>	<i>Object.</i>	<i>Predicate not inflected.</i>
Der Knabe	spricht	englisch	
" "	hat	englisch	gesprochen
" "	kann	englisch	sprechen
" "	steht	früh	auf
" "	ist	früh	aufgestanden
" "	ist	gefährlich	krank
" "	ist	gefährlich	krank gewesen.

2. INVERTED PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.

<i>Inverted part.</i>	<i>Verb inflected.</i>	<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Object.</i>	<i>Predicate not inflected.</i>
Gewiß	spricht	der Knabe	englisch	
"	hat	"	"	gesprochen
"	kann	"	"	sprechen
Heute	steht	"	früh	auf
"	ist	"	"	aufgestanden
"	ist	"	gefährlich	krank
Gestern	ist	"	"	krank gewesen.

3. ACCESSORY SENTENCE.

<i>Conjunction.</i>	<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Object.</i>	<i>Pred. not inflected.</i>	<i>Verb inflected.</i>
wenn	der Knabe	englisch		spricht
"	"	"	gesprochen	hat
"	"	"	sprechen	kann
daß	"	früh	auf	steht
"	"	"	"	gestanden ist
"	"	gefährlich	krank	ist
"	"	"	"	gewesen ist.

EXERCISE. Arrange the following sentences according to the rules of German construction: Money will do no good, till it is spread. A wise man will desire no more than what he may get justly. He is ignorant of fear, who dares to die. Without a friend the world is a wilderness. When once you profess yourself a friend, you should endeavour to be always such. By the faults of others, wise men correct their own. When our vices leave us, we flatter ourselves that we leave them. A friend cannot be known in prosperity: and an enemy cannot be hidden in adversity. A wise man will fear in every thing. Men are sometimes accused of pride, because their accusers would be proud themselves, if they were in their places.

Inversion of the principal sentence.

188

The construction of a principal sentence is always inverted, when the subject does not take the first place. This happens in the following cases:

1. *Interrogative and imperative sentences* are always inverted, as will be explained §§. 213, 231.

2. All *adverbs and conjunctions* beginning a sentence cause its construction to be inverted; e. g. *Gestern war das Kind krank, heute ist es gesund; und doch darf es nicht ausgehen. Hier wohnt mein Bruder; wahrscheinlich wird er zu Hause sein.* Except the conjunctions:

und and
oder or
denn for

aber but
allein but
sondern but

which do not affect the order of the following sentence.

3. All *objective accessory sentences* (see §. 27), preceding the principal sentence, cause its construction to be inverted; e. g. *Wo euer Schatz ist, da ist euer Herz. Wenn die Noth am größten ist, ist Gott am nächsten. Was er mir genommen, kann keine Krone mir ersetzen. Sch.*

4. If any part of the sentence, predicate, object or 189

subject, is to be *pointed out emphatically*, the construction is inverted. For this purpose the predicate or object is placed at the head of the sentence; e. g. Ernst ist das Leben, heiter ist die Kunst. Nur von Edlem kann Edles stammen. Reich ist er nicht gewesen. Maria Stuart hat kein Glücklich besüßt. Sch. An die Thüren will ich schleichen, still und sittsam will ich stehn. G. Für die Freiheit ist sein Blut geflossen. Von dem Kaiser nicht erhielten wir den Wallenstein zum Feldherrn; vom Wallenstein erhielten wir den Kaiser erst zum Herrn. Sch.

- 190 When the *subject* is to be pointed out emphatically, it is usually placed after the verb inflected, and even after those objects which are less important; and if its proper place at the head of the sentence is not taken by a conjunction, adverb or any other object or accessory sentence, it is filled up by the pronoun *es it*; e. g. Gestern kam plötzlich ein Gewitter, or *es* kam gestern plötzlich ein Gewitter, a thunderstorm suddenly came on yesterday. Dieses Jahr wird wahrscheinlich ein Komet am Himmel erscheinen, or *es* wird dieses Jahr wahrscheinlich ein Komet am Himmel erscheinen, a comet will probably appear this year. Es sind heute viele Briefe angekommen. Es heult der Sturm, es braust das Meer. Es zogen drei Bursche wol über den Rhein. Uhl. Es läuft ihnen alles Volk nach. G. Es warteten ganze Regimenter. Sch. Es bringen Blüten aus jedem Zweig, und tausend Stimmen aus dem Gesträuch. G.

The same transposition of the subject and object is employed in accessory sentences also, in order to make the subject more emphatic; e. g. Weil gestern plötzlich ein Gewitter kam, gingen wir nach Hause, we went home, because a thunderstorm suddenly came on yesterday. Wenn in diesem Jahr ein Komet am Himmel erscheint u. Wenn im Kampf die Muthigsten verzagen. Sch. Mir ist sichere Kunde gekommen, daß zwischen diesen stolzen Lords und meinem Vetter von Burgund nicht Alles mehr so steht, wie sonst. Sch.

The transposition of the subject is always used in

German, when mere existence is asserted of the subject; e. g. *es war einmal ein Mann*, there was once a man. *Es ist jetzt Friede*. *Es ist dort große Hungersnoth*. *Es ist eine schöne Mondnacht*. &c. *Es sind bedenkliche Zeiten*. &c. *Es war ein König in Thule*. &c.

The same construction is generally employed in German as in English, whenever the subject is not expressed by a substantive, but by *an accessory sentence*, or by a *verb in the supine* (Infinitive with the prep. *zu*); e. g. *es ist wahr, daß ich das gethan habe*, it is true, that I have done it; *es ist schwer, das zu thun*, it is difficult to do that; *es ist angenehm, im Frühling spazieren zu gehen*, walking in spring is pleasant.

The following idiomatic expressions deserve notice:

<i>es freut mich, or es macht mir Freude Sie zu sehen</i>	} it gives me pleasure to see you
<i>es thut mir leid, das zu hören</i>	I am sorry to hear this
<i>es macht mir Schmerz das zu ic.</i>	It gives me pain to hear this
<i>es reuet mich, das gethan zu haben, or daß ich das gethan habe</i>	I repent having done this
<i>es wundert mich, das zu hören or daß ich ic.</i>	I am astonished to hear this
<i>es beliebt mir, das zu thun</i>	I have pleasure in doing this
<i>es gefällt mir, " " "</i>	" " " " "
<i>es ist mir gefällig, das zu thun</i>	" " " " "
<i>es betrübt mich, das zu hören</i>	I am sorry to hear this
<i>es schmerzt mich, " " "</i>	It gives me pain to hear this
<i>es ärgert mich, " " "</i>	It vexes me " " "
<i>es heißt, daß ic.</i>	It is said, that etc.
<i>es scheint, daß ic.</i>	It seems etc.
<i>es ziemt sich, daß ic.</i>	It is due, becoming etc.
<i>es versteht sich von selbst ic.</i>	It is self evident etc.
<i>es hilft wenig or nichts ic.</i>	It is of little or no use
<i>es nützt " " "</i>	" " " " " " "

Expressions, however, like, *it was here, it was to-day, it was only just now* that he said so etc.,

are not conformable to the German idiom. The emphasis expressed by such forms in English is rendered in German by the inverted construction, according to §. 189; hier, noch heute, erst eben hat er es gesagt; e. g. It is to this part of the building, that my story refers; auf diesen Theil des Gebäudes bezieht sich meine Geschichte. It was not until about that period, that the author obtained an account of it; erst um diese Zeit bekam der Verfasser einen Bericht darüber. It was not long afterwards, when he beheld two persons, nicht lange nachher bemerkte er zwei Personen.

As the rule of German construction in inverted sentences requires the verb to be placed immediately after that part of the sentence which takes the first place, it is evident that there cannot be two objects preceding the verb; e. g. *last winter in England* there was severe cold, letzten Winter war es in England sehr kalt, or in England war es letzten Winter sehr kalt.

In poetry constructions not conformable to the above rules are sometimes used, in order to give emphasis to the expression; e. g. der Knecht hat erstochen den edlen Herrn. Uhl. Von der Stirne heiss rinnen muß der Schweiß. Sch. Der Knabe schlief ein am grünen Gestade. Sch.

Forms of the subject.

192 The subject is always in the nominative case. It is expressed

a. *by a substantive*;

b. *by a substantive adjective* (§. 127);

c. *by a substantive pronoun* (§. 137);

d. *by a substantive accessory sentence* (§. 327):

e. g. Frau Bertha saß in der Felsenkluft, sie klagt' ihr bittres Loos. Uhl. Nicht nach gewohnter Sitte erzog man dieses Kind; und als es kam zu Jahren, ward es die schönste Frau. Uhl. Wie die Alten sungen, so zwitscheren die Jungen (Proverb). Das Neue dringt heran mit Macht;

das Alte, das Würd'ge scheidet; andre Zeiten kommen. *Sch.* Wer bescheiden ist, muß dulden, und wer frech ist, der muß leiden. *G.* Was wir in Gesellschaft singen, wird von Herz zu Herzen bringen. *G.*

In imperative sentences, when a person is addressed in the second person, the subject (*du thou*, *ihr you*) is omitted. But when, as is usually done (§. 139), a person is addressed in the third person plural, the subject (*Sie you*) is expressed; e. g. *sage mir*, *sagen Sie mir*, *tell me*; *komm her*, *kommen Sie her*, *come here*.

The *substantive pronoun* agrees in gender and number with the substantive it represents. When, however, this substantive is a diminutive (in *chen* or *lein* §. 54) of a name of a person, the pronoun generally takes the natural gender of that person; e. g. *Als mich das Mädchen erblickt*, *so trat sie den Pferden näher*. *G.* *Was gibt's? das Fräulein! Sie will sterben*. *Sch.* *Ein Weiblein, grau vor Jahren, dort an dem Roden spann; sie hatte wol nichts erfahren vom strengen Spindelbann*. *Uhl.*

The pronouns: *es it*, *das that*, *dies this*, *was what*, and the numeral *Alles all*, when used in an indefinite way, are in the neuter singular; e. g. *Das ist deine Tochter*. *Sch.* *that is your daughter*. *Und das sind meine Richter*. *Sch.* and *these* are my judges. *Es sind nicht eben schlechte Männer*. *Sch.* *They* are no bad men. *Was sich liebt, das neckt sich* (Proverb), *those who love each other, quarrel with each other*. - *Alles rennet, rettet, flüchtet*. *Sch.* *All run, save themselves, fly*. *Es waren bloß leere Gerüchte*. *They* were mere loose reports.

Predicate.

The verb, as in English, agrees with the subject of the sentence in person and number. When in a contracted sentence (§. 28) the same predicate refers to two or more subjects, the verb stands in the plural number; e. g. *Hitze und Kälte sind schädlich*, *heat and cold are hurtful*. *Mir rosten in der Halle Helm und Schild*. *Sch.* *Schönheit und Jugend traten in ihre vol-*

len Rechte wieder ein. Sch. The singular number, however, is also employed in German, especially when two or more subjects may be conceived as constituting one general notion; e. g. Hopfen und Malz ist an ihm verloren, hops and malt (all labour) are lost on him; hier steht Salz und Pfeffer, here stand salt and pepper. Berrath und Argwohn lauscht in allen Ecken. Sch. Um sie buhlt die Jugend und das Alter Sch. Verschwört sich Haß und Liebe mich zu schrecken? Sch. Die Orgel und der Chorgesang erkünet meinem Ohr. Umland.

After two subjects, one of which is in the first and the other in the second or third person, the verb stands in the first; and after two subjects in the second and third persons, the verb stands in the second person plural; e. g. Ich und Du wissen es, I and you know that; Du und der Vater werdet es sehen, thou and thy father will see it. It is more usual, however, to add a personal pronoun in the plural number, comprehending both subjects; e. g. Ich und Du, wir wissen es; Du und der Vater, Ihr werdet es sehen.

After collectives (§. 38) in the singular number, the German verb always stands in the same number; e. g. die Menge geht dem Vergnügen nach, the multitude *pursue* pleasure; der Rath war in seiner Meinung getheilt, the council *were* divided in *their* opinions. Es spielt hier jeden Abend eine Gesellschaft französischer Schauspieler, a company of French actors *play* here every night. The verb takes the plural however after ein Paar a pair, a couple; eine Menge a number; ein Duzend a dozen, and some other substantives used as indefinite numerals; e. g. ein Paar Häuser sind abgebrannt, two or three houses have been burnt; eine Menge Hasen sind geschossen worden, a great number of hares have been killed.

Forms of the predicate.

The predicate is expressed, in German as in English, by

- 195 a. *a verb*;
b. *an adjective (not inflected)*;

- c. *a substantive in the nominative case;*
- d. *a substantive in the genitive case;*
- e. *a substantive with a preposition;*
- f. *an adverb.*

The verb, adjective and substantive in the nominative case are the usual expressions for the predicate, and require no further explanation than by the following examples.

Balken frachen, Pfosten stürzen, Fenster klirren, Kinder jammern, Mütter irren. Sch. Das Leben ist kurz, die Kunst ist lang. — Ernst ist das Leben, heiter ist die Kunst. Sch. Eng ist die Welt und das Gehirn ist weit. Sch. Jung Siegfried war ein stolzer Knab, ging von des Vaters Burg herab. Uhl. Arion war der Löwe Meister. Schlegel.

The verb *sein* cannot, like the English *to be*, express 196 a predicate when standing alone (except in inverted sentences, §. 190). The notional words *geschehen* to happen, *Statt finden* to take place, are used instead of *to be*; e. g. That will never *be*, daß wird nie *geschehen*; this wedding of my son's will never *be* at all, diese Heirat meines Sohnes wird nie *Statt finden*.

The following *adjectives* are not used as predicates: 197

1. *Derivatives* in *en*, *as*, *golden* *golden*, *hölzern* *wooden* etc., instead of which *von Gold* *of gold*, *von Holz* *of wood* etc. are used.

2. *Many derivatives* in *lich* and *isch*, as:

diebisch thievish	heuchlerisch hypocritical
räuberisch rapacious	nordisch northern
jährlich annual	täglich daily
wörtlich literal	betrügerisch treacherous
gänzlich total	etc.

When an adjective in the superlative degree stands as a predicate, it assumes two different forms, in German as in English, viz.

a. in the nominative case with the definite article; as, *er ist der älteste*, he is the eldest; *der klügste*, the wisest. Ordinal numbers are of the same description and always take the definite article; e.g. *ich bin der erste*, I am first; *du bist der zweite*, you are second.

b. Superlatives which have no article in English, as, the days are longest in summer, take in German the preposition *an* (at), contracted with the dative of the definite article into *am* (=an dem); e. g. *die Tage sind im Sommer am längsten*. *Wenn die Noth am größten ist, ist Gott am nächsten*, when need is greatest, God is nearest. *Der Starke ist am mächtigsten allein*. *Sch.* The strong one is most powerful when alone.

Cardinal and indefinite numerals can scarcely be placed alone in the place of the predicate; and when mere number or quantity is to be asserted by the predicate, as *we were three, the brothers are many, they are few*, the subject is always connected with the numeral, and placed in the genitive case, the indefinite pronoun *es* taking the place of the subject; e. g. *es waren unser drei*, *es sind der Brüder viele*, *es sind ihrer wenig*, *es ist des Geldes sehr wenig*.

Possessive pronouns are used as predicates, as in English; e. g. *das Buch ist mein*, the book is mine.

- 198 *A substantive in the genitive case* is more usual in poetry and sublime style than in common prose; e. g. *Elisabeth ist meines Rangs und Standes*. *Sch.* *Ihr wart so zarten Alters*. *Sch.* *Ihr wart sonst immer so geschwin-*
der Junge. *Sch.* *Der größte Theil der Fürsten ist unserer*
Gefinnung. *G.* *Mein Vater war überhaupt lehrhafter*
Natur. *G.*

In common prose the following phrases only are adopted:

Ich bin der Meinung, daß &c. I am of opinion that etc.

" " andrer Meinung " " " a different opinion

Wir sind verschiedner Mei- *" " "* We are of different opinions
nung

Ich bin Willens, das zu thun	I have a mind to do that
Das ist meines Amtes	That is my office
Ich bin gutes Muthes	I am in good spirits
" " guter Dinge	" " in a good humour
" " guter Laune	" " " " " "
Ich bin des Todes	I am a dead man
Sei gutes Muthes	Be of good cheer!
Wir sind gleichen Alters	We are of the same age.

Instead of this predicative genitive, the preposition *von* with the dative case is commonly used; e. g.

Er ist von Adel, von altem Adel.

" " " Stande.

" " " hoher Geburt.

" " " niedriger Herkunft.

Diese Sache ist von Werth.

" " " " Wichtigkeit.

" " " " Bedeutung.

Die Jugend ist nicht von langer Dauer.

Das ist von großen Folgen.

Der Kampf war von kurzer Dauer.

Der Pallast war von bedeutendem Umfang und von verschiedenem Alter.

In the same way the materials of which things are composed, are expressed by *von*; e. g.

Der Tisch ist von Holz.

Die Uhr ist von Gold.

Das Haus ist von Stein.

Die Feder ist von Stahl.

Der Becher ist von Silber.

Other prepositions also are used, in German as in English, when the place or condition of the subject is to be expressed by the predicate; e. g.

Er ist in der Kirche

He is in church

" " zu Hause

" " at home

" " bei seinem Vater

" " with his father

" " bei Hofe

" " at court

" " über alle Berge

" " off, far away

Sie ist in gelegneten Umständen	She is with child
Er ist nicht bei Sinnen	He is not in his senses
Du bist außer dir	Thou art beside thyself
Er ist in meinen Diensten	He is in my service
„ „ in vollem Besiz einer Sache	„ „ in full possession of anything
Er ist in Verlegenheit	„ „ at a loss
„ „ im Zorn	„ „ in a passion
„ „ in Wuth	„ „ „ „ „
„ „ in Angst, Furcht	„ „ in fear
„ „ in Sorgen	„ „ in pain
„ „ in Noth	„ „ in need
„ „ in Gefahr	„ „ in danger
„ „ im Stande, zu —	„ „ enabled to —
„ „ in tiefer Trauer	„ „ in deep mourning
„ „ ohne Sorgen	„ „ without care
„ „ „ Hülfe	„ „ „ help
„ „ „ Geld	He has no money
„ „ „ Muth	„ „ „ courage
„ „ bei Geld	„ „ money
„ „ bei guter Laune	„ „ is in good spirits
Der Ball ist zu Ende	The ball is at an end.

In the following and similar expressions the verb *stehen* *to stand*, is employed instead of the verb *to be*.

Seine Satiren stehen über denen Juvenals	His satires <i>are</i> beyond Juvenal's
Das steht bei Ihnen	That <i>is</i> in your power
„ „ in meiner Macht	„ „ in my power
Ich stehe bei ihm in Gnaden	I <i>am</i> in favour with him
Er steht im Verdacht	He <i>is</i> suspected
Er steht in gutem Rufe	He <i>is</i> of good reputation
Ich stehe mit ihm in Verbindung	I <i>am</i> in connexion with him
Es steht im Verhältniß mit —	It <i>is</i> in proportion to —
Es steht in keinem Verhältniß mit —	„ „ not in proportion to —
Es steht mir zu Gebote	„ „ at my disposal

by der Art (of that kind); e. g. das Betragen des Herzogs war der Art, daß es einigen Verdacht erregte; seine Talente waren der Art, daß ic.

In order to avoid the repetition of a predicate, the English use *so*; e. g. he is sick, and I am *so* too. Will you go? Yes, I will do *so*. In German, the substantive pronoun *es* is employed in this, case: Er ist krank und ich bin es auch. Wollen Sie gehen? Ja, ich will es thun.

Some of those adverbs which are found in separable compound verbs (§. 64), may be used as predicates, forming, as it were, a separable compound. with the verb to be; e. g.

Ich bin auf
Die Thür ist auf

I am up
The door is open
" " " to (shut).

Er ist " aus " zu

He is " out (absent)

Der Krieg ist aus

The war is over

Das Feuer, das Licht ist aus

The fire, the candle is out.

Die Schmerzen sind noch nicht

The pain is not yet over

vorüber (vorbei)

Die Kirche ist aus

Church is over.

CHAPTER II.

OF ACTIVE, PASSIVE, REFLECTIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

202 There are three forms of the predicative verb, viz. the *active*, the *passive* and the *reflective*.

Active.

They dispersed the enemy.

He distinguishes the parts of speech.

Reflective.

They dispersed.

He distinguishes himself by valour.

Passive.

They were dispersed by the enemy.

He is distinguished.

Active verbs are either *transitive*, or *intransitive*.

A verb is said to be *transitive*, when it requires an object conceived to suffer, and be affected by this action. The object of a transitive verb is always in the *accusative* case, and is termed *suffering object*; e. g. sie zerstreuten den Feind, they dispersed the enemy; ich schlage den Hund, I beat the dog; er bauet ein Haus, he builds a house; du verbrennst das Papier, you burn the paper.

All verbs which are not transitive, are termed *intransitive*.

In English transitive and intransitive verbs are not so carefully distinguished as in German, a great number of verbs being used both as transitive and intransitive. This will be explained more particularly in Chapt. VII. The learner is referred to good dictionaries for fuller information.

Transitive verbs alone admit of the passive and reflective forms.

USE OF THE PASSIVE FORM.

203

The passive form is much more frequently used in English than in German.

Intransitive verbs which govern the dative case (see Chapt. IX.), *have no passive form*; e. g. danken to thank, schmeicheln to flatter, folgen to follow, trauen to trust. When such verbs are in the passive form in English, the sentence must be transformed into a sentence with the verb in the active form; e. g. for this I was thanked by the chap-

lain, must be translated as if it was: for this the chaplain thanked me, dafür dankte mir der Kaplan; my vanity was flattered by this success — this success flattered (to) my vanity. Dieser Erfolg schmeichelte meiner Eitelkeit; the king was followed by his ministers — the ministers followed the king, dem Könige folgten die Minister; troops which could not be trusted, Truppen, denen man nicht trauen konnte.

When a verb governs the dative case of a *person* and at the same time the accusative case of a *thing*, as: to show something (Acc.) to somebody (Dat.), to permit something to — to offer, to tell etc.; the accusative case alone may be changed into the subject of the passive voice. Thus it is said: a room was shown to me, ein Zimmer wurde mir gezeigt; it was permitted to me, to visit her, es wurde mir erlaubt, sie zu besuchen; it was told to me, es ist mir gesagt worden; liberty was offered to him, es wurde ihm die Freiheit angeboten u.; but not, as is more usual in English: I was shown a room, I was permitted to visit her; I was told so; he was offered his liberty.

Intransitive verbs, governing a case with a preposition have no passive form; e. g. to send for some thing, nach etwas schicken; to hear of something, von etwas hören; to doubt of something, an etwas zweifeln; to laugh at something, über etwas lachen; to agree to something, in etwas einwilligen.

Sentences therefore, like: his attorney was sent for; he was never afterwards heard of; his recovery is doubted of; I was laughed at; the match was agreed on; the fidelity of some regiments was very little to be reckoned upon, must be transformed into the active, and if there is no active subject (sending, hearing etc.), as in the above examples, the indefinite pronoun man (*one*, french *on*) is used as the subject: man schickte nach seinem Advokaten; man hörte nachher nie mehr von ihm; man zweifelt an seinem Aufkommen; man lachte über mich; man willigte in die Verbindung; auf die Treue einiger Regimenter konnte man wenig rechnen.

Even *transitive verbs* are not so much used in the passive form in German as in English. The passive construction is usual in the following cases only:

1. when the person or thing performing the action is to be made more prominent, than the person or thing suffering the action; e. g. *er ist vom Blitz erschlagen worden*, he has been killed by lightning; *der Straßburger Münster ist von Erwin von Steinbach erbaut worden*, the cathedral of Strasburg was built by Erwin of Steinbach; *Fürsten werden unaufhörlich von Schmeichlern belagert*, princes are constantly surrounded by flatterers.

2. When the person or thing, performing the action, is not expressed; e. g. *er ist im Wald erschlagen worden*, he has been killed in the wood; *der Straßburger Münster ist im 14. Jahrhundert erbaut worden*, the cathedral of Strasburg was built in the 14. century; *junge Leute müssen belehrt werden*, young people must be taught; *die Redlichkeit wird nicht immer belohnt*, honesty is not always rewarded; *er wird jeden Augenblick erwartet*, he is expected every moment.

On the other hand, the passive form is not used in expressions like: it is said that — it must be owned that, *man sagt, man muß gestehen, daß*; a greater injustice cannot be imagined, *man kann sich keine größere Ungerechtigkeit denken*; age ought to be honoured, *das Alter muß man ehren*.

OBSERVATION. The following constructions are not really passive, the participle having the value of an adjective; therefore the auxiliary verb *to be sein* (not *werden*) is employed in German as in English:

<i>ich bin geneigt</i>	<i>I am inclined</i>
<i>" " gesinnt or gesonnen</i>	<i>" " disposed</i>
<i>" " gewohnt</i>	<i>" " accustomed</i>
<i>" " gefaßt</i>	<i>" " collected in mind</i>
<i>" " gelehrt</i>	<i>" " learned</i>
<i>" " geschickt</i>	<i>" " qualified</i>
<i>" " erfreut</i>	<i>" " pleased</i>
<i>" " verwundert</i>	<i>" " astonished.</i>

This is also the case, when the design of the sentence is to express the *state or condition*, which is the result of the action,

rather than the action itself; as in *descriptions* like: The shrubs were diligently cut away to open walks, the boughs of opposite trees were artificially interwoven; seats of flowery turf were raised in vacant spaces.

USE OF THE REFLECTIVE VERB.

- 205 Verbs, originally transitive, are rendered intransitive by assuming the reflective form; e. g. by being connected with the accusative case of the reflective pronouns

mich myself	uns ourselves
sich thyself	euch yourselves
sich him-her-it-self	sich themselves

which occupy the place, but have not the signification of an object. Thus in saying: he distinguished himself by his valour, *to distinguish* being a transitive verb, is rendered intransitive; for he distinguishes himself, means the same as: he excels.

The reflective form of verbs is very extensively employed in German as in French (*verbs pronominaux*), whilst in English either the same word is used in the transitive and intransitive sense, or the passive voice is used in order to express the intransitive sense.

The following list contains the most usual reflective verbs:

206 1. *Verbs reflective in German and in English.*

Ich begnüge mich mit —	I content myself with —
Er befehret sich	He repents
Bemühen Sie sich nicht	Do not trouble yourself
Ich empfehle mich Ihnen.	I recommend myself to you (take my leave)
Ich entschuldige mich	I excuse myself
Er erfrischt sich	He refreshes himself .
Ich ergöze mich	I amuse myself
Er ergibt sich den Wissen-	He devotes himself to the
schaften	sciences
Er erholt sich	He recovers himself
Ich fasse mich	I recollect myself

Ich gewöhne mich an etwas	I accustom myself to —
Ich lege mich auf	I apply myself to —
Ich räche mich an meinem Feind	I revenge myself on my enemy
Ich rette mich aus der Noth	I rescue myself from danger
Ich will mich nach dir richten	I will accomodate myself to you
Er schonet sich nicht	He does not take care of himself
Ich übe mich im Tanzen	I exercise myself in dancing
Ich verpflichte mich zu —	I engage myself to —
Ich wehre mich	I defend myself
Ich wende mich an Jemanden	I address myself to —
Er zeichnet sich aus durch —	He distinguishes himself by —

2. *Verbs reflective in German, passive in English.* 207

Ich ärgere mich über —	I am vexed with —
Ich begnüge mich mit —	I am satisfied with —
Ich betrübe mich über —	I am afflicted
Die Wellen brechen sich an der Küste	The waves are dashed against the shore
Die Lichtstrahlen brechen sich	The rays of light are refracted
Das Schloß erhebt sich über die Stadt	The castle is elevated above the town
Ich freue mich über —	I am pleased with —
Ich gräme mich über —	I am grieved at
Ich irre mich	I am mistaken
Ich schäme mich über —	I am ashamed of
Ich schleppe mich mit einem Fieber	I am harrassed by a fever
Der Mond spiegelt sich im Wasser	The moon is reflected in the water
Ich habe mich mit ihr verlobt	I am betrothed to her
Ich versöhne mich mit ihm	I am reconciled with him
Ich verstehe mich auf etwas	I am skilled in something
Das Holz wirft sich	The wood is warped
Etwas wiederholt sich	Something is repeated
Er hat sich sehr verändert	He is quite altered

Das Bündniß löst sich auf The alliance is dissolved
 Es verbreitet sich ein Gerücht A report is spread.

208 3. *Verbs reflexive in German, active in English.*

Das Wetter ändert sich	The weather changes
Ich bade mich	I bathe
Das Pferd bäumt sich	The horse rears
Ich bedanke mich	I thank
Ich bedenke mich darüber	I reflect upon it
Ich bediene mich (c. Gen.)	I make use of —
Ich befinde mich wohl	I am well
Ich befinde mich in großer Gefahr	I am in great danger
Ich begeben mich in die Kirche	I go (render myself) to church
Ich beklage mich über —	I complain of —
Ich bekümmere mich um —	I care for —
Die Summe beläuft sich auf	The sum amounts to —
Ich bemächtige mich des Thrones	I take possession of the throne
Ich berausche mich	I get drunk
Ich bemessere mich des Thrones	I take possession of the throne
Ich berathe mich mit ihm	I deliberate with him
Ich berufe mich auf ihn	I appeal to him
Ich beschwere mich über —	I complain of —
Ich bespreche mich mit ihm	I converse with him
Ich bestrebe mich, es zu thun	In endeavour to do so
Er beträgt sich gut	He behaves well
Ich besinne mich —	I reflect upon —
Ich bewege mich langsam	I move slowly
Das bezieht sich auf —	This refers to —
Er bildet sich etwas ein	He imagines something
Der Stock biegt sich	The stick bends
Die Erde dreht sich um ihre Axe	The earth turns around its axis
Ich beeile mich	I hasten, make haste
Das Volk empört sich	The people revolts
Ich entferne mich	I withdraw
Ich enthalte mich des Weines	I abstain from wine
Ich entscheide mich über —	I resolve upon —
Ich entschliefte mich zu —	" " " "
Ich erbarme mich (c. Gen.)	I have pity on —
Ich ergebe mich dem Feinde	I surrender to the enemy
Es ereignet sich	It happens

Ich ergöße mich an— (c. Dat.)	I delight in —
Ich erhole mich	I recover
Ich erinnere mich	I recollect
Ich erkälte mich	I catch a cold
Ich erkundige mich nach —	I enquire after —
Ich freue mich über —	I rejoice at—, am glad of—
Ich freue mich auf —	" " " " " "
Ich führe mich gut auf	I behave well
Ich fühle mich glücklich	I feel happy
Ich gedulde mich	I have patience.
Ich geselle mich zu ihm	I associate with him
Ich halte mich rechter Hand	I keep on the right hand
Ich halte mich hier auf	I dwell, live here
Ich halte mich über etwas auf	I find fault with something
Die Kletten hängen sich an die Kleider	The burds stick to one's clothes
Ich hüte mich vor —	I take heed, beware of —
Ich lasse mich herab	I condescend
Ich nehme mir etwas heraus	I presume
Ich kniee mich	I kneel
Ich kümmere mich um —	I care for —
Das Heer lagert sich	The army encamps
Ich lege mich	I lie down
Der Wind legt sich	The wind ceases
Das Schiff legt sich vor Anker	The ship comes to anchor
Die Zahl mehrt sich, or ver- mehrt sich	The number increases
Er mischt sich ein in etwas	He meddles with —
Ich nähere mich der Stadt	I approach the town
Sie nährt sich durch Spinnen	She lives (gets her living) by spinning
Er neigt sich vor ihr	He bows to her
Er neigt sich dazu	He is inclined to it
Er nimmt sich in Acht	He takes care
Die Thür öffnet sich	The door opens
Er regt sich nicht	He does not stir
Ich rühme mich	I boast
Der Fluß schlängelt sich	The river meanders

Der Hund schmiegt sich an seinen Herrn	The dog fawns upon his master
Das Fundament hat sich gesenket	The foundation has sunk
Ich sehne mich nach —	I long for —
Ich setze mich	I sit down
Setzen Sie sich	Sit down, take a chair
Er stürzte sich ins Wasser	He plunged into the water
Er täuscht sich	He errs
Er treibt sich herum	He rambles about
Die Stadt hat sich übergeben	The town has surrendered
Ich habe mich umgekleidet	I have changed my dress
Ich unterhalte mich mit ihm	I converse with him
Ich unterwerfe mich	I submit
Ich habe mich verhehelicht, verheirathet	I have married
Das Wetter verändert sich	They weather changes
Ich vereinige mich mit ihm	I join with him
Ich vergehe mich	I do wrong
Die Sache verhält sich so	The matter is so
Ich verlasse mich auf —	I rely upon —
Ich verliebe mich in sie	I fall in love with her
Sie verschwören sich	They conspire
Ich sehe mich um	I look round
Ich verwende mich für ihn	I intercede for him
Ich verspäte mich	I tarry, come too late
Ich verstehe mich dazu	I accede to it
Ich wälze mich	I wallow, welter
Ich wasche mich	I wash
Ich weigere mich	I refuse
Ich wende mich	I turn
Ich widerseze mich	I oppose
Ich ziehe mich zurück	I retire
Ich wundre mich über —	I wonder at —
Ich zanke mich mit ihm	I quarrel with him
Sie zerstreuten sich	They dispersed
Das Gewitter zieht sich nach der Stadt	The tempest draws towards the town.

IMPERSONAL SENTENCES.

A sentence, expressive of an action which is asserted without any relation to the person or thing performing it, is termed an *impersonal sentence*. Such sentences, as: it rains, it snows, have indeed no subject; its place however is generally represented in German as in English by the pronoun *es* *it*. The predicate of an impersonal sentence may be a verb, adjective or substantive. Impersonal sentences are principally used to express *natural events* and indications of time, which the subject is either involved in, or obvious from the predicate; such as

es regnet	it rains
es schneiet	it snows
es hagelt	it hails
es friert	it freezes
es thauet	it thaws
es bligt	it lightens
es donnert	it thunders
es stürmt	there is a storm
es ist kalt	it is cold
es ist kühl	it is cool
es ist warm	it is warm
es ist heiß	it is hot
es ist angenehm	it is pleasant weather
es ist angenehmes (schö- nes) Wetter	" " " "
es ist hell	it is clear
es ist dunkel	it is dark
es ist früh	it is early
es ist spät	it is late
es ist Morgen, Mittag	it is morning, noon
es ist Abend, Nacht	it evening, night
es ist 6 Uhr	it is 6 o'clock
es ist ein viertel auf 7	it is a quarter past 6
es ist halb 7	it is half past 6
es ist drei viertel auf 7	it is a quarter to 7
es ist heute Sonntag &c.	it is Sunday to-day etc.

210 The following are of the same description in German, though different in English:

- es klopft somebody knocks (at the door)
 es schlägt the clock strikes
 es läutet the bell rings
 es trommelt the drum is beating
 es thauet the dew is falling
 es wird Abend (Morgen) evening (morning) comes on
 es hungert mich, or mich hungert I am hungry
 es durstet mich, or mich durstet I am thirsty
 es friert mich, or mich friert I am chilly
 es schaudert mich, or mich schaudert I shudder
 es verlangt mich, or mich verlangt nach etwas I long
 for something
 es gelüstet mich, or mich gelüstet nach etwas I lust after
 something
 es jammert mich, or mich jammert (c. Gen.) I pity
 es reuet mich, or mich reuet I repent of —
 es grauet mir, or mir grauet vor — I am afraid of —
 es efelt mir, or mir efelt vor — I am disgusted at —
 es schwindelt mir, or mir schwindelt I am giddy
 es gefällt mir hier I am pleased here
 es behagt mir hier I am comfortable here
 es ist mir wohl I am well
 es ist mir übel I am unwell
 es ist mir heiß I am hot
 es ist mir gut { zu Muthe I am in good,
 es ist mir schlecht { bad spirits
 es ist mir bange um — I am uneasy about —
 es mangelt an Geld {
 es fehlt " " { money is wanting
 es gebricht " " {
 es bedarf des Geldes there is need of money
 es braucht nicht vieler Worte there is no need of many
 words
 es kommt darauf an, ob — It is important, whether —
 es kommt hier nur auf Geld an, money alone is re-
 garded in this

es ist kein Zweifel, daß er kommen wird there is no doubt, that he will come.

The verb *geben*, *to give*, is employed impersonally ²¹¹ in a peculiar way, in order to express *existence*; *es gibt there is, there are* (french: *il y a*). The substantive, expressing the thing which is said to exist, is put in the accusative case, as in: *es gibt Leute, welche —*, there are people who —; *es gibt keine Riesen*, there are no giants; in Deutschland gibt es einen Kaiser und fünf Könige, there are one emperor and five kings in Germany; *es gibt keine Rosen ohne Dornen*, there is no rose without a thorn; was gibt's da? what is the matter there? was gibt's Neues? what news? Es gibt eine heroische Unschuld sowol, als einen heroischen Muth, there is a heroic innocence as well as a heroic courage.

However, *es gibt* never stands for *there is*, when it serves merely to invert a sentence, as in: there is a friend of mine in London, *es ist ein Freund von mir in London*. In such sentences the auxiliary verb *sein* is used: there is no water in the bottle, *es ist kein Wasser in der Flasche*; where there is smoke, there is fire, *wo Rauch ist, da ist Feuer*; there is ice on the river, *es ist Eis auf dem Flusse*.

The passive voice, both of transitive and intransitive ²¹² verbs, is used impersonally, as in Latin, when the subject of the action is not to be expressed, as in: *es wird in London viel gestohlen*, a there is much stealing in London; *es wird in Deutschland viel geraucht*, they smoke much in Germany; *es wurde nach dem Arzt geschickt*, the physician was sent for; *heute Abend wird getanzt werden*, to-night there will be dancing; *es wird viel davon gesprochen*, it is much spoken of.

Sometimes the reflective form is used in the same manner; e. g. *es schläft sich gut an einem Wasserfall*, one sleeps well near a cascade; *es fährt sich angenehm in diesem Wagen*, one rides comfortably in this carriage; *von Eurer Fahrt kehrt sich's nicht immer wieder*. Sch. One does not always return from a journey like yours. Lebhaft träumt sich's unter diesem Baum, one has vivid dreams under this tree.

CHAPTER III.

MODALITY OF THE PREDICATE.

We comprehend under the head of modality :

1) the distinction of *affirmative* and *negative sentences*;

2) the distinction of the *reality*, *possibility* and *necessity* of the predicate.

1. Affirmation and Negation.

- 213 Affirmation is not in general expressed by any particular word; e. g. er schläft, he sleeps; er ist angekommen, he has arrived. When however an affirmation is to be emphatically made, one of the adverbs *ja yes*, *doch yet*, *wahrlich truly*, *wirklich really* etc. (§. 174) is added, which then either takes the place of an object, or precedes the sentence, without inverting it; e. g. Sara hat ihren Vater geliebt, und gewiß, sie liebt ihn noch. Lessing. Sarah loved her father, and certainly, she still loves him. Ja, dem ist wirklich so. Sch. Yes, it is so indeed. Fürwahr, das Glück war eurer Kühnheit hold. Sch. Truly, fortune was favourable to your boldness. Wahrhaftig, der Spaß war nicht gering. Sch. By my faith, the joke was not bad. Ich weiß es wahrhaftig nicht, I am sure, I don't know. Es ist allerdings wahr, it is certainly true.

Interrogative Sentence.

A question is asked, without the auxiliary verb *to do*, merely by inverting the sentence, according to §. 176; the verb inflected takes the first place, and is only preceded by the interrogative pronoun, if there is one.

<i>Interrog. Pronoun.</i>	<i>Verb inflected.</i>	<i>Subject.</i>	<i>Object.</i>	<i>Predicate not inflected.</i>
Wo	bist	du		gewesen?
Where	have	you		been?
	Bist	du	dort (there)	gewesen?
	Hast	du	ihn	gesehen?
	Siehst	du	ihn?	do you see him?

In answering a question, the adverbs *ja yes*, *nein no*, are employed, as in English.

A negation is expressed by *nicht not*, *keineswegs* ²¹⁴ *not at all*, and by *nein no*. The auxiliary verb *to do* is not employed in negative sentences, as in English. The negative adverb is commonly placed after the objects (see §. 259); e. g. *der stolze Herzog läßt sich nicht versöhnen. &c.* The proud duke is not to be reconciled. *Es kann der Britte gegen den Schotten nicht gerecht sein. &c.* The Briton cannot be just to the Scotch-man.

When there is an indefinite article, pronoun, or numeral in a negative sentence, the German idiom generally requires a negative pronoun or numeral; viz.

<i>kein</i>	instead of <i>not a</i> , <i>not any</i> ,
<i>Niemand</i>	" " <i>not anybody</i> ,
<i>Nichts</i>	" " <i>not any thing</i> ;

e. g. I do not know any rule so useful in life, *ich kenne keine im Leben so nützliche Regel*; I do not know anybody here, *ich kenne hier Niemanden*; I have not heard any thing of him, *ich habe nichts von ihm gehört*.

Possibility and Necessity of the Predicate.

The possibility and necessity of the predicate are expressed in German by the auxiliary verbs of modality: *können*, *dürfen*, *mögen*, *müssen*, *sollen*, *wollen* and *lassen*, and by the adverb *gern*. The use of these auxiliary verbs depends upon whether the possibility or necessity of an action depend upon *nature* or upon the *will* of some person.

Possibility by nature and ability, i. e. power, is expressed by *können*, which corresponds to the English *to be able* or *can*, *may*; e. g. *der Vogel kann fliegen*, *der Fisch kann schwimmen*; *man kann nicht alles wissen*. *Ich schrie so laut als ich konnte*, I cried as loud as I could; *ich kann ziemlich gut schießen*, I can shoot pretty well. *Ich kann nicht singen und springen*, *ich liege krank im Gras. Keine*.

Du kannst mir verbieten Dich zu begleiten, aber Du kannst mich nicht hindern, Dir zu folgen, you may forbid me to accompany you, but cannot hinder me from following; ein kleiner Funke kann ein großes Feuer anzünden, a small spark may kindle a great fire.

Possibility depending upon the will of a person, i. e. liberty and permission, is expressed by dürfen and mögen. Dürfen signifies that an action is permitted by law or by a person; e. g. Jedermann darf Waffen tragen, every body is permitted to bear arms; darf ich diesen Brief lesen? may I read this letter? Kein Wagen-gerassel durfte seiner Wohnung nahe kommen. Sch. The noise of carriages was not permitted near his residence.

- 216 Mögen generally expresses that the *speaker* allows another person to do something; e. g. du magst den Brief lesen, you may (I allow you to) read the letter; da er müde ist, so mag er ausruhen, since he is fatigued, he may (I allow him to) take rest; Ihr möget einen Versuch machen, you may make an attempt (I have no objection to it); Du magst es thun, wenn Du kannst, You may do it if you can.

Sometimes mögen expresses what is agreeable to the wishes of the *subject*, and then it corresponds to the English *to like*; but it is generally employed in this way in negative sentences only, or in the conditional; e. g. Er mag ihn nicht sehen, he does not like to see him; ich mag den Brief nicht lesen, I do not like to read the letter; ich möchte ihn verbrennen, I should like to burn it.

It is more usual particularly in affirmation to employ the adverb gern; e. g. er sieht ihn gern; er geht gern spaziren, he likes to take a walk.

- 217 Necessity, enforced by nature or law, is expressed by müssen; e. g. Alle Menschen müssen sterben, all men must die; Kinder müssen ihren Eltern gehorchen, children must (are obliged to) obey their parents. Wenn du von deinem Vaterlande geehrt werden willst, so mußt du dich bemühen ihm zu dienen, if you would be honoured by

your country, you must take care to serve it; besän-
diger Leichtsinn muß mit Dummheit enden, perpetual levity
must end in ignorance.

Necessity, enforced by the will of another person, i.e.
by command, is expressed by *sollen*; e. g. Sterben
soll sie; er soll sie fallen sehn und nach ihr sterben.
Sch. She shall die: he shall see her fall, and die
after her. Wer nicht arbeitet, soll auch nicht essen.
Proverb.

Necessity, enforced by the will of the subject, is
expressed by *wollen*; e. g. Der Mensch kann, was
er will, wenn er will, was er kann. Rückert. Man
can do, what he has the will to do; if he only has the
will to do, what he is able to do. Der ist nicht frei, der
da will thun können, was er will; sondern der ist
frei, der da wollen kann, was er thun soll. Clau-
dius. Wer den Kern essen will, muß die Ruß knaden.
Proverb.

Permission as well as command or causation is ex- 218
pressed by *lassen* *to let*; e. g. laß ihn gehen. let him
go, permit him to go; er läßt den Vogel fliegen, he lets
the bird fly; sie lassen von London Uhren kommen, they
get watches brought from London; er läßt den Hund
tanzen, he makes the dog dance; der König hat ihn hin-
richten lassen, the king caused him to be executed.

Instead of *können* and *müssen*, *the future participle*
is sometimes employed, and it is to be observed, that it
is used both in an active and passive sense; e. g. das
Kind ist zu bestrafen, the child must be punished; der
Brief ist nicht zu lesen, the letter cannot be read; was
ist zu thun? what is to be done? ich habe meine zwei
Brüder zu unterhalten, I have to maintain my two bro-
thers; du hast zu antworten, you are to answer; solche
Frechheit ist nicht zu ertragen, such insolence is not to
be endured; das menschliche Leben ist ein Zustand, in wel-
chem viel zu ertragen und wenig zu genießen ist, human
life is a state in which much is to be endured, and little
to be enjoyed.

219 We must be careful to distinguish the possibility and necessity of the action from the possibility of the assertion, i. e. the truth of the assertion, granted by the speaker or some other person or founded upon their supposition. The possibility of the assertion is expressed:

1. by the adverbs, *vielleicht perhaps, wahrscheinlich probably*, and *wol*;

e. g. *er wird vielleicht heute kommen*, he will perhaps come to-day; *er ist vielleicht krank*, he is perhaps sick; *er wird wahrscheinlich morgen kommen*, he will probably come to-morrow; *das ist wol ein Ausländer*, I suppose he is a foreigner; *es wird wol etwas Anderes bedeuten*, I suppose it signifies something different.

2. by the auxiliary verbs *können, dürfen, mögen, müssen, sollen, wollen*.

Können is employed to express the English *it may be*; e. g. *er kann schon abgereist sein*, it may be that he has set out already; *er könnte uns verrathen haben*, it might be that he had betrayed us (which differ from *er hat abreisen können*, he has been able to set out; *er hätte uns verrathen können*, he might have been able to betray us).

Dürfen is employed in this way only in the conditional mood, in order to express conjecture; e. g. *er dürfte dir wol nicht alles erzählt haben*, very likely he has not told you every thing.

Mögen is commonly used when a probability or conjecture is granted by the speaker; e. g. *in er mag Recht haben*, he may be (I suppose he is) in the right; *er mag ein braver Mann sein*, he may be (I believe that he is) a clever man; *er mag zwanzig Jahre alt sein*, he may be about twenty years of age; *ich mag thun was ich will*, so ist es unrecht, I may do what I will, it does not please; *du magst lachen oder weinen, es ist einerlei*, you may laugh or cry, it is all the same.

Müssen corresponds to the English *must*; e. g. *er muß sehr reich sein*, he must be very rich; *er muß heute angekommen sein*, he must have arrived to-day (which

differs from *er hat heute ankommen müssen*, he was obliged to arrive to-day).

Sollen expresses the English *they say*; e. g. *er soll angekommen sein*, they say he is arrived; *er soll sehr reich sein*, he is said to be very rich.

Wollen is sometimes used in the signification of *pretending*; e. g. *Einige wollen ihn gesehen haben*, some pretend to have seen him.

The following sentences will explain the use of those idiomatic expressions which denote modality of the predicate.

He had his boots cleaned	Er ließ seine Stiefel putzen
I had the church accurately described to me	Ich ließ mir die Kirche genau beschreiben
She must have a tooth extracted	Sie muß sich einen Zahn ausziehen lassen
Do not suffer your spirit to be subdued by misfortunes	Laß deinen Muth nicht durch Unglück unterdrücken
We are now to think what is to be done	Wir müssen jetzt bedenken was zu thun ist
I cannot help crying out	Ich kann nicht umhin zu schreien
I cannot but cry	Ich muß schreien
I had nearly fallen	Ich wäre beinahe (halb) gefallen
I was near being killed	Ich wäre beinahe getödtet worden
All skill ought to be exerted for universal good	Man sollte jedes Talent zum allgemeinen Besten ausüben
You ought to have done it	Du hättest es thun sollen
I should like to know that	Ich möchte das gern wissen
I should wish to see him	Ich möchte ihn gern sehen
There is no living with her	Man kann mit ihr nicht leben
The parliament is to be dissolved	Das Parlament soll aufgelöst werden
I wish you would let me lone	Ich wollte, du ließeßt mich allein

I had rather hear you than Ich möchte dich lieber anhö-
dispute with you ren, als mit dir streiten

CHAPTER IV.

OF THE USE OF THE TENSES.

- 221 The *present tense* is employed, as in English, to express present actions, or those the time of which is not distinguished at all; e. g. die Sonne geht jetzt unter, the sun is now setting; das Rad bewegt sich, the wheel is moving etc. and: die Sonne geht in Westen unter, the sun sets in the west; die Erde bewegt sich um die Sonne, the earth moves round the sun; das Leben des Menschen ist kurz, the life of man is short.

The distinction expressed in English by the forms: *he speaks* and *he is speaking*, is not pointed out in German by any particular form.

Future time also is frequently expressed in German by the *present tense*, namely:

1. when the *time* of the action is pointed out by other means (adverbs, objects, or an accessory sentence); e. g. ich gehe morgen nach London, I go to London to-morrow; ich reise bald nach Deutschland, I shall soon travel to Germany; in zwei Jahren gehe ich nach Italien, in two years I shall go to Italy;

2. when the *certainty* of a future event is to be insisted upon; e. g. bitte ihn nur, so gibt er dir alles, was du nur willst, request him only and he will give you every thing you wish for; ich will ihn bitten, aber er thut es nicht, I shall request him, but he will not do it. Verlaß dich drauf, ich lasse schreid hier das Leben, oder führe sie aus Pilsen. Ich. Dies Schloß ersteigen wir in dieser Nacht, wir ermorden die Hüter, reißen

dich aus deiner Kammer. Sch. Die Vöglein schweigen im Walde; warte nur kurze ruhest auch du. G

On the other hand *present* time is expressed by the *future tense*, when the predicate is to be represented as uncertain and doubtful; e. g. er wird da sein, he is probably here; er wird krank sein, he is probably not well. Ich höre Jemand kommen, es wird der Wirth sein. Less. Wo die That nicht spricht, da wird das Wort nicht viel helfen. Sch.

The *future* and *past future* tenses are employed in the same way as in English; e. g. er wird morgen abreisen, he will set out to-morrow; wenn dein Bruder kommt, wird er uns verlassen haben, he will have left us by the time your brother arrives. Doch denket nicht, daß Ihr's vollenden werdet; vergebens werdet Ihr für Euern Feldherrn Euch geopfert haben. Sch.

There is a great difference between the German and 222 English language as to the use of the past tenses; for the German idiom requires, in a great many cases, the tense formed by the auxiliary verb haben or sein (*perfect tense*) where in English the simple *imperfect tense* is used.

The imperfect is employed to denote not so much past time, as a relation to some past event performed at the same time; e. g. als er ankam, reistete ich ab, when he arrived, I departed.

Als ich Abschied nahm,
Waren Kisten und Kasten so schwer;
Als ich wieder kam
War alles leer. G.

When either of the two past actions precedes the other in time, it is expressed in the *pluperfect tense* as in English; e. g. ich reistete ab, ehe er angekommen war, I departed before he had arrived. Zur Schmiede ging ein junger Held; er hatt' ein gutes Schwert bestellt. Uhl.

The relation of past events to one another is that which forms the historical narration, in which, accordingly, the *imperfect tense* is always used; e. g. Die Westgothen wollten durch Italien nach Afrika wandern: unterwegs starb plötzlich Alarich, ihr König, den sie über die Maßen liebten. Da leiteten sie den Fluß Busento, der neben der Stadt Cosenza am Fuß des Berges aus seinem Bette ab. Mitten in dem Bette ließen sie nun durch einen Haufen Gefangener ein Grab graben, und in den Schoß der Grube bestatteten sie, nebst vielen Kostbarkeiten, ihren König Alarich. Als das geschehen war, leiteten sie das Wasser wieder ins alte Bett zurück, und tödteten, damit die Stätte von Niemand verrathen würde, alle die, welche das Grab gegraben hatten.

The *present tense* is also used instead of the imperfect in historical narration, in order to render the style more animated; and this practice is more common in German than in English; e. g.

Nächtlich am Busento lispeln bei Cosenza dumpfe Lieder;
Aus den Wassern schallt es Antwort, und in Wirbeln
klingt es wieder.
Und den Fluß hinauf, hinunter ziehn die Schaaren tapftrer
Gothen,
Die den Alarich beweinen, ihres Volkes großen Todten.
Platen.

Das Wasser rauscht, das Wasser schwoll,
Ein Fischer saß daran,
Sah nach der Angel ruhevoll,
Kühl bis ans Herz hinan.
Und wie er sitzt, und wie er lauscht,
Zheilt sich die Flut empor;
Aus dem bewegten Wasser rauscht
Ein feuchtes Weib hervor. Goethe.

- 223 2. The predicate is put in the imperfect tense, when the action, expressed by it, is frequently repeated, or of a longer duration; e. g. die alten Deutschen lebten in Wäldern, the old Germans lived (used to live) in forests.

In jüngern Tagen war ich des Morgens froh,
Des Abends weint' ich; jetzt da ich alter bin,
Beginn' ich zweifelnd meinen Tag, doch
Heilig und heiter ist mir sein Ende. Hölderlin.

Nun komm' ich heut' in diesen Tempel, den ich oft betrat, um Sieg zu bitten. O. Schon früh in meiner Kindheit war mein täglich Spiel der Krieg. Stolberg.

In all other cases the German idiom requires the *perfect tense*; this is particularly to be observed in common conversation, the perfect tense being more usual there than the imperfect tense; e. g. I saw your brother this morning, ich habe heute Morgen Ihren Bruder gesehen; we have good hope that Albert escaped from that fatal day; young Albaney saw him a mile from the field—Young Albaney lied. W. Sc. Wir haben Hoffnung, daß Albert von dem unglücklichen Tage davon gekommen ist; der junge Albaney hat ihn eine Meile vom Schlachtfeld gesehen — der junge Albaney hat gelogen. Did you ever fight a duel? — Many, but I never was wounded. Haben Sie sich je geschlagen? — Ofr, aber ich bin nie verwundet worden. You were at the theater last night? Sie sind gestern Abend im Theater gewesen? Yes, I was. Ja, ich bin da gewesen.

When in the passive form not so much the past time, as the *reality* of the past action is to be pointed out, the participle of the auxiliary verb werden (worden) is omitted; e. g. die Schlacht ist gewonnen, the battle is won. Der Dieb ist entdeckt, the thief was discovered. Sie ist ermordet auf der Londner Straße. Sch. She was murdered on the road to London. Napoleon ist in Korsika geboren, Napoleon was born in Corsica.

Forms of expression like *I am to speak, he is to come*, do not exist in German; they are rendered by the first future, ich werde sprechen, er wird kommen; and if a necessity rather than a relation of time is to be expressed, by the auxiliary verb of mood sollen; e. g. *what am I to hear?* was soll ich hören? Ein Augenblick sollte Wallenstein jetzt von der Fülle der Gewalt in das

Nichts des Privatstandes herunterstürzen. Sch. One moment now *was to precipitate* Wallenstein from the height of power to the condition of a private man.

The relative tenses expressed by the forms *I was about* or *going to speak*, *he was to come*, are always rendered in German by the auxiliary verbs of mood *wollen* and *sollen*; the former being employed when the action depends on the will of the subject of the sentence, and the latter when it depends on the will of another subject; e. g. *er wollte sprechen*, he was about to speak; *er sollte gehängt werden*, he was to be hanged.

I was going to moralize upon this fable when etc. *Ich wollte eben über diese Fabel moralisiren*, als ic.

Sometimes we use *im Begriff sein*, e. g. *I am going to* compose a Grammar, *ich bin im Begriff eine Grammatik zu schreiben*.

OBSERVATION. The English auxiliary verb *I will* sometimes expresses the frequency of an action; e. g. When our visitors *would* say, You have fine children, she *would* answer, &c. Sometimes our neighbour *would* pay us a visit. While one played, the other *would* sing. This meaning is either not expressed in German, or it is pointed out only by a relational adverb, as *zuweilen*, *wol* (§. 138. 139); e. g. *wenn unsere Freunde wol*, or *zuweilen sagten*, &c. *antwortete sie wol*, &c.

CHAPTER V.

OF THE USE OF THE MOODS.

226 The *Indicative mood* denotes a sentence to be actually asserted by the speaker, and is employed as in English. Its use, however, is somewhat more limited by the other moods, than is the case in English.

The *Conditional mood* represents an assertion of the speaker as *contrary to reality*; e. g. *wenn er noch lebte*, *wäre er jetzt ein reicher Mann*, if he were still alive,

he would now be a rich man (but in reality he is neither alive, nor a rich man).

Wenn alles eben käme,
Wie du gewollt es hast,
Und Gott dir gar nichts nähme,
Und gäb' dir keine Last;
Wie wär's da um dein Sterben,
Du Menschenkind, bestellt?
Du müßtest fast verderben,
So lieb wär' dir die Welt. Fouqué.

The *Conditional mood* is not only used in such conditional sentences, but also a) when the condition is only understood and not expressed; e. g. ich hätte die Sache anders gemacht, I should have arranged the matter differently (if it had been my business). An die Möglichkeit der That glaubt Keiner, da müßten sie dich fürchten und dich achten. Sch. Du könntest merken, daß du lästig bist. Sch. — or when it is contracted with the conditional sentence; e. g. ich hätte an seiner Stelle anders gehandelt, in his place (if I had been in his place) I should have acted otherwise. Du würdest wohl thun diesen Platz zu leeren Sch.

b) If what we *wish for*, or *imagine*, is to be represented as contrary to reality; e. g. wäre er doch noch am Leben! would that he were still alive! hätte ich ihn doch nie gesehen! O that I had never seen him! O, ging's von hier gerad in's Feld des Todes, und alle Schwerter durchdrängen meinen Busen! Sch. Den möcht' ich wissen, der der Treuste mir von Allen ist. Sch. Du sprichst, als ob die Welt jetzt wäre, wie sie sonst war. Wer mit Euch wanderte, mit Euch schiffte! Sch.

c) If it is a questionable possibility; e. g. wäre es denn wahr? could it be true? hättest du wirklich deinen Freund verrathen? could you really have betrayed your friend? Wär's möglich, Vater? Sch. Hättest du's mit Vorbedacht dahin treiben wollen? Sch. Sollt' ich's nun im Ernst erfüllen müssen? Sch. Gastfreundlich hätte England sie empfangen? Sch.

- 227 The use of the conditional mood depends not so much on the assertion being actually in itself impossible, as on its being conceived in the mind of the speaker, and therefore represented, as impossible. Thus in saying, *wenn er heute ankäme*, if he should arrive-today,—the arrival is conceived and represented as impossible, though in fact it may be possible.

Though the present conditional (*ich spräche*) is formed from the imperfect indicative (*ich sprach*), and the perfect conditional (*ich hätte gesprochen*) from the pluperfect indicative (*ich hatte gesprochen*) these tenses, with respect to time, agree with the present and perfect indicative respectively; e. g. *wenn ich jetzt Zeit hätte, ginge ich spaziren*, if I had time now, I should take a walk; *wenn er vor drei Monaten in Rom gewesen wäre, hätte er seinen Bruder angetroffen*, if he had been at Rome three months ago, he would have met his brother. In point of time these sentences express the same; e. g. *I have* time, &c.; if he *has been* at Rome, &c.

The first future conditional (*ich würde sprechen*) does not, in point of time, differ from the present (*ich spräche*), nor the second future (*ich würde gesprochen haben*), from the perfect (*ich hätte gesprochen*). The first and second futures are, however, used especially to express conditional possibility, the condition being expressed by the present and perfect; e. g. *wenn er hier wäre, würde er dich besuchen*, or *würde er dich besucht haben*, if he were here he would pay, or he would have paid you a visit. *Wenn ich etwas nützen könnte, so würde ich hier bleiben*, if I could be of any good, I would remain here. *Aufstehn würde Englands ganze Jugend, sähe der Dritte seine Königin. S. d. Stund' er ihr gegenüber, er würde sein Geständniß widerrufen. S. d.*

In order to render an expression less positive or more polite, necessity as well as possibility is, as in English, frequently represented as only *conditional*. For this purpose the conditional moods of the auxiliary verbs of mood *müssen*, *sollen*, *wollen*, and *können*, *dürfen*, *mögen*, are frequently employed instead of the indicative; e. g.

du solltest or du müßtest ihn besuchen, you ought to (instead of: must) pay him a visit; ich wollte, Sie begleiteten mich, I wished (instead of: I wish) that you would accompany me; Sie könnten mir das wol erlauben, you might allow me that; ich möchte hier bleiben, I should like to stay here. Sollte nicht ein glückliches Naturell allein Schauspieler zum Ziele bringen? — — Anfang und Ende möchte es wohl sein und bleiben; aber in der Mitte dürfte dem Künstler Manches fehlen. G. Schwerlich möchte sie der goldne Schlüssel schenken. Sch. Ich hätte längst erfahren können, wer der fremde Herr ist; aber ich mag nicht. Lessing. Nie hätte meine Andacht inniger sein sollen, als heute; nie ist sie weniger gewesen, was sie sein sollte. Less. Ich möchte schwer zu überreden sein, daß ich an Dir ein schuldvoll Haupt beschütze. G.

The *conjunctive mood* expresses that the predicate is not *asserted by the speaker*. It is in general used when a predicate is *quoted*, i. e. when a thought is represented as being asserted by another person; e. g. er sagt, der Baum blühe, he tells me that the tree is in blossom; er glaubt, die Sonne gehe um drei Uhr auf, he thinks that the sun rises at three o'clock; Cäsar berichtet, er sei in Britannien gewesen, Caesar relates that he was in Britain. Man sagt, sie habe den Gemahl ermorden lassen. Sch. They say, she caused her husband to be killed. Er verfluchte sich, er habe falsch gezeugt, die Unglücksbriefe an Babington seien falsch, er habe andre Worte geschrieben. Sch. He cursed himself, (saying) that he had borne false witness, that the unhappy letters to B. were spurious, and that he had written different words.

There is no difference in this respect,—whether the subject *spoken of* is at the same time *spoken to*, or *himself speaking*; e. g. du sagst, du seist gesund, you say that you are in good health; ich glaube, er sei krank, I thought he was ill; for in both these cases the person spoken to and the speaker do not assert the fact of the illness, but merely quote their own belief of it.

e. g. Ich schrieb ihm, daß ich in dem Hause eines sehr guten Mannes aufgenommen sei, und mit ihm große und schöne Arbeit verfertige; ich suche was zu lernen, und hoffe, mit meiner Geschicklichkeit ihm bald Nutzen und Ehre zu bringen. G. Er fragte mich, wer ich sei, und ich antwortete, ich sei ein Goldschmied. G. The conjunctive thus being the mood of a quoted predicate, can stand only in an accessory sentence. The form of the conjunctive occurs in principal sentences however when it is employed to supply the third person of the imperative mood, as will be explained in §. 231.

The conjunctive is also employed, as in Latin, when an action wished for or intended is quoted in an accessory sentence, connected with the principal sentence by means of the conjunctions daß, *that* (Lat. *ut*), damit, auf daß, *in order that, for the purpose that*; e. g. ich wünsche, daß er bald geneset, I wish that he may soon recover; ich nehme Arznei, damit ich geneset, I take physic in order that I may recover; er spricht laut, damit ein Jeder ihn verstehe, he speaks loud so that everybody may hear him. The conjunctive accordingly may stand after verbs implying a hope, wish, advice, request, command, permission, fear, preventing, forbidding &c., though they are, as in English, more commonly followed by the supine.

229. The assertion quoted in the accessory sentence is, on the other hand, commonly expressed by the *indicative mood*, when it is considered as a statement of a real fact by the speaker also, and when it is not so much the assertion quoted, as rather the act of quoting, which is to be pointed out; e. g. er selbst hat gesagt, or gestanden, daß er gefehlt hat, he himself has said or confessed that he has been in fault; er will es nicht glauben, daß sein Bruder gestorben ist, he will not believe that his brother is dead; er hat allen Leuten erzählt, daß er heirathen will, he told everybody that he is about to be married. Ihr sagtet selbst, daß er von Sinnen war. Gch. Könnt Ihr es leugnen, Lord, daß

jene Alte zu meinem Untergang eronnen ist? Sch. Daß er betrogen ist, kann er nicht sehen; daß sie Betrüger sind, kann ich nicht zeigen. G. Habt Ihr denn jeder Ahnung Euch verschlossen, daß über Schuld und Unschuld ein rettend, rächend Wesen schwebt? Sch. According to this principle, the indicative is generally employed when the verb in the principal sentence implies such certainty as excludes all doubt. This is the case in wissen, erkennen, to know; sehen, to see; entdecken, to discover; e. g. du weißt, or du siehst, daß er krank ist, you know, or you see that he is ill; er hat erkannt, daß er gefehlt hat, he has acknowledged that he has been in fault; er hat gezeigt or bewiesen, daß er gut gesinnt ist, he has shown that he is wellintentioned. Wißt, daß wir auch nicht müßig sind. Sch. Dies Alles mahnt mich, daß ich heute von meinem Glücke scheiden muß. Sch. Ich weiß, daß Ihr verständig seid. Sch. Ich fühl's, daß ich der Mann des Schicksals bin. Sch. Karl V. erkannte vollkommen, daß Handel die Stärke der Nationen ist. Sch. Womit bezeugst du, daß du Agamemnons Sohn bist? G. Ihr seht, wie mein Name gemißbraucht wird. Sch.

The time to which the quoted assertion is referred, is **230** always that in which it is asserted by the subject spoken of; and the quoted assertion therefore stands in the present, perfect, or future tense, according as the fact, event, or activity asserted either coincides with, precedes, or follows the assertion of the subject spoken of; e. g. er hat mir vor drei Monaten erzählt, sein Bruder sei ein reicher Mann (present), er habe ein Jahr zuvor ein großes Vermögen geerbt (past), und werde ein Gut kaufen (future), he has told me three months ago, that his brother was a rich man, that he had inherited a large fortune a twelvemonth before, and that he was to purchase an estate. In the conjunctive mood, accordingly, the historical tenses (imperfect and pluperfect) are not distinguished, though there be a relation to another event (§ 222); e. g. er hat erzählt, man habe den Hamlet gespielt, als er im Theater gewesen sei; er sei aber hinaus gegangen, nachdem er den ersten Akt gesehen habe, he said that Hamlet was acted

when he was at the play, but that he left the theatre after having seen the first act. The quoted assertion generally stands in the present, perfect, or future tense, though the verb of the principal sentence be in the imperfect or pluperfect; e. g. er sagte, er sei krank, or er sei krank gewesen, he told me that he was ill, or had been ill. Drauf schrie er in die Gassen hinab, er sei der Schreiber der Maria, sei der Bösewicht, der sie falsch angeklagt, er sei ein falscher Zeuge. Sch. Er meinte, man müsse bei den Freuden der Kinder ernst scheinen. G. Sie behaupteten, obgleich der Lieutenant sehr viel gethan habe, so perorire er doch meist zu affectirt, dagegen spreche der junge Anfänger vortrefflich. G. Sie fragte ob er noch etwas zu befehlen habe. G. The German practice, however, is not strictly established in this respect; and the tenses of the conditional mood also are frequently employed instead of the present and perfect of the conjunctive; e. g. er sagte, er wäre in Paris gewesen, he said that he had been at Paris. Das wären die Planeten, sagte mir mein Führer, sie regierten das Geschick. Sch. This is done especially when the present and perfect tenses of the conjunctive do not differ in their form from the corresponding tenses of the indicative; e. g. er sagte, ich ginge (instead of ich gehe) nach Frankfurt, he said that I was going went to Frankfort. Sie glaubten, sie würden (instead of werden) sich leicht als Helden darstellen. G. Er behauptete, nur ein seltenes Vergnügen könne bei den Menschen einen Werth haben; Kinder und Alte wüßten (instead of wissen) nicht zu schätzen, was ihnen Gutes begegnete. G. Er meinte, man müsse die Kinder nicht merken lassen, wie lieb man sie habe, sie griffen (instead of greifen) immer zu weit um sich. G. Ich that nach Ihrer Vorschrift, führte an, Sie hätten über unser Kind bestimmt, und möchten gern dem künftigen Gemahl noch vor dem Feldzug die Verlobte zeigen. Sch.

OBSERVATION. It will be seen, that the rules for the use of the conjunctive mood in German differ from those of the English language, in which an assertion quoted is commonly expressed either by the present or perfect indicative, when it stands after

a verb in the present or perfect; e. g. he *tells* me, or *has told* me, that he *is* ill, or *has been* ill; — or by the imperfect or pluperfect indicative, if it stands after a verb in the imperfect or pluperfect: e. g. he *told* me, or he *had told* me, that he *was* ill, or *had been* ill. The proper manner for employing the conjunctive, accordingly, requires particular attention.

Imperative sentence.

The *Imperative mood* is employed in German, as in 231 English; e. g. *Sprich!* speak (thou)! *Sprechet!* speak (you)! *Fürchte Gott, und ehre den König!* fear God, and honour the king. The pronoun of the second person is generally omitted. But when, as is usually done, a person is addressed in the third person plural, the pronoun *Sie* *you*, must be expressed; e. g. *Sprechen Sie!*

Imperative sentences are always inverted, the verb taking the first place; e. g. *halte dich für zu gut, Böses zu thun; hänge dein Herz an kein vergängliches Ding; sage nicht alles, was du weißt, aber wisse immer, was du sagst.* Claudius.

The third person of the imperative is generally supplied by that of the conjunctive mood, and then the arrangement of words is frequently not altered; e. g. *der edle Mensch sei hülfreich und gut; unermüdet schaff' er das Nützliche, Rechte. G. Gott verhüte, daß ich späße. Sch. Gott grüß' Euch, edle Frauen. Sch.*

Wer reisen will,
Der schweige still,
Geh' steten Schritt,
Nehm' nicht viel mit,
(So braucht er nicht zu sorgen)
Und geh' recht früh am Morgen. Philander.

Wer Recht will thun immer und mit Lust,
Der hege wahre Lieb' in Sinn und Brust. G.

A peculiar form of imperative expression is made in 232 German from the passive voice of either transitive or intransitive verbs, used personally or impersonally, by which the subject is pointed out only in a general and

indefinite way. These expressions, however, are always used elliptically, omitting the auxiliary verb of the passive voice, or even the verb, and retaining only an object referred to the verb; e. g. *ausgetrunken!* (*es werde ausgetrunken*), let the glass be emptied; *aufgestanden!* (*es werde aufgestanden*), let them rise; *an die Arbeit!* (*es werde an die Arbeit gegangen*), let them go to their work. *Wohlauf Kameraden! Auf's Pferd! auf's Pferd! ins Feld, in die Freiheit gezogen!* — — *Frisch Kameraden, den Rappen gezäumt! die Brust zum Gefechte gelüftet!* S. d. *Mit Eichenlaub den Hut bekränzt!* Claudius.

When a *positive command* is to be expressed, the second person indicative is frequently used; e. g. *du gehst sogleich!* go directly. *Hanna, du bleibst!* S. d. *Ihr schweigt, bis man Euch aufruft!* S. d. When, on the other hand, a *request* is to be expressed in a submissive way, the conjunctive mood of the auxiliary verbs *mögen* and *wollen* is frequently used; e. g. *du wollest mir verzeihen*, please to pardon me; *mögen Sie meiner gedenken*, may you remember me. *Was ich nun sprach, möge Niemand mich befragen.* S. d.

The imperative mood sometimes stands in the place of a conditional expression; e. g. *sei ohne Freund, wie viel verliert das Leben*, be without a friend (if you be without a friend), and your life loses much.

SECTION II.

SYNTAX OF THE ATTRIBUTIVE COMBINATION.

CHAPTER VI.

In as much as all common substantives (§. 38) are 233 the representations of generic notions, i. e. represent a whole class or species, as: *man, horse, king*, they cannot at the same time express of themselves the particular individuals of the class of persons or things which they signify in general. — The particular kind or individual must therefore be pointed out either by an attributive word, i. e. a word expressive of its peculiar qualities or relations to another person or thing, as: a *prudent* man, a *good* horse, a *bad* horse, *my brother's* horse, a *mighty* king, the king *of Prussia* etc. — or by pointing out its relation to the speaker. The relations of substantives to the speaker are expressed by articles, pronouns, or numerals, the use of which has been already explained in Etymology. Here we only treat of the *Attributive proper*, i. e. *substantives* or *adjectives*, used to qualify or individualize another substantive. The connexion of a substantive with its attribute is termed *Attributive combination*.

Forms of the Attribute.

Different things of the same kind are distinguished 234 from each other by their different actions and qualities; the Attributive combination therefore generally results from a Predicative combination, previously asserting some action or quality of a thing. Thus, from the sentences: this man is old, this man is young, the water boils, the horse dies, William conquered England, my brother is in Paris, we form the Attributive combinations: the old man, the young man, the boiling water, the dead horse,

William the conqueror, my brother in Paris. — It is obvious, therefore, that the Attribute will, in general, assume the same forms, as the Predicate (§. 195); namely, it is expressed by:

- 1) an adjective (or participle),
- 2) a substantive, agreeing in gender, number, and case (*Apposition*),
- 3) a substantive in the genitive case,
- 4) a substantive with a preposition *).

OBSERVATION. Adverbs alone are in general not employed as attributes. The adverbs: *allein alone, only, beinahe nearly, fast almost, kaum scarcely, nur only, ungefähr about*, are however to be considered as attributes, when connected with a substantive, as in: *Gott allein, beinahe ein Jahr, fast das ganze Volk, kaum die Hälfte, nur die Hälfte, ungefähr ein Jahr.*

Sometimes a substantive is qualified or individualized by a whole *accessory* sentence (§. 27); as: the man *who was here yesterday*, the horse *which I bought*, a king *who governs with prudence* etc. Such attributive accessory sentences, standing in the room of an adjective, are termed *Adjective accessory sentences*. They are explained in Chapter XVII.

Attributive Adjective.

- 235 The attributive adjective agrees with its substantive in gender, number and case. It is generally placed before its substantive as in English.

Ein kleiner Mann, ein großes Pferd, ein kurzer Arm, ein langes Schwert, muß eins dem andern helfen.

*) The English and German languages often employ different attributive forms in expressing the same idea. Such are:

the rest of the day	der übrige Tag
„ „ „ „ family	die übrige Familie
„ „ „ „ money	das übrige Geld &c.
plenty of time	viel Zeit
houses of their own	eigene Häuser
a man of easy access	ein zugänglicher Mann &c.

Uhl. Was ist der langen Rede kurzer Sinn? Sch. Wo die hohen Eichen sausen, wo die starken Ströme brausen, alles das ist deutsches Land Schenkendorf. Es klingt ein heller Klang, ein schönes, deutsches Wort in jedem Hochgesang der deutschen Männer fort; das ist der heil'ge Rhein u. id. Süßes Wasser und guter Rath sind oft zu Schiffe theuer. Uhl.

The following adjectives are never employed as Attributes: bereit ready, feind hostile, gar made, done, gänge und gebe current, eingedenk remembering, getrost of good cheer, gram bearing hatred, kund known, leid distressing, nuß useful.

When an attributive adjective still retains that asserting power, originally peculiar the predicate to, it is placed after its substantive and, being considered as the predicate of an abridged sentence, is not inflected. Common prose admits of this construction only when the adjective is to be further explained by an object, and when it is in the nom. or acc. case; e. g. mein Vater, mäßig aus Gewohnheit, hatte nicht gern Gastmähler, my father (who was), frugal by habit, did not like feasts; die Mutter, umgeben von ihren Kindern, the mother (who is) surrounded by her children; sie hat ein Herz voll Empfindung, she has a heart full of feeling. 236

In all other cases the adjective must be placed before its substantive, or transformed into an accessory sentence; e. g. the army enjoyed good cheer in a country so much richer than their own, in einem Lande, das so viel reicher war als ihr eigenes; since time immemorial, seit undenklichen Zeiten; times gone by, vergangene Zeiten; on a morning appointed, an einem bestimmten Morgen; your ardour is the natural effect of virtue animated by youth, Ihr Eifer ist die natürliche Wirkung der Tugend, die durch Jugend belebt wird.

OBSERVATION. In poetry this construction is more usual; as: die Rüstung blank — ein Rösslein roth — mancher Ritter werth — ein Eber wild. Uhl. Ein Edelknecht sanft und fest. Sch. Die Blide, frei und fessellos, ergeben sich in ungemessnen Räumen. Sch. Und ein Edelknecht, sanft und fest, tritt aus der Knappen jagendem

Chor. Sch. Even the adjective, preceding its substantive, is sometimes not inflected in poetry; as in: Jung Siegfried, klein Roland. Uhl.

An adjective may stand alone in German when its substantive, having been mentioned before, is understood; the adjective then takes the case of the substantive which it represents; as in: Er hat zwei Söhne; den älteren (accus.) läßt er studiren; der jüngere (nom.) soll die Handlung lernen. Ich hatt' einen Kameraden; einen bessern find'st du nicht. Uhl.

Apposition.

- 237 A substantive following an other substantive, and agreeing with it in gender, number and case is termed a substantive in *Apposition*; as: Wilhelm der Eroberer, William the conqueror; Friedrich König von Preußen, Frederick king of Prussia.

Adjectives also and ordinal numerals are used as substantives in apposition to distinguish *proper names* from each other; as: Friedrich der Große, Frederick the great; Friedrich der Weise, Frederick the wise; Karl der Große, Charlemagne; Karl der Fünfte, Charles the fifth.

In poetry all substantives (not only proper names) may take their adjective after them, in way of a substantive in apposition, when the adjective is to be pointed out emphatically; as in: Niemand, als Du, soll diesen Krieg, den fürchterlichen, enden. Sch. Das Böse, das der Mann, der mündige, dem Manne zufügt, vergibt sich schwer. Sch. Erspare dir die Qual der Trennung, der nothwendigen. Sch.

- 238 The names of towns, countries and months are constructed like substantives in apposition, without the preposition *of*; as: die Stadt Rom, the city *of* Rome; das Königreich Preußen, the kingdom *of* Prussia; der Monat Mai, the month *of* May; die Universität Göttingen, the university *of* Göttingen.

When one of the two substantives joined by apposition is a proper name, it is not declined; e. g. die Nacht

des Kaisers Karl, the power of the emperor Charles, des Prinzen Eugen, of Prince Eugen; des Herrn Müller, of Mr. Müller.

When however the first substantive is only to be considered as a title, and has no article, it is not declined; and in this case the proper name must be declined; e. g. Doktor Gall's Vorlesungen, the lectures of Dr. Gall; Kaiser Karls Heere, the armies of emperor Charles, Herzog Albrechts Gemahlin, the wife of duke Albrecht.

Attributive substantive in the Genitive case.

A substantive, qualifying or individualizing another substantive, and connected with it by the preposition *of*, is in German put in the *Genitive case*; as: der Zug des Heeres, the march of the army; der Lauf der Sonne, the course of the sun; der Garten des Fürsten, the garden of the prince; die Krone des Königs, the crown of the king; der Hut des Knaben, the hat of the boy; der Vater des Mädchens, the father of the girl; der Diener meines Bruders, the servant of my brother; das Dach des Hauses, the roof of the house; der Gipfel eines Baumes, the top of a tree; des Volkes Stimme ist Gottes Stimme. *Proverb.* Wallenstein drückt des Kaisers Länder mit des Kaisers Heer. Sch. Die Gnade der Großen, die Gunst der Gewaltigen, die Förderung der Thätigen, die Neigung der Menge, die Liebe der Einzelnen, Alles wankelt auf und nieder, ohne daß wir es festhalten können. G.

OBSERVATION. When the attribute is expressed by a verb in the infinitive, as: the pleasure *of seeing* you, he conceived hopes *of obtaining* his freedom etc., the infinitive in German is not put in the Genitive case, but takes the preposition *zu* (which form is termed *Supine* §. 67; see §. 346); e. g. die Freude, Sie *zu* sehen; er faßte die Hoffnung, seine Freiheit *zu* gewinnen.

The preposition *von* *of* is employed instead of the Genitive case in the following instances:

1) whenever the Genitive case cannot be pointed out by inflection, either in the attributive substantive itself or by the article. Thus we are obliged to say: ein Vater *von* zehn Kindern, a father *of* ten children, because

the Genitive case, *zehn Kinder*, no way differs from the nominative; whilst adding the article (the father of *the* ten children), it will be: *der Vater der zehn Kinder*. For the same reason we say: *die Nähe von Städten*, the vicinity of towns; but: *die Nähe der (or einer) Stadt*, the vicinity of the (or a) town; *die Lage von Paris*, the situation of Paris; but: *Roms Lage*, the situation of Rome. *Die theure Frucht von dreißig Kriegesjahren*. *Sch.* *Man hat mich vor ein Gericht von Männern vorgefordert.* *Sch.* *Ich gehe zum Bischof von Constanz.* *G.*

Proper names of persons and abstracts, however, although they generally require no article, by themselves, take the article, in order to point out the Genitive case by inflexion; e. g. *die Schätze des Croesus*, the treasures of Croesus. *Sucht die Verräther in des Gallas Lager*, in the camp of Gallas. *Sch.* *Zerriß er mit den Fesseln der Furcht nur nicht die Zügel der Scham.* *Sch.* *Es blühet Tugend aus der Tugend Samen.* *G.*

2) *Names of towns and countries* generally take the preposition *von*, although the Genitive case might be expressed by inflection; e. g. *der König von Frankreich*, *die Königin von England*, *die Straßen von Wien*, *die Einwohner von London*, *die Straße von Gibraltar*.

3) *Attributes expressing the quality or material of a thing*, always take the preposition *von*; as: *ein Pferd von weißer Farbe*, a horse of white colour; *ein Geschäft von Wichtigkeit*, a business of importance; *ein Mann von Ansehen*, a man of consequence; *ein Mann von Ihrem Schlage*, a man of your cast; *eine Sache von geringem Werth*, a matter of little value; *ein Ring von Gold*, a ring of gold; *eine Tafel von Marmor*, a tablet of marble.

Partitive genitive.

- 241 The Genitive case of a substantive, depending on a pronoun or numeral or adjective in the superlative degree, is termed *Partitive genitive*; as: *Keiner meiner Freunde*, none of my friends; *eine der merkwürdigsten*

Begebenheiten, one of the most remarkable occurrences; der älteste meiner Brüder, the eldest of my brothers.

This form of expression is more usual in German than in English; it is frequently used to point out emphatically the pronoun, numeral or adjective in the superlative degree; as: Du sendest mir der Schmerzen viel. Uhl. Voran dem Zuge schwärmten der muntern Kinder viel. Uhl. Wir haben so der guten Freunde wenig. Sch. Wir Menschen beklagen uns oft, daß der guten Tage so wenig sind und der schlimmen so viel, und meist mit Unrecht. G. Auch im Lager gibt es der braven Männer genug. Sch. Es sei genug der Gräuel. Sch.

The preposition von is frequently used instead of the partitive genitive; and in particular, it must be employed in all those cases which do not admit of a transposition into a common attributive combination; e. g. Wer von uns? which of us? einer von uns, one of us *); die Meisten von uns, most of us all; Jeder von Euch, each of you. Wer kommt noch von den Andern? Sch. Which of the others is to come? Der treueste von meinen Freunden. Sch.. Von den Spaniern waren gegen achthundert, von den Niederländern etliche Tausend auf dem Platz geblieben, und auf beiden Seiten wurden viele von dem vornehmsten Adel vermißt. Sch.

The attributive substantive is not declined, nor is the preposition von (*of*) admitted in the following cases: 242

1) In the *dates of the months*; as: der erste Mai, the first of May; der zweite April, the second of April; der fünfte August, the fifth of August.

2) After names of *measure, weight or number*; as: eine Flasche Wein, a bottle of wine; ein Scheffel Korn, a bushel of corn; eine Elle Tuch, a yard of cloth; ein Pfund Brod, a pound of bread; ein Zentner Kohlen, a hundredweight of coals; ein Duzend Eier, a dozen of eggs; ein Paar Äpfel, a couple of apples; ein Regiment

*) Unser einer signifies: a man of our condition.

Soldaten, a regiment of soldiers; ein Buch Papier, a quire of paper; ein Bund Federn, a bundle (25) of pens; ein Stück Zucker, a lump of sugar; eine Reihe Zähne, a set of teeth.

These names of measure etc. are, in a manner, considered as numerals, preceding substantives; therefore the name of the thing measured is sometimes declined when preceded by a preposition, whilst the name of the measure is not declined; e. g. mit drei Paar Schuhen (Dat.), with three pair of shoes; von zwei Duzend Eiern, of two dozen of eggs; mit einer Menge Kindern, (Dat.) with a number of children. Ein Paar is always indeclinable when it means a few; e. g. in ein Paar Tagen, in a few days; mit ein Paar Worten, in a few words.

The following substantives are constructed in the same way:

Art, *kind, sort*; e. g. es gibt viele Arten Thiere, there are many kinds of animals; Pünktlichkeit ist eine Art Beständigkeit, punctuality is a species of constancy.

Stück, *piece*; e. g. ein Stück Holz, a piece of wood, ein Stück Geld, a piece of money; ein Stück Land, a piece of land.

Haufen, *heap*; e. g. ein Haufen Steine, a heap of stones; ein Haufen Geld, a great deal of money.

Menge, *number, mass*; e. g. eine Menge Menschen sind gestorben, a great many men died; er hat eine Menge (or Summe) Geld verloren, he lost a great sum of money.

Eine Prise Tabak, a pinch of snuff.

When however the name of a thing measured has an attributive adjective connected with it, it frequently stands in the genitive case; e. g. eine Menge fröhlicher Kinder, a number of happy children; ein halbes Duzend guter Freunde. &c. Half a dozen good friends; dreitausend Mann spanischer Truppen, three thousand Spanish troops.

Construction of the Attributive Genitive.

The attributive substantive in the genitive case for the most part follows the substantive to which it refers. Sometimes however it precedes it, and in this case the other substantive has no article, as in English; e. g. meines Vaters Haus, my father's house; seines Bruders Kinder, his brother's children; des (Gen.) Königs Mutter, the king's mother. An Gottes Segen ist Alles gelegen. Des Volkes Stimme ist Gottes Stimme. *Proverb.*

This construction is more usual in German, than in English, being frequently employed in order to point out one of the two substantives emphatically; as in: Ihr nennt euch fremd in Englands Reichsgesetzen, in Englands Unglück seid ihr wohl bewandert. Sch. Schön ist des Mondes liebliche Klarheit unter der Sterne bligendem Glanz, schön ist der Mutter liebliche Hoheit zwischen der Söhne feuriger Kraft. Sch. O! was ist Goldes, was Juwelen Schein, womit der Erde Könige sich schmücken! Sch.

Attributive substantive with a preposition.

Many prepositions are used in German, as they are ²⁴⁴ in English, to express particular attributive relations, with respect to which the following observations will be found sufficient.

A great number of abstract substantives require the same preposition as the verbs from which they are derived, as will appear from the following comparison:

ich denke an Gott,	I think	der Gedanke an Gott,	the
of God		thought of God	
ich durste nach Ruhm,	I thirst	der Durst nach Ruhm,	thirst
after fame		after fame	
ich fürchte mich vor Gefahr,	I die	Furcht vor Gefahr,	the
fear danger		fear of danger	
ich vertraue auf meine Macht,	das	Vertrauen auf meine	
I confide in my power		Macht, confidence in my	
		power	

ich Sorge für die Kinder, I die Sorge für die Kinder, care
 take care of the children of the children
 ich klage über Ungerechtigkeit, die Klage über Ungerechtigkeit,
 I complain of injustice the complaint of injustice
 ich reise nach Paris, I go to die Reise nach Paris, the
 Paris journey to Paris
 es mangelt an Geld, there der Mangel an Geld, want
 is want of money of money.

In the same manner we say: die Schlacht bei Leipzig, the battle of Leipzig; der Sieg bei Waterloo, the victory of Waterloo; der Bund gegen Frankreich, the confederacy against France; die Anhänglichkeit an den König, the adherence to the king; ein Kampf auf Leben und Tod, a combat for life and death. Die Furcht vor der Macht des Ministers überwog den Abscheu vor seiner Verwaltung. Sch. Die Verbindung der Niederlande mit dem deutschen Reiche. Sch. Es schmerzt mich, Deinen Glauben an den Mann zu stürzen. Sch. ic.

OBSERVATION. We say also in order to avoid ambiguity: die Liebe zu Gott, zu dem Vaterlande, der Haß gegen den Feind, love towards God etc. which is different from die Liebe Gottes, the love of God &c.

Concrete substantives too are frequently followed by prepositions, as in English, if a verb governing this preposition is understood; e. g. der Dom zu Köln, the cathedral (standing) in Cologne; mein Bruder in London, my brother (living) in London; Frankfurt am Main, Frankfort on the Main.

The preposition *to* is sometimes employed in English as a sign of the Dative case, in expressions such as: a friend or relation *to* this person, an enemy *to* the country. In German the genitive case must be used in such expressions: ein Freund or Verwandter dieses Menschen, ein Feind des Landes.

Attributive combination expressed by compounds.

- 245 Substantives connected with an attribute in such a way as to be adopted into the language as usual deno-

minations of particular kinds of things, are generally rendered in German by *compound* substantives. Such are :

matter of fact	Thatsache
order of battle	Schlachtordnung
field of battle	Schlachtfeld
man of business	Geschäftsmann
right of royalty	Majestätsrecht
day of marriage	Hochzeitsstag
love of truth	Wahrheitsliebe
swarm of bees	Bienenschwarm
wreath of flowers	Blumenkranz
art of printing	Buchdruckerkunst
„ „ dancing	Tanzkunst
„ „ poetry	Dichtkunst
„ „ war	Kriegskunst
bridge of boats	Schiffbrücke
drop of blood	Blutstropfen
maid of honour	Ehrendame
tax on dogs	Hundesteuer
box on the ear	Ohrfeige
dealer in glass	Glashändler
„ „ works of art	Kunsthändler
stable for horses	Pferdestall
stall for sheep	Schafstall
baker to the court	Hofbäcker
chaplain to the prince	Hofprediger
coat for the summer	Sommerrock
„ „ „ winter	Winterrock
civil war	Bürgerkrieg
religious zeal	Religionsseifer
„ liberty	„ Freiheit
„ contention	„ Streit or Krieg
privy counsellor	Hofrath
a crooked mind	Duckkopf
a fainting fit	eine Ohnmacht
public spirit	Gemeinsinn
etc.	etc.

SECTION III.

SYNTAX OF THE OBJECTIVE COMBINATION.

CHAPTER VII.

CLASSIFICATION OF OBJECTS.

246 In the same way, as the generical idea of a being, expressed by a *substantive*, is limited by an *attribute*, in order to express a particular kind or individual (§. 233), the generical idea of an action, expressed by a *verb* or *adjective*, is limited and explained by its *objects*. Every word, or connexion of words, or accessory sentence, added to a verb or adjective, in order to determine or limit its sense, is termed its *Object*; and the connection of a verb or adjective with its object is termed *Objective combination*.

There is a great variety of forms of expression, adopted in different languages for the particular objects; and in the use of these forms the German language differs very much from the English. The German language distinguishes by particular cases of the substantive and by particular prepositions particular kinds of objective relation, which are not distinguished in the same way in English. Attention therefore is to be paid to the difference of the German and English idiom with regard to the forms, by which the different kinds of objective relation are expressed.

All objects are either Completing, or Adverbial.

247 A great number of verbs and adjectives are of such a nature as to require an object, which must be added in order to express a *complete* predicate. Thus, for instance, the predicates: he makes, he gives, he rejoices, he asks, are *incomplete*, if you do not add an object

explaining what he makes, gives etc.; as: he makes *cheese*, he gives *me lessons*, he rejoices *at his good luck*, he asks *the price* of something etc. Such objects, completing the predicate, are termed *Completing objects*; (*cheese* is a completing object of *makes*) And verbs or adjectives, requiring such an object and being, as it were, incomplete without it, are termed *Objective verbs or adjectives*. Those, on the contrary, which do not require such an object, as: he sleeps, he dies, he is sick etc. are termed *Subjective verbs or adjectives*.

All those objects, which are not required, in order to form a complete predicate, but merely express particular circumstances, such as the place time, manner etc. of an action, are termed *Adverbial objects*; e.g. he sleeps *during the day*, he sleeps *in his brother's bed*, he died *on Sunday*.

Adverbial objects may also be added to objective verbs; e. g. he makes cheese *through the whole year*, he gives me lessons *every day* etc.

The distinction, made between objective and subjective 248 predicates, does not so much depend upon the verb or adjective itself, as upon the meaning, connected with it in a particular case. It frequently occurs that the same verb in one signification requires an object and accordingly is objective, whilst when used in a different sense, it expresses by itself a complete notion, and consequently is subjective. Thus for instance, in saying: the earth moves, *to move* means: *to be in motion*, and is a subjective verb; but in: I move my head, the same verb means *to put into motion*, and is objective. The same may be observed in comparing the following sentences.

Predicate a) subjective.

b) objective.

The house is burning
Money is wanting
The glass will break
The tree grows

They burned the house
I want money
I will break the glass
The man grows rich

The army encamped	He encamped his troops
The ship sinks	He sinks the ship
He did not speak (utter words)	He did not speak (make mention) of him.
He speeded (made haste)	God speed you!

A. COMPLETING OBJECTS.

- 249 *There are four kinds of completing objects, viz.*
the Suffering Object,
the Personal Object,
the Genitive Object,
the Factitive Object.

The suffering object is expressed by the *Accusative* case, the personal object by the *Dative* case, the genitive object by the *Genitive* case or by *prepositions*; the factitive object is in the *nominative* or *accusative* case or takes a *preposition*.

Suffering object.

The *suffering object* is that object which stands with all *transitive verbs*. The action, expressed by these verbs, is conceived as having an effect upon the object; as in: he kills his dog, he builds a house, she shepherd tends his flock, she bought a book, the horse threw off his rider etc. All these objects (dog, house etc) conceived as suffering the action (of killing, building etc.), must be in the accusative case.

The nature of the other completing objects will more easily be understood, when compared with the suffering object.

Personal object.

- 250 The suffering object is in general inactive. When on the contrary the object is considered as an active being (as a person), the action of which corresponds to the action of the subject, is it in the *Dative* case and is

termed *Personal object*. There are indeed a great number of actions, which cannot be conceived in the mind without a corresponding action of another person, as: to obey and to command, to give and to receive, to precede and to follow. One cannot obey or give or precede, if there is not another person commanding, receiving or following and vice versa. The active person, then, is put in the Dative case. The English language, having lost the original declension of the Dative case, does not distinguish the personal and suffering objects in so decided a way as the German language; sometimes, however, that the preposition *to* is employed to express the Personal object, as in: the aid shall instantly be rendered *to you*; Williams has taught that song *to* our Dick. The house was known *to* none but some officers; but in general the Dative case is not expressed. In German also it occurs that an object, though conceived as active, is put in the accusative case; see §. 260 etc.

On the other hand it is not necessary that the personal object should always be a *person*; provided only that the meaning of the predicate requires a personal object; thus, *to give, to assist, to listen*, must needs have a personal object. Nevertheless it is said: To give variety *to our amusements* the girls sang to the guitar. It is necessary and assisting *to* all our other *faculties*. To listen with credulity *to* the whispers of fancy, — and *amusements, faculties, whispers*, are to be considered as personal objects, and put in the Dative case.

Genitive object.

The relation of the Genitive object is opposed both to 251 that of the personal and suffering objects. The genitive object, though not being really active, exerts an influence upon the subject, the result of which is expressed by the predicate. Thus in saying: the man boasts of his vices, the vices, though performing no action by themselves, still are conceived to make the man boast. In: he spoke of his friend, the friend is not considered as an *active* person (as it would be in: he spoke *to* his

friend), nor as being influenced by the action, but as the object occasioning the subject to speak. The genitive object is in English expressed by the prepositions, *of, at, for, from, in, on, upon, with* etc.; as: he complains of your behaviour, he gazes at the flowers, he longs for liberty, he recovers from his illness, this country abounds in metals, they conversed on that subject, he prides himself upon being a good scholar, I am content with you etc. In German the same relations are expressed by the genitive case, which however is frequently supplied by different prepositions.

Factitive object.

- 252 When the effect which the predicate has either upon the suffering object or upon the subject itself, is expressed by a completing object, this object is termed *Factitive object* *).

If you say: he converted water into wine, *water* is the object suffering the conversion, and the effect which this conversion has upon the water, is expressed by the Factitive object *into wine*. Or in: he will make his son a merchant; *the son* is the suffering object, and his becoming *a merchant*, is the effect of it; therefore *a merchant* is the Factitive object.

If the predicate is an intransitive or passive verb, the subject itself will be affected by the action, the effect of which is expressed by the Factitive object; e. g.

*) It is necessary to introduce into English grammar this new term, adopted by the modern German grammarians, because the particular relation expressed by it is totally different from all other objective relations, with which it has hitherto been confounded. The factitive expresses, what the subject or a suffering object *becomes* or is *thought to be*; by which it is easily distinguished from the suffering object in such sentences, as: he writes *a letter*, he builds *a house*, they made *peace* etc. On the other hand, the factitive expresses a *completing* object, by which it is distinguished from an object expressing purpose (see §. 317); e. g. he travels *for pleasure*, he works *for money*.

water was converted *into wine*, he grows *old*, he remains a *child*, he becomes a *merchant*.

It is, in general, indifferent whether the effect, caused by the action, is a real fact or merely an assertion, conceived by the understanding as an effect of the action. Thus in saying: I took him *for his brother*, he has not in reality become his brother by my mistake, but the opinion (assertion), that he was his brother, is an effect of this mistake. The same is the case in the following sentences: I think him a fool (I think, that he is a fool), he is considered *a fool*; he seems *to be very rich* &c.

OBSERVATION. The use of particular cases and pre- 253 positions depends not so much on the nature of the relation in itself, as on the manner in which it is *conceived in the mind*, or was conceived at that period, when the form in which it is now expressed, was first adopted in language. This accounts for the different forms frequently employed in different languages, and even in one and the same language, in order to express the same kinds of relation.

The human race, when still in their childhood, were more sensitive and felt themselves to a greater extent depending on and acted upon by the objective nature; it was only by the progress in the culture of mind, that man was taught to subdue nature and use it for his own purposes. In ancient languages, accordingly, a greater number of objects are conceived as influencing the subject in an active way, and consequently expressed in the Genitive case, whilst modern languages, considering almost every thing as suffering from the energy of the subject, generally prefer the accusative case. The English language, in particular, has a predominant tendency of constructing all objects as *suffering objects in the accusative case*. The German and French languages, on the contrary, formed at an earlier period, afford many instances of constructions different from the English; they like to personate every thing and to attribute life and action even to inanimate beings. Hence the great

difference between these languages, as to the use of the Genitive, Dative, and Accusative cases.

B. ADVERBIAL OBJECTS.

254 *There are five kinds of adverbial objects, viz.*

the object of Locality,

„ „ „ *Time,*

„ „ „ *Manner,*

„ „ „ *Causality,*

„ „ „ *Co-existence.*

There is no difficulty in distinguishing these different objects, in respect to which the following remarks will be sufficient.

The objects of locality and time express the place and time, in which an action is performed; e. g. I met him *on the street yesterday*.

The object of locality is sometimes necessary for completing the predicate; e. g. he put the money *in his pocket*, he sends a letter *to England*, he goes *to church*, the palace stood *on an eminence*. It is then termed *completing object of Locality* *).

The object of manner qualifies the predicate, by expressing a particular kind of action, opposed to another one; e. g. he speaks *distinctly*, or *indistinctly*, he swore *falsely*, he works *with pleasure* &c.

Causality comprehends the *cause* and *condition* as well as the *motive* or *purpose* of an action; e. g. he

*) The completing object of locality in German takes a different place in the arrangement of the objects, from that which is not completing, as will be explained §. 290. seq. and for this reason it is important to distinguish whether the object of locality is completing or not. Both objects however, being expressed by the same prepositions or adverbs, shall be combined under the head of Adverbial objects.

suffers *from cold*, he gives alms *from vanity*, she wept *for joy*, I did it *for your sake* &c.

Co-existence means that object which expresses any circumstance or action, co-incident in time with the action expressed by the predicate, without, however, defining either the time or the manner of the action; e. g. he said it *in my presence*, he went out *with his head uncovered*, I looked round about me *with pleasing terror*, I could have gazed round for ever *without satiety*.

The object of co-existence is easily known, by its admitting of a transformation into a co-ordinated sentence; as: he said it, *and I was present*, he went out, *and his head was uncovered*, I looked about me, *and felt a pleasing terror* &c.

It will be of great use to the learner, in order to 255 make himself acquainted with the classification of objects introduced in this grammar, to make an analysis of what he wishes to translate into German, in the following manner:

1	What a noble					Attribute of 2.
2	animal					Predicate of 3.
3	I					Subject of 2, 4.
4	should be,					Predicate of 3.
5	if my legs					Subject of 6.
6	corresponded					Predicate of 5.
7	to my horns.					Compl. pers. obj. of 6.
1	In the midst of					Adverbial obj. of time, of 3.
2	this soliloquy					
3	he					Subject of 3.
4	was alarmed					Predicate of 2.
5	with the cry					Compl. obj. gen. 3.
	of some hounds.					Attribute of 4.

Access. sentence
det. obj. of
caus. of 2—4.

He immediately bounded over the forest and left his pursuers far behind. He might have escaped; but suddenly his horns became entangled in the branches, where he was held, till the hounds came up and tore him in pieces. In his last moments he exclaimed: How ill do we judge of our true advantage! The legs which I despised would have borne me away in safety, had not my horns betrayed me to ruin.

Arrangement of Objects.

- 246 All objects are in general placed before the predicate not conjugated, (or before its place) and if they refer to a verb or adjective which is not predicate, they stand before this verb or adjective; as in:

I have seen my father, *ich habe meinen Vater gesehen*; I have seen him yesterday, *ich habe ihn gestern gesehen*; he immediately entered the room, *er trat sogleich in die Stube* (place of the pred. not conj.); he has been in church, *er ist in der Kirche gewesen*; he is in church, *er ist in der Kirche*; I shall never forget him, *ich werde ihn nie vergessen*; to see my father, *meinen Vater zu sehen*; seeing my father, *meinen Vater sehend*; shouting for joy, *vor Freude jauchzend* &c.

When, however, the object is expressed by an accessory sentence, or by the supine of a verb, enlarged by some other objects, it is generally placed after the predicate not conjugated; e. g. he has learned Greek in order to read Homer, *er hat Griechisch gelernt, um den Homer zu lesen*; I have told him, that I would come to-morrow, *ich habe ihm gesagt, daß ich morgen kommen würde*; I am glad to see you, *ich bin froh, Sie zu sehen*; In a few months I shall be able to converse with the learned men, *ich werde in einigen Monaten im Stande sein, mit den Gelehrten zu verkehren*; some were unwilling to teach another what they had with difficulty learned themselves, *Einige waren nicht geneigt, einen Anderen zu lehren, was sie selbst mit Mühe gelernt hatten*.

- 257 When there are two or more objects connected with the same predicate in different relations, they are arranged according to their greater or less importance, depending both upon the signification of the words by themselves, and upon the different kinds of objective relation in which they stand to the predicate. In this respect the *principal* object must be distinguished from the *subordinate* objects. That object is to be considered as principal, which qualifies the predicate in such a way as to express a particular kind of actions; e. g. to go

to bed, to go on horseback, to go home, to catch a cold, to catch fire, to give occasion, to give notice, to induce suspicions, to grow old, to grow sick etc. Those objects, on the contrary, which serve merely to individualize the action by referring it to an individual place, time, person or thing, are subordinate objects; e. g. he goes to bed at 11 o' clock; he went home alone, I caught a cold last night, he gave me notice of it, he grew sick from fatigue etc. The principal object is always known by its taking the principal accent in German as well as in English; but the arrangement of objects in German is, in most cases, contrary to that used in English, as will appear from the following rules.

The principal object always follows the subordinate 258
object; e. g. er geht um 11 Uhr zu Bett. Er ging allein nach Hause. Ich habe gestern Abend einen Schnupfen bekommen. Er wurde von der Ermüdung krank etc.; and in particular the different objects are arranged in the following way:

1. Adverbial object of time.
2. " " " locality.
3. " " " causality.
4. " " " coexistence.
5. Completing personal object (Dative).
6. " suffering " (Accusative).
7. Adverb of modality, or negation.
8. Object of manner.
9. Completing object of locality, or Genitive or Factitive object.

Ich habe am Sonntag (1) in der Kirche (2) eine gute Predigt (6) gehört. Er hat aus Vorsicht (3) seinem Sohne (5) viel Geld (6) gegeben. Pappenheim starb am folgenden Tage (1) zu Leipzig (2) an seinen Wunden (9). Sch. Die Inquisition sollte ihr Amt (6) mit Gerechtigkeit und Mäßigung (8) verwalten. Sch. Die Inquisition hat

ihr Amt (6) nicht (7) mit Gerechtigkeit (8) verwaltet. Wir haben in den Tagen unsers Glücks (1) dem Schmeichler (5) ein zu willig Ohr (6) geliehen. Sch. Der Fürst will die Armee (6) zum Feind (9) hinüberführen. Sch. Er war Tags vorher (1) nach Bamberg (9) geritten. G. Die Zeichen, die mir das arme Herz (6) mit Freude (9) füllen. G. Trözene hat bereits (1) den Hippolyt (6) als Herrscher (9) anerkannt. Sch. Du sollst in diesen Tagen (1) überall (2) mit Freuden (4) meine Künste (6) sehn. G. Friedrich V. tröstete sich einige Augenblicke (1) in der verlassnen Residenz seines Nebenbuhlers (2) über den Verlust seiner Länder (9). Sch.

When however an object is to be pointed out as particularly emphatic, it takes its place after other objects which according to this rule ought to be placed last; e. g. Ich habe eine Predigt in der Paulskirche gehört. Wir müssen das Werk in diesen nächsten Tagen weiter fördern.

The highest degree of emphasis is pointed out by placing an object even after the predicate at the end of the sentence; e. g. es freue sich, wer da athmet im rosiggen Licht, und begehre nimmer zu schauen, was die Götter bedecken mit Nacht und Grauen. Sch. Wir haben diesen Boden uns erschaffen durch unsrer Hände Fleiß. Sch.

The same is the case with most objective accessory sentences.

- 259 The suffering object, according as it qualifies or individualizes the predicate, is to be considered as a principal or a subordinate object. When it expresses an individual being acted upon, as: the wind shakes the tree, I do not like this wine, he bore his loss with great patience etc., the suffering object is subordinate and takes the place appointed in the above plan, viz. that before the adverb of modality or negation and before the object of manner; e. g. der Wind erschüttert den Baum nicht (or vielleicht, stark &c.); ich trinke diesen Wein nicht gern; er ertrug seinen Verlust mit

großer Geduld; du wirst deinen Bruder wahrscheinlich nicht finden.

When, on the other hand the suffering object is not so much an individual being acted upon, as a general notion qualifying the predicate in such a way as to express a particular *kind* of actions, as: to shake hands, to drink wine, to bear witness, to bid defiance, to draw breath, to catch fire, to get work etc, it is to be considered as the principal object (§. 257) and is placed after the adverb of modality, negation or manner; e. g. Ich drückte dem Fremden gern die Hand; er hat vielleicht Wein getrunken; er wollte in dieser Sache nicht gern Zeugniß ablegen; er bot seinem Gegner auf alle Weise Trost; er holte nicht mehr Athem; das Stroh fing plötzlich Feuer; du wirst wahrscheinlich keine Arbeit finden &c.

When however an adverb of negation or modality refers to one particular part of the sentence (the subject or an object), without affecting the predicate, they always precede the word they refer to; e. g. Ich habe nicht meinen Vater, aber wol meinen Bruder gesehen. Ich werde vielleicht nächstes Jahr nach England gehn. Nicht Elisabeth, nicht Englands Parlament ist Euer Richter. Sch. Wol manches Fahrzeug vom Strudel gefaßt, schoß jäh in die Tiefe hinab; doch zerschmettert nur rangen sich Kiel und Mast hervor aus dem Alles verschlingenden Grab. Sch.

Pronouns precede all other objects, and among themselves they are arranged in the following order:

1. the reflective pronoun,
2. the pronoun es,
3. the personal pronoun in the accusative case,
4. " " " " " dative or genit. case;
5. the demonstrative pronoun.

Er schämt sich (1) deiner (4). Ich habe es (2) ihm (4) gesagt. Ich habe ihm (4) das (5) gesagt. Ich will dich (3) ihm (4) vorstellen &c.

CHAPTER VIII.

OBJECT IN THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

(Suffering object).

260 *All transitive verbs (§. 202) govern the Accusative case.*

A verb is said to be transitive when its object is conceived to suffer and be affected by the action expressed by the verb; e. g. he kills the dog, he drinks wine &c. In general, verbs corresponding to English transitive (or active) verbs, govern the accusative case in German also. There are however some verbs differing in their construction from the corresponding English verbs, by either governing the Dative case or requiring a preposition. Particular attention is therefore to be paid to the following observations.

1. *All causative verbs are transitive*, i. e. all those which express causing a person or thing to do something, as: *lehren* to teach (to make somebody learn), *föhren* to lead (to make somebody go). Two kinds of causative verbs are to be distinguished:

a. Derivative verbs, formed from intransitive verbs, or adjectives, and employed in the causative signification only. Such are:

<i>setzen</i> to seat,	from	<i>sitzen</i> to sit
<i>stellen</i> to place	"	<i>stehen</i> to stand
<i>legen</i> to lay	"	<i>liegen</i> to lie
<i>föhren</i> to lead	"	<i>föhren</i> to move
<i>fällen</i> to fell	"	<i>fallen</i> to fall
<i>senken</i> to sink	"	<i>sinken</i> to sink
<i>sprengen</i> to burst	"	<i>springen</i> to burst
<i>tränken</i> to water, to give to drink	from	<i>trinken</i> to drink

weden to awaken

from wachen to be awake

erschrecken (mod. form) to frighten from erschrecken (anc. form) to be frightened

verschwenden to spend „ verschwinden to vanish

&c

wärmen to make warm from warm warm

freuen to rejoice „ froh glad

schwächen to weaken „ schwach weak

stärken to strengthen „ stark strong

töbten to kill „ tobt dead.

&c.

b. Primitive verbs, adopting the causative sense without changing their form, which are accordingly used both in an intransitive and in a transitive sense; as:

brechen to be broken and to break something

reißen to be torn „ to tear „

fahren to move quickly „ to drive „

ziehen to move *) „ to draw, pull „

jagen to run swiftly „ to make one run

schießen to rush „ to shoot

halten to stop, to halt „ to stop, or hold something

brennen to be burning „ to consume by fire

kochen } to be boiling „ to boil something

sieden } „

schmelzen to be melting „ to melt „

wiegen to weigh „ to weigh „

weiden to graze „ to tend „

heißen to be called „ to call „

abnehmen to decrease „ to take off „

This practice is not however so common in German as in English; it is never admitted with derivative verbs, as is frequently done in English; e. g. to march troops, to return a visit; and the number of pri-

*) Ziehen is used intransitively only when speaking of a body of troops, or birds of passage, of clouds, and in the sense of removing from an habitation.

mitive intransitive verbs, used at the same time in the causative signification is very limited; thus e. g. *rennen* to run, is not used as the English *in: to run a horse*, a stag; nor *gehen* like the English: to walk a horse.

261 2. *All verbs with the prefix be are transitive.*

a. Verbs, originally intransitive, are made transitive by the prefix *be*.

ich denke an etwas, I think *ich bedenke etwas*, I consider
of something something

ich diene dem Herrn (Dat.) *ich bediene den Herrn*, I serve
a master

ich drohe dem Feinde „ *ich bedrohe den Feind*, I threaten
the enemy

ich fahre auf dem Strome *ich befahre den Strom*

ich greife nach — I setze — *ich begreife*, I conceive

ich handele mit Klugheit, I *ich behandle den Menschen*
act prudently mit Klugheit, I treat the
man prudently

der König herrscht über sein Volk *er beherrscht sein Volk*

er jammert über sein Elend *er bejammert seinen Freund*

ich klage über seinen Tod *ich beklage seinen Tod*

ich komme *ich bekomme Geld, Briefe*

ich lebe *die Sache belebt mich*

ich lüge *ich belüge dich*

das Geld nützt mir *ich benutze das Geld*

ich wohne in dem Hause *ich bewohne das Haus*

ich folge dem Führer *ich befolge das Gesetz*

ich antworte meinem Freunde *ich beantworte seinen Brief*

ich steige auf den Berg *ich besteige den Berg*

&c.

&c.

b. Verbs, originally transitive, when compounded with the prefix *be*, take the accusative of an object, different from that governed by the simple verb, as will be evident from the following examples:

Ich decke das Tuch über den Tisch *Ich bedecke den Tisch mit einem Tuche*

Ich erbe das Vermögen Ich beerbe meinen Vater
meines Vaters

Ich grabe ein Grab Ich begrabe den Todten
Ich raube ihm das Geld Ich beraube ihn des Geldes
Ich schenke dir das Buch Ich beschenke dich mit dem
Buche.

Sometimes also the signification of the verb is entirely altered by the prefix *be*; as in:

Ich schreibe (write) einen Brief Ich beschreibe (describe) ein
Fest

Ich suche (seek) meinen Hut Ich besuche (pay a visit to)
meinen Freund

Ich kenne (know) den Menschen Ich bekenne (confess) meine
Sünden

Ich halte (hold) das Pferd Ich behalte (keep) das Pferd &c.

A great number of verbs, with the prefix *be*, govern merely the accusative of the reflexive pronoun, and of course do not admit of another accusative case. Most of them are contained in the list of reflexive verbs (§. 205).

The following verbs are exceptions, and do not govern the accusative case:

behaben	with the dative to please			
belieben	"	"	"	"
begegnen	"	"	"	to meet
beharren auf	"	"	"	to persevere in —
beruhen auf	"	"	"	to be founded on
bestehen auf	"	"	"	to insist upon —
bestehen aus	"	"	"	to consist of —.

3. *All inseparable compound verbs with one of the 262 prefixes durch, um, über, unter, hinter, are transitive; except:*

unterbleiben (hinterbleiben)	to remain undone
unterliegen, with the Dat.	to be subdued by —
unterhandeln mit — w. t. Dat.	to negotiate with —.

In some expressions the German language employs a verb with an accusative object, in the place of a simple English verb; as in:

CHAPTER IX.

PERSONAL OBJECT IN THE DATIVE CASE.

*The Dative case is governed by those verbs and 264
adjectives, which require a completing object con-
ceived as active.*

It has been explained above §. 250, which objects are to be considered as active, or personal objects, and accordingly must be in the dative case. The English language, having lost the terminations of declension, frequently expresses the dative case by the preposition *to*, or, this preposition being omitted, no distinction is made between the dative and accusative cases. Therefore care must be taken, to examine 1) whether the particle *to* is a sign of the dative case, or a *preposition*, expressing direction towards a place; and if there is no such particle, to know 2) whether the verb governs the dative or accusative case.

1) In: I send a letter to my brother, the brother, receiving the letter, is the personal object, and you must translate: *ich schide meinem Bruder einen Brief*. But in: I send a letter *to* Frankfort, Frankfort is the *place* where I send it, and *to*, being a real preposition, must be translated by *nach*. The same difference is between: I said *to him* (dat.), *ich sagte ihm*, and: I went *to* (prepos.) him, *ich ging zu ihm* &c.

2) In: I obey my father, my father, being considered as commanding, is the personal object and must be in the dative case in German; but in: I see my father, he is not active, that is to say, the action of seeing does not require another action corresponding it; therefore it governs the accusative case.

The dative case is governed by the following verbs: 265

1. *Intransitive verbs.*

anhängen to adhere to	—	beistehen to assist
antworten to answer		beistimmen to assent
begegnen to meet		danfen to thank

dienen to serve	genügen to suffice
drohen to threaten	geziemen to be proper, to be-
einfallen to occur to the	come
memory	glauben to believe, to trust
entfallen to be forgotten	gleichē to be like
entgehen to escape	sich nähē, nähern to approach
entfliehen „ „	nügen to be useful
entsagen to renounce	schaden to injure (a person)
entsprechen to correspond	scheinen to seem
fehlen to be wanting *)	erscheinen to appear
folgen to follow	schmeicheln to flatter
gefallen to please *) and	trogen to bid defiance
mißfallen to displease	trauen to trust
gehen to go, when used im-	unterliegen to be overcome by
personally **)	vergeben to pardon
gehören to belong	widersprechen to contradict
gehorschen to obey	widerstehen to oppose
gelingen to succeed *)	weichen to yield.

EXAMPLES. Was der König hat, gehört dem Glück. Sch. Er schadet uns, und nützt sich nicht. G. Ergeht's euch wohl, so denkt an mich, und danket Gott so warm, als ich für diesen Trunk euch danke. G. Des Menschen Seele gleichet dem Wasser. G. Mir gefällt ein lebendiges Leben. Sch. König ist hier, wer den Augen gefällt. Sch. Dem männlichen Alter geziemt's, einem ernstern Gott zu dienen. Sch. Der strengen Diana laßet uns folgen. Sch. Gar leicht gehorcht man einem edlen Herrn, der überzeugt, indem er uns gebietet. G. Die Ehre ziemt dem Gast. Uhl. Das Leben gleicht der Bühne. Uhl.

2. Transitive verbs.

266 A great number of transitive verbs, besides governing the accus. case of a suffering object, require a personal

*) fehlen, gefallen, gelingen, are never constructed as in Engl., the person being the subject; e.g. I want money, if you please, he succeeds; but: es fehlt mir an Geld; wenn es Ihnen gefällt; es gelingt ihm.

**) Wie geht es Ihnen? how do you do? Es geht mir gut, I am well &c.

object in the dative case; and in general, when a verb has two objects, one being a person, and the other a thing, the personal object must be in the dative case in German; e. g. he gave me the money, *er gab mir das Geld*; I offered him my purse, *ich bot ihm meine Börse an*; she showed the stranger a room, *sie zeigten dem Fremden eine Stube.*

EXAMPLES. Die goldne Kette gib mir nicht; die Kette gib den Rittern. G. Körper und Stimme leih die Schrift dem stummen Gedanken. Sch. Früchte bringet das Leben dem Mann. G. Wer Andern eine Grube gräbt, fällt öfters selbst hinein. Proverb. Drei Tage will ich Dir schenken. Sch. Sie ließ der Welt, was ihr die Welt geliehen. Uhl. Dem dunkeln Schoß der heiligen Erde vertraut der Sämann seine Saat. Sch.

The same, of course, is the case, if the suffering object is expressed by the supine, or by an accessory sentence; e. g. he commanded him to come, *er befahl ihm zu kommen*; I promised him to be silent, *ich versprach ihm zu schweigen*. Ein Laut aus Ihrem Munde gebietet mir, zu sein und zu vergehn. Sch. Ich erlaube Euch, den Prinzen zu versöhnen. Sch. Ich glaube Dir, was Du mir sagst. Ich wünsche Dir, daß Du glücklich werden mögest. Ich sagte ihm, ich sei nicht wohl &c.

3. A great many *verbs, compounded with separable prepositions*, govern the dative case. 267

Er hat mir viel Geld ab-gewonnen. He has won much money from me

Er hat dem Feinde eine Schlacht ab-gewonnen. He has won a battle (from the enemy)

Ich will ihm das Pferd ab-kaufen. I wish to buy the horse from him

Er wohnt der Versammlung bei. He attends the meeting

Ich werde Dir das Buch vor-lesen. I will read the book to you

Dem Volke Steuern auf- To lay taxes upon the
legen people.

Ich ziehe die schädliche Wahrheit dem nützlichen Irrthum vor. G. Wohntet ihr dem Ritterspiele bei? Sch. Sehr gern steht Karlos dem Minister nach. Sch. Die Königin sah dem Kampfe zu. Sch. Sie wenden nur das Herz dem Eitlen zu. Sch. Sie rief ihm zu ein süßes Wort. Uhl. Sie verließ die Stube sogleich und eilte dem Sohne nach. G.

OBSERVATION. The following verbs, on the other hand, most of which have a causative signification, are excepted from the general rule (§. 264), and govern the accusative case, although their objects be persons:

ärgern to make angry
freuen to " glad
loben to praise
tadeln to blame
führen to guide
leiten " "
meiden to avoid
lehren to teach

unterrichten to instruct
mahnen, ermahnen to admonish
anlagern to accuse
fragen to ask (a person)
bitten to beg " "
lieben to love " "
hassen to hate
heiraten to marry &c.,

and moreover all verbs compounded with the inseparable prefixes *be*, *durch*, *um*, *über*, *unter*, *hinter* (§. 261. 262).

In some idiomatic expressions the object is, in German, not conceived as a personal one, but as an object of locality, and requires particular prepositions. Such are:

zu Gott beten, to pray to God
zu Jemand reden, sprechen, to speak to —
zu Jemand seine Zuflucht nehmen, to have recourse —
sich an Jemand richten, wenden, to apply to —
vor Jemanden knien, to kneel to somebody
sich auf Jemand verlassen, to trust to somebody.

269 4. The dative case is governed by *compound expressions, requiring an active object*, such as:

wehe thun to hurt
wohl thun to do good

das Wort reden to speak for —
Hohn sprechen to mock

unrecht thun to do wrong Wort halten to keep his
kund thun to announce word
zu Hülfe kommen to assist einen Besuch machen to pay
zu Muthe sein to feel a visit &c.

EXAMPLES.

Es thut mir leid um den Obersten. Sch. Sein An-
blick wird mir im Herzen wehe thun. G. Die Bequem-
lichkeit wird mir wohl thun. G. Straflöse Frechheit spricht
den Sitten Hohn. Sch. Nicht ihrer Schuld rede ich
das Wort. Sch. So haltet ihr mir Wort ihr Himmels-
mächte! Sch. Wie Sterbenden zu Muthe sei, wer
mag es sagen? Uhl.

5. The following *impersonal expressions* govern the
dative case:

es ahnet mir I have a forebody
es grauet mir I feel horror
es efelt mir I am disgusted
es schwindelt mir I am giddy
es ist mir gut (or schlecht) zu Muthe I feel well (ill).
e. g. Mir grauet weiter fortzufahren. Sch. Es ahnet
mir nichts Gutes &c.

Dative governed by adjectives.

All adjectives comprehended under the general rule 270
(§. 264) govern the dative case. The following are the
most usual:

angenehm agreeable	fremd not known by. —
geneigt kind	verdächtig suspected by —
gewogen favourable	verhaßt hated by —
günstig favourable	schuldig owing to —
gnädig gracious	gehorsam obedient
ergeben devoted	gleich equal
nützlich useful	ähnlich like
schädlich hurtful	lieb and leid in particular
gemein common to	expressions.
bekannt known by —	

EXAMPLES.

Es ist mir lieb, daß Du kömst, I am glad that &c.

Es ist mir leid, daß ic., I am sorry that &c. Es ist mir nicht bekannt, I do not know anything of it. Diese Sprache ist mir fremd, I do not know this language. Der Mensch ist mir verdächtig, I suspect that man. Du bist ihm viel Dank schuldig, you owe him many thanks. Diese neue Würde sieht einer Landesverweisung ähnlicher als einer Gnade. Sch. Die Höflichkeit war dem Edlen und Bürger, wie dem Bauer gemein. G. Mein guter Eckart, sei mir treu, wie Du es meinem Vater warst. Uhl.

Non-completing Dative.

- 270 An object in the dative case is frequently employed in German after verbs which by themselves do not require a completing object, if the relation of the predicate to its object must be conceived as a relation to *a person*; e. g. Ihnen bedeutet dieses Opfer nichts. Sch. To you, this sacrifice is of no value. In this sentence the verb bedeuten does not *require* a completing personal object; but the object, added to explain it, must be a person, and is accordingly in the dative case.

EXAMPLES.

Frei ist dem Wanderer der Weg. Sch. Soll der Freund mir, der liebende, sterben? Sch. Euch theil ich meine Lande. Uhl. Die Thränen erleichtern mir das Herz. G. Auf! trinkt erneuter Freude dies Glas des ächten Weins. G. Laßt mir herein den Alten. G. Begrüßet seid mir, edle Herrn. G. Die Gegend deckte mir ein trüber Flor. G.

OBSERVATION. Sometimes even the dative of a personal pronoun is added in a manner entirely superfluous; e. g. Laßt mir herein den Alten. G. Let the old man enter. Begrüßet seid mir, edle Herrn. G. Das Gute liebt sich das Gerade. Sch. Heute will ich das Beste mir im ganzen Umkreis des Gebirgs gewinnen. Sch. Ihr Dorfner, wer weiß mir das schönste Lied? Uhl.

Dative of the possessor.

- 271 An object in the dative case is frequently employed instead of an attribute expressing the possessor of something.

This construction is as usual in German as it is singular and different from all other languages. Instead of saying: my head aches, my heart breaks, it is said: the head aches *to me*, the heart breaks *to me*; der Kopf thut mir weh; das Herz bricht mir. They cut off the enemy's retreat, sie schnitten dem Feinde den Rückzug ab. He filled my pockets with money, er füllte mir die Taschen mit Geld. Those poor children break my heart, diese armen Kinder brechen mir das Herz. Ein Schuß tödtete mir das Pferd, dem Könige wurde der linke Arm zerbrochen, a shot killed my horse, the left arm of the king was shattered. Er salbte mir das Haupt, he anointed my head. Die Haare standen mir zu Berge, my hair stood on end. Er lacht sich in's Ärmelchen, he laughs in his sleeve. Das Wasser rauscht', das Wasser schwoll, nezt' ihm den nackten Fuß. G. Die Feier, die so hell erschollen, liegt ihm im Arme, ohne Klang. Uhl. Man sieht Dir's an den Augen an (by your eyes); gewiß, du hast geweint. G. Die Mutter starb Dir frühe. Uhl.

Personal object expressed by Prepositions.

The following prepositions are employed instead of 272 the dative case, to denote the personal object:

1) *gegen towards* (with the accus. case) after the adjectives:

freundlich kind	aufrichtig sincere	nachsichtig indulgent
feindlich hostile	offen frank, open	grausam cruel
gnädig gracious	gerecht just	&c.

and some other adjectives of a similar signification; e. g. der König war gegen Sie nicht gnädig, nur gerecht. G. Ich bitt' Euch, seid nicht so barsch und rauh gegen den guten Mann; Ihr seid ja sonst gegen Alle freundlich. G.

2) *mit with*, and *für for*, are used in the same way as in English, to denote a personal object. The following expressions only are different from the English:

verwandt mit related to —
 befreundet mit friend to —

sich verbinden mit — to join one
 sich verheiraten mit — to marry
 sich vereinigen mit — to unite to —
 sich versöhnen mit — to reconcile.

EXAMPLES.

Mit Euch, Herr Doktor, zu spaziren, ist ehrenvoll und ist Gewinn. G. Sie gehen friedlich mit einander, Alte und Junge, und Männer mit den Weibern. G. Wo das Strenge mit dem Zarten, wo Starkes sich und Milde's paarten, da gibt es einen guten Klang. S. Prüft mir das Gemisch, ob das Spröde mit dem Weichen sich vereint zum guten Zeichen. S. Mit des Geschickes Mächten ist kein ew'ger Bund zu flechten. S.

- 273 3) von *of*, is employed instead of the English *by*, after the *passive voice of verbs*, in order to express the active object; e. g. he was seen *by* my brother (my brother saw him), er ist von meinem Bruder gesehen worden. Sein Obstgarten wurde oft von Schulbuben geplündert, his orchard was often robbed *by* schoolboys. Die Flotte wurde von widrigen Winden aufgehalten, the fleet was detained *by* contrary winds. Die Herzen der Zuschauer waren von den verschiedensten Empfindungen bewegt. S. The hearts of the spectators were moved *by* various sensations &c.

CHAPTER X.

GENITIVE OBJECT.

- 274 All those completing objects are comprehended under the genitive relation, which, though not being active like the personal object, still are conceived to exert an influence upon the subject, in such a way that the Predicate may be considered as the result of it (§. 251).

OBSERVATION. A great many constructions of different natures must be viewed under this head, though in some of them it seems difficult, in our times, to show the original conception, which caused them to be constructed in this manner; and the poetical genius of language, personating all things and imputing all sensations and emotions of mind to the influence of external causes, must account for a great number of such constructions which we cannot explain now in their original meaning. Also the use of the genitive case is much more limited in modern prose, than in poetry and in the language of earlier times, being partly supplanted by the accusative case, partly supplied by prepositions. In the following §. §. modern prose is chiefly taken into consideration.

EXAMPLES.

Wohl dem, der sich des Dürftigen annimmt. — Wir konnt' es wenig helfen, mich meines Glückes zu bedienen. Sch. Es ist der Fluch der Höhern, daß die Niedern sich ihres offenen Ohrs bemächtigen. Sch. Eure Jugend freut sich noch des Puges. Sch. Der Landmann rühme sich des Pflugs. Sch. Du darfst Dich Deiner Wahl nicht schämen. Sch. Er wird sich Deiner erbarmen. G. Natur läßt sich des Schleiers nicht berauben. G. Welch andrer Sünde klagt das Herz Dich an? Sch. 1c.

1. *The following *) verbs and adjectives always govern the genitive case :*

a. *Reflective verbs.*

sich einer Sache annehmen	to undertake —
" " " bedienen	to make use of —

*) The following are but rarely used:

sich anmaßen to usurp	sich erwehren to defend oneself from
" befeßen to apply to —	" getrüsten to trust in
" begeben to give up	" unterfangen {
" bescheiden to acquiesce	" unterwinden { to dare
" entäußern to alienate	" vermessen
" ent schlagen to rid one's self of	" versehen to expect
" entfinnen to remember	" weigern to refuse

sich einer Sache bemächtigen	to take possession of —
" " " bemeistern	" " " " "
" " " enthalten	to abstain from —
" " " erbarmen	to pity
" " " erinnern	to remember
" " " freuen	to rejoice at —
" " " rühmen	to boast of —
" " " schämen	to be ashamed of —.

Sich erinnern, freuen, rühmen, schämen are now commonly followed by prepositions see §. 277.

b. *Transitive verbs.*

Einen eines Verbrechens an-	to accuse one of a crime
klagen, beschuldigen	
Einen seines Geldes berauben	to rob " " his money
" " Amtes entsetzen	to turn " out of his office.

c. *Adjectives.*

bewußt	conscious of —
eingedenk	mindful of —
fähig	capable of —
kundig	knowing —
mächtig	master of —
schuldig	guilty of —
verdächtig	suspected of —
würdig	worthy of —.

Ein guter Mensch in seinem dunkeln Drange ist sich des rechten Weges wohl bewußt. G. Die meisten Verluste sind eines Erfasses fähig. Sch. Auch Du hältst mich

entbinden	{ to release from —	würdigen	to think one worthy of
entladen		zeihen	to accuse
entledigen	to dispense	bedürftig	in want of —
entwöhnen	to wean	gewärtig	in expectation of —
überführen	to convict	gewiß	certain of —
überheben	to save one (the trouble)	benötigt	in need of —
verweisen des Landes	to banish from the country	theilhaft	partaking in —
		verlußt	losing something.

der schweren Sünde schuldig? Sch. Ich bin des Weges nicht kundig &c.

2. The following verbs and adjectives govern the genitive case in sublime style, but are more usually constructed with the accusative case: 276

bedürfen to want	pflegen to take care of —
begehren to desire	schonen to spare
brauchen to use, want	verfehlen to miss
entbehren to miss	vergessen to forget
erwähnen to mention	wahrnehmen to observe
genießen to enjoy	

los werden to get rid of
gewahr werden to observe
gewohnt sein to be accustomed to —
müde sein „ „ weary of —
voll sein „ „ full of —
werth sein *) „ „ worth
überdrüssig sein to be disgusted at —

Die Stube ist voll Rauch. Den Künstler wird man nicht gewahr. Sch. Das heutige Geschlecht wird diesen Jammer nicht los. Ein Becher voll Wein. Ich bin es nicht gewohnt; ich bin es überdrüssig &c.

Prepositions.

Instead of the genitive case the prepositions an, auf, nach, über, um, von, are used to express the different genitive objects. 277

In general, a verb signifying:

Privation, or separation	requires von with the Dat.
Want	an „ „ „
Loss, or mourning about —	um „ „ Acc.
Victory, or government over —	über „ „ „
Fear, aversion, horror	vor „ „ Dat.

*) The following phrases however are used in common prose: das ist nicht der Mühe werth, der Rede werth, it is not worth the trouble, not worth mentioning.

<i>about.</i>	um, über, with the Acc. case.
to be uneasy about someth.	um etwas besorgt, in Angst sein
„ talk, converse „ „	über etwas reden, sich unterhalten.

<i>at</i>	1. über, with the Acc. case.
to rejoice, exult at someth.	über eine Sache sich freuen, frohlocken
„ grieve, repine „ „	über eine Sache unzufrieden sein, sich betrüben, sich grämen
„ to weep, grumble at something	über eine Sache weinen, marren
„ be piqued, shocked at something	über eine Sache empfindlich, empört sein
„ be surprised at someth.	über eine Sache verwundert sein
„ affected, afflicted, alarmed at something	über eine Sache bewegt, betrübt, in Angst sein
„ wonder, be astonished at something	über eine Sache sich wundern, erstaunt sein
„ gaze, stare a someth.	über eine Sache staunen
„ laugh, smile „ „	„ „ „ lachen, lächeln
„ rail, flout, snee „ „	„ „ „ spotten, sticheln
„ blush, redden a someth.	„ „ „ erröthen, sich schämen.

2. nach, with the Dat. case.

to look at someth.	nach einer Sache sehen
„ aim, drive, „ „	„ „ „ streben, trachten
„ throw, shoot „ „	nach einer Sache werfen, schießen
„ snap, snatch etc.	nach einer Sache schnappen, haschen.

Different constructions.

to play at cards, chess etc.	Karte, Schach &c. spielen
„ make at one	auf Einen losgehen
„ point „ „	„ „ zeigen, hinweisen
„ value, rate something at —	etwas schätzen, rechnen auf —

for

für, with the Acc. case.

to thank, reward	for someth.	für eine Sache danken, be- belohnen
" provide	" "	für eine Sache sorgen
" punish, atone	" "	für eine Sache strafen, büßen
" answer	" "	für eine Sache sich verbürgen, verantwortlich sein.

nach, with the Dat. case.

to ask, inquire, wish for	something	nach einer Sache fragen, ver- langen
" long, sigh	for someth.	nach einer Sache sich sehnen, schmachten
" look out	" "	nach einer Sache sich umsehen
" send for somebody	" "	nach Jemand schicken
" dig for treasures		nach Schätzen graben

um, with the Accus. case.

to ask, beg, pray for some- thing	um eine Sache bitten, beten
" sue, mourn for someth.	um Etwas werben, trauern
" contend, care	" " um etwas streiten, sich bekümmern.

auf, with the Accus. case.

to hope, wait, stay for	something	auf etwas hoffen, warten, harren
" care for something		auf etwas achten (Gen.)
" weep, grieve for someth.		über eine Sache weinen, sich grämen.

from.

von, with the Dat. case.

free, exempt from someth.	von einer Sache frei, befreit
to deliver, discharge, disen- gage etc.	von einer Sache befreien, ret- ten, entbinden
" redeem, release	von einer Sache erlösen, los- kaufen
" absolve from something	von einer Sache lossprechen, reinigen

to desist, deter from someth.		von einer Sache abste- hen, ab- schrecken
„ part	„	von einer Sache scheiden, sich trennen
„ seclude, remove	„	von einer Sache ausschließen entfernen
„ dissent, distinguish	„	von einer Sache abweichen, unterscheiden
„ derive		von einer Sache herleiten
„ recover	„	„ „ sich erholen
„ deviate	„	„ „ abweichen
„ separate	„	„ „ sich trennen

aus, with the Dat. case

to arise, result from some- thing	aus etwas entstehen, entsprin- gen
„ rouse from sleep	aus dem Schlafe wecken
„ expel from something	aus etwas vertreiben

vor, with the Dat. case.

to secure, screen from some- thing	vor etwas schützen, sichern
„ preserve, defend from something	„ „ bewahren, verthei- digen
„ conceal something from one	etwas vor Jemand verbergen (or Einem etwas verbergen).

in

an, with the Dat. case.

to abound in something	Überschuß haben an —
„ delight „	Bergnügen finden, sich ergötzen
„ exceed „	überwiegen (intr.), übertreffen (transit)
„ take part „	Theil nehmen
equal, great, in some- thing	gleich, groß, klein an etwas.
rich poor in something	reich, arm an etwas
to believe in God	an Gott (Accus.) glauben.

Different constructions.

to confide in something	auf etwas vertrauen
„ persist „ „	„ „ bestehen, beharren
„ excel in „ „	sich in etwas auszeichnen
„ engage in a business	sich in ein Geschäft einlassen
„ deal in something	sich mit etwas befassen
„ terminate „ „	mit etwas endigen
„ traffic „ „	„ „ handeln.

Of is expressed by the *Genitive case* after the verbs and adjectives explained §. 275. The following verbs always govern the *Accus. case* in German.

to accept	of something	etwas annehmen
„ admit „ „	„ „	„ zulassen
„ allow „ „	„ „	„ zugeben, erlauben
„ approve „ „	„ „	„ billigen.

The following prepositions are the most usual.

von, with the *Dat. case*.

to speak, talk, treat of something	von etwas sprechen, reden, handeln
„ hear, dream of someth.	„ „ hören, träumen
„ inform one „ „	Einen von etwas benachrichtigen, in Kenntniß setzen
„ persuade one „ „	Einen von etwas überzeugen
„ cure, rid „ „	„ „ „ heilen, befreien
„ acquit „ „ „	Einen von etwas lossprechen
„ demand, require, take something of one	etwas von Jemand fordern, verlangen, nehmen
„ abate of a price	von einem Preise ablassen
„ be delivered of a child	von einem Kinde entbunden werden
of a small figure	klein von Gestalt
of tender limbs	zart von Gliedern

um with the *Accus. case*.

to cheat, defraud one of something	Einen um etwas betrügen
------------------------------------	-------------------------

to deprive one of someth. Einen um etwas bringen
 „ be deprived „ „ um etwas kommen
 ignorant of the world „ mit der Welt unbekannt.

an, with the Dat. case.

there is want of something es fehlt, mangelt, gebricht an
 etwas
 to partake, of something an etwas Theil nehmen
 „ be ill, die of something an etwas krank sein, sterben *)
 „ doubt, despair of someth. an etwas zweifeln, verzweifeln.

an, with the Accus. case.

to think, of something an etwas denken, sich erinnern
 „ remind one of some- Einen an etwas erinnern
 thing
 „ admonish one of someth. „ „ „ mahnen.

über, with the Accus. case.

to judge of something über etwas urtheilen
 „ inform one „ „ Einen über etwas belehren
 „ complain „ „ sich über etwas beschweren, be-
 klagen.

auf, with the Dat. case

blind of one eye auf einem Auge blind
 lame of one leg auf einem Beine lahm

auf, with the Accus. case.

to be proud, jealous of some- auf etwas stolz, eingebildet sein.
 thing

aus, with the Dat. case.

to consist, be composed of aus etwas bestehen, zusam-
 something mengeſetzt ſein

*) The Genitive is usual in the expression: Hungers ſterben,
 to die of hunger.

what has become of your was ist aus Ihrem Neffen
nephew? geworden?

nach, with the Dat. case.

to smell, taste of someth. nach etwas riechen, schmecken
„ smell „ „ „ „ duften.

on, upon

über, with the Acc. case

to reflect, meditate etc. über etwas nachdenken, sinnē

„ ruminatē on something „ grübeln

„ converse on something über (von) etwas sich unterhalten

„ deliberate „ „ über etwas sich berathschlagen

„ decide on, upon someth. „ „ entscheiden

„ resolve on, upon „ sich zu etwas entschließen.

auf, with the Accus. case.

to depend, rely, build upon sich auf etwas verlassen, bauen
something

„ insist on, upon someth. auf etwas bestehen, beharren

„ be founded on someth. auf etwas fußen

„ depend on, upon „ sich auf etwas verlassen

he prides himself on his nobility. er bildet sich auf seinen Adel
etwas ein.

Different constructions.

to be dependant upon some- von etwas abhängen
body

„ subsist on something „ „ leben

„ have pity on somebody mit Jemand Mitleid haben

„ take revenge upon some- sich an Jemand rächen
body

„ make an attempt upon a Einem (Dat., §. 271) nach
man's life dem Leben trachten

„ congratulate upon someth. zu etwas Glück wünschen.

over

über, with the Acc. case.

to rule, triumph over — über — herrschen, triumphiren.

<i>to</i>		<i>auf</i> , with the Accus. case.
to refer, relate	to someth.	<i>auf</i> etwas beziehen (trans.) " " sich beziehen, Bezug haben (intrans.)
„ answer, reply	„ „	<i>auf</i> etwas antworten, erwidern
„ listen	„ „	„ „ hören, horchen
„ attend	„ „	„ „ aufmerken, aufmerksam sein
„ trust	„ „	<i>auf</i> etwas sich verlassen, vertrauen
„ appeal	„ „	<i>auf</i> etwas sich berufen
„ subscribe	„ „	„ „ unterschreiben.

		<i>an</i> , with the Accus. case.
to accustom one	to someth.	Jemand <i>an</i> etwas gewöhnen
„ be accustomed	„ „	sich <i>an</i> etwas gewöhnen, etwas (Acc.) gewohnt sein
„ hold	„ „	sich <i>an</i> etwas halten.

		<i>nach</i> , with the Dat. case.
to conform	to someth.	sich <i>nach</i> etwas richten
„ aspire	„ „	<i>nach</i> etwas streben.

<i>to</i>		<i>in</i> , with the Accus. case.
to assent, consent	to someth.	<i>in</i> etwas einwilligen.

<i>With</i> is in general expressed by <i>mit</i> with the Dat. case.		
content, discontented w. som.		<i>mit</i> etwas zufrieden, unzufrieden
acquainted	„ „	„ „ bekannt
to furnish, endue, supply etc.	„ „	„ „ versehen, begaben
„ load, encumber	„ „	„ „ beladen, belasten
„ mix, unite	„ „	„ „ vermischen, vereinigen
„ meddle etc.		<i>mit</i> etwas sich abgeben, sich befassen &c.

Those predicates only, which express feelings, are excepted, and take the prepositions: *über*, *von*, *an*.

über, with the Accus. case.

to be happy at, glad of — über etwas glücklich, froh sein
 „ „ charmed, transported with „ „ entzückt sein
 „ „ angry, vexed, enraged, „ „ ärgerlich, zornig,
 incensed at — entrüstet sein
 to be displeased with — über etwas unzufrieden sein.

von, with the Dat. case.

to be tired of — von etwas müde sein
 „ „ taken with — „ „ eingenommen sein.

an, with the Dat. case.

to be pleased with — an etwas Freude finden
 „ „ Lust, Gefallen haben.

CHAPTER XI.

FACTITIVE OBJECT.

280 All those completing objects are comprehended under the Factitive relation which express the effect, exerted by the predicate either upon the suffering object or upon the subject itself (§. 252).

The effect of an action is either a *real one*, if a person or thing is really changed into something different; as: water is transformed *into ice*; my brother becomes *a soldier*; or it is *intellectual*, if an act of intellect causes some judgment, true or false, to be formed; as: he thinks himself *a gentleman*; I imagined them *men of much greater profundity*, than they really are. He looks *younger* than he really is.

281 It has already been observed (§. 252), that the factitive object, connected with the suffering object or subject, generally admits of a transformation into a new

(accessory) sentence, in which the factitive object takes the place of the predicate, as he thinks, he is a gentleman; I imagined, they were men of great profundity; He looks as if he was younger, than he really is. This transformation must generally be adopted in translating into German, if the Factitive object is expressed by the supine of a verb, after a predicate expressing an act of intellect, as: to know, to believe, to say, to suppose etc.; e. g. I know him to be my friend, *ich weiß, daß er mein Freund ist*. They will deny it to be natural, *sie werden läugnen, daß es natürlich ist*. I have found my liveliest pleasures to arise from illusions, *ich habe gefunden, daß meine lebhaftesten Freuden aus Täuschungen entspringen*. He believed it to be a visit to himself, *er glaubte, es sei ein Besuch für ihn selbst*.

The same transformation is required in German, when the predicate in English is in the passive voice, instead of which an active construction with man is usually employed in German; e. g. The French fleet was known to be at sea, *man wußte, daß die französische Flotte in See war*. These incidents were supposed to be supernatural, *man nahm an, daß diese Vorfälle übernatürlich seien*. The tower was said to be accessible only by small drawbridge. *Man sagte, der Thurm sei nur durch eine kleine Zugbrücke zugänglich*.

The factitive object is expressed

282

1. by a *substantive* (with or without a preposition);
2. by an *adjective* undeclined;
3. by a *verb* in the infinitive.

1. *Factitive substantive.*

Prepositions are more usual in German than in English, to denote the effect of an action. Only the verbs:

werden to become, to turn,
bleiben to remain, to continue,

heißen *to call or to be called*,
nennen *to name*,

are followed by a substantive without any preposition; the substantive is in the nom. case after the intransitives werden, bleiben, heißen (to be called), and in the accusative after the transitive verbs heißen to call, and nennen to name; e.g. Er wird ein Lügner, he becomes *a liar*. Er bleibt ein Kind, he remains *a child*. Die Juden nannten Johannes den Täufer, the Jews called John *the Baptist*. Johannes wurde der Täufer genannt, or hieß der Täufer, John was called *the Baptist*. Den wird man einen Ritter nennen, der nie sein Ritterwort vergißt. 1141.

283 In the following cases the factitive object is expressed by the preposition zu *), with the dative case :

- 1) after the verbs werden, to be turned into;
machen, to make;
wählen, to choose;
bestimmen, to appoint;
ernennen, to nominate;
einsetzen, to appoint;
gereichen, to turn out, redound to;
dienen, to serve for —.

Wasser wird zu Eis, water turns into ice. Der Mensch wird zu Staub, man turns to dust. Die Noth macht Manchen zum Dieb, want makes many a man a thief. Du machst mich zu Deinem Sklaven, you make me your slave. Die Römer haben Brutus und Collatinus zu Konsuln erwählt or ernannt, the Romans chose Brutus and Collatinus consuls. Cäsar setzte Octavian zu seinem Erben ein, Cesar appointed Octavianus his heir. Dieses Zimmer dient mir zur Bibliothek, this room serves me for a library. Diese That gereicht ihm zur Ehre, this action turns out to his honour.

*) If zu is followed by an article definite or indefinite, it is always contracted with it into zum (masc. and neuter), and zur (fem.)

Ihrer Blicke sanfter Schein
 War in mir zu wildem Tobern,
 Ihrer Rede mildes Wehn
 War in mir zu Sturmestoben,
 Sie, der schöne Maien tag,
 In mir zum Gewitter worden.

2) After all those *verbs which express an energy of or influence upon human will*, as :

zwingen, to force to — nöthigen, to compel to —
 bestimmen, to determine to — ermahnen, to exhort to —
 überreden, to persuade to — verleiten, to induce to —
 reizen, anreizen, to instigate herausfordern, to challenge
 to —

sich entschließen, to resolve sich bereiten, to prepare for
 to — etc.

Man zwingt einen Verbrecher zum Geständniß, a criminal is forced to confess. Er nöthigte den Feind zur Flucht, he compelled his enemy to flight. Ich bestimmte ihn zur Rückkehr, I determined him to return. Er reizte mich zur Rache, he roused me to revenge. Karl V. forderte den König von Frankreich zum Zweikampf heraus, Charles V. challenged the king of France to a duel.

The following idiomatic expressions are moreover to be observed :

etwas zu Stande bringen	to bring something to pass
Einen zur Rede stellen	to call one to account
es kommt zu Schlägen	it comes to blows
Einen zu Gast bitten	to invite one
sich zu Tode trinken, grämen	to drink, grieve one's self to death
Einem etwas zur Antwort geben	to say something for a reply
Einen zum Besten haben	to make fun of one.

The preposition *in, into* is used after the verbs: 284
 verwandeln, to change into — theilen, to divide into —
 bringen, to bring into — zerlegen, „ „ „

gerathen, to come zerfallen, to decay into —
 to — etc.
 setzen, to put into —

Die Wüste wurde in einen Garten verwandelt, the desert was changed into a garden. Ich theile den Apfel in drei Theile, I divide the apple into three parts. Etwas in Sicherheit—in Ausführung—in üblen Ruf bringen, to bring something into security — into practice — into disrepute; in Vergessenheit kommen, to be forgotten; in Armuth gerathen, to fall into misery; in Gang bringen, to set agoing; in Ordnung bringen, to put into order; in Bewegung setzen, to put into motion; in Erstaunen setzen, to put into astonishment; in's Werk setzen, to carry into effect; in Stücke reißen, to tear to plts; ein Haus in Brand stecken, to set fire to a house; in Brand gerathen, to take fire etc.

- 285 The preposition für, *for*, is used after verbs, expressing an *act of intellect*, as:

halten, to hold, to think	achten, to consider, to count
erklären, to declare	gelten, to be taken for —
ausgeben, to pretend to be	erkennen, to acknowledge.

Er hält sich für einen feinen Herrn, he thinks himself a fine gentleman; ich erkläre ihn für einen Betrüger, I declare him to be an impostor; er gibt sich für einen Künstler aus, he pretends to be an artist. Ich achte seine Freunde für meine Feinde, I count his friends my foes. Ich halte (achte) es für eine Ehre, I hold it an honour.

- 286 The conjunction als *as*, assuming almost the character of a preposition, introduces a factitive object in the nominative or accusative case (according as the predicate is intransitive (passive) or transitive, after the following verbs:

ansehen, to consider as —	erscheinen, to appear
betrachten	darstellen, to represent
kennen, to know for	etc.

Ich sehe Dich als meinen Bruder an, I consider you as my brother. Das betrachtete er als ein gutes Zeichen, this he considered a good omen. Er kannte ihn als einen gründlichen Politiker, he knew him for a profound politician. Einige Sittenlehrer haben die Schöpfung als einen Tempel Gottes angesehen; andere haben sie als die Wohnung des Allmächtigen betrachtet. Ihr habt mich stets als eine Feindin nur betrachtet. Sch. Du hast mich hier als einen Wüthenden getroffen. G. Der wird als Bürger sich bewähren; der seine Burg zu schirmen weiß. Uhl.

2. Factitive adjective.

When the factitive object-is expressed by an adjective, ²⁸⁷ it is *undeclined*, and takes no preposition, after the verbs:

werden, to grow, become	bleiben, to remain, continue
machen, to make	lassen, to let
sehen, to see	halten, to keep
finden, to find	fühlen, to feel
aussehen, to look	preisen, to praise,

whilst those verbs, enumerated §. 285 and 286, require für 'and als before the adjective.

Das Wetter wird milder, the weather is getting milder. Sie werden stark, you become stout. Ich sehe mich genöthigt, das zu thun, I find myself obliged to do so. Das Wetter bleibt mild, the weather continues mild. Er kann sich nicht wach halten, he cannot keep himself awake. Laß mich zufrieden, let me alone. Er sieht sehr traurig aus, he looks very sad. Ich sehe ihn beständig heiter, aber ich fühle mein Gemüth ruhelos und unbehaglich, I see him perpetually cheerful, but feel my own mind restless and uneasy. Ich kann es nicht geheim halten, I cannot keep it a secret. Ich fühle Dich mir nahe, (ich fühle) die Einsamkeit belebt. Uhl. Laß Du mir ungeschwächt der Väter fromme Sitte. Uhl. Wie? hielten schwere Träume mich befangen? Uhl. Mein Arm wird stark und groß mein

Muth. Stolz. Ein Federstrich kann Dich adelig machen; edel kann Dich kein Kaiser machen. *Prov.* Die Strafe macht Dich frei von dem Gefühl der Schuld. Rückert. Ich halte ihn nicht für schuldig, I do not think him guilty. Er gilt für sehr reich, he is considered as being very rich. Er bekennt sich für schuldig, he confesses to be guilty. Ich halte es für klug, neutral zu bleiben, I think it prudent to remain neuter. Den wird man für erlaucht erkennen, der von dem Recht erleuchtet ist. Uhl. — Ich betrachte das als gleichgültig, I consider it as indifferent. Er erscheint als grausam, he appears as cruel. Du stellst ihn als reich dar, you represent him as rich etc.

The adjective takes no preposition in some idiomatic expressions, like:

vertraulich thun	to converse familiarly
sich zufrieden geben	to be content
" gefangen "	to deliver oneself
Jemand gefangen nehmen	to take one prisoner
" glücklich schätzen	to consider one happy
" todt schlagen	to kill one
" lieb haben	to love one
" frei sprechen	to absolve one
" heilig sprechen	to canonize one.

3. *Factitive verb.*

288 The factitive object is expressed by a *verb in the infinitive*, after:

sehen to see	machen to make
fühlen to feel	lassen to let
bleiben to continue	heißen to order.
hören to hear	

Ich sah ihn sterben, I saw him die. Er hörte mich singen, he heard me sing. Ich fühle den Tod kommen, I feel death approaching. Wir wollen sie singen machen, we will make her sing. Ich bleibe sitzen, liegen, stehen, I continue sitting, lying, standing. Er hieß

mich gehen, he ordered me to go. Ich fühlte neuen Muth in meiner Brust erwachen, I perceived new courage kindle in my bosom. Heiß mich nicht reden, heiß mich schweigen. G. Schnell wirst Du die Nothwendigkeit verschwinden und Recht in Unrecht sich verwandeln sehn. S. Der Heere Vorschritt macht die Erde dröhnen. Uhl. Der Sänger läßt sein Lied ertönen. Uhl.

The *supine* is used after the verbs:

289

scheinen to seem	sich dünken	} to imagine
glauben to believe	sich einbilden	
wähnen „ „	behaupten to affirm,	
meinen to think		

and after those verbs which express an energy of, or influence upon, human will (§. 283. 2).

Er scheint es nicht zu wissen, he seems not to know it. Er glaubt krank zu sein, he believes he is ill. Er bildet sich ein, sehr klug zu sein, he imagines he is very prudent. Er behauptet, reich zu sein, he affirms that he is rich etc.

CHAPTER XII.

OBJECT OF LOCALITY.

The relation of locality is threefold, according as the predicate implies either:

1. *Motion from a place, or:*
2. *Motion towards a place, or:*
3. *Rest in a place.*

The object of locality is expressed either by a substantive with a preposition, or by adverbs of locality (§. 151); e. g. he lives *in this house*, or: he lives *here*; he goes *to England*, or: he goes *home*.

OBSERVATION. Under the head of Locality we must comprehend also those metaphorical expressions, in which an abstract substantive is considered as an expression of locality; as: to be schooled in *adversity*, to put one to *death*, to *silence* etc.

I. *Locality expressed by prepositions.*

- 291 *Motion from a place* is expressed by *von* and *aus*, governing the Dative case. The preposition *von* expresses this motion in the most general way; whilst *aus*, being opposite to *in*, implies a motion *from within a place*; e. g. Er kömmt von einem Freunde, von Paris, von Osten ic.; er kömmt aus dem Hause, aus der Kirche, aus der Stadt. Der Bote kömmt von dem Könige. G. Vom Felsen rauscht das Wasser klar, er springt vom Fosse schnell; er schnallt vom Haupte sich den Helm und trinkt vom fühlen Quell. Uhl. Was im Menschen nicht ist, kömmt auch nicht aus ihm. G. Aus der Wolke quillt der Segen, strömt der Regen, aus der Wolke ohne Wahl, zuckt der Strahl. Sch. Von der Stirne heiß rinnen muß der Schweiß, soll das Werk den Meister loben; doch der Segen kömmt von Oben. Sch.

The preposition *von* denotes moreover the distance from a place; e. g. der Ort liegt zehn Meilen von Berlin; and when connected with *bis*, it expresses the commencement of a space; e. g. vom Rhein bis an die Elbe. — Er ist vom Wirbel bis zur Sohl' in harten Stahl geschnallt. Uhl.

- 292 *Motion towards a place and rest in a place* are denoted by the prepositions *in*, *an*, *auf*, *über*, *unter*, *neben*, *vor*, *hinter*, which govern the accusative case when implying motion, and the dative case when rest; by the prepositions *bei*, *zu*, and *nach* which only govern the dative case, and by *durch* and *um* which govern the accusative case.

The use of these different prepositions depends partly on the particular kind of objective relation to be pointed out, partly on the different way of determining the place either by a *proper name* of a town or country, or a name of a person, or a common name of a thing

(as in: he lives *at* Frankfort, he lives *with* his brother, he lives *in* this house). As to the particular kind of objective relation we must distinguish:

A. *Locality, in a proper sense*, expressing merely the direction of an action, or the place where it is performed; e. g. he goes into the town, he lives in this house etc.

B. *Locality, in a metaphorical sense*, when the object denoting a place implies at the same time some particular action or business to be performed in that place; e. g. he went *to bed* (to sleep) will you take this letter *to the post* (to be sent away), 'he is *at the university* (studying) etc.

A. Locality in a proper sense.

The place where an action is performed, is expressed in a generical way by *in* (with the dative); motion towards a place is expressed by *nach* (with the Dat.) with *proper names* of places, and by *in* (with the Accus.) with *common names* of places:

Motion.

ich gehe *in* das Haus, in ich wohne *in* dem Hause, in
die Stadt, *in* die Kirche der Stadt
ich reise *nach* Frankfurt ich wohne *in* Frankfurt
" " *nach* England ich lebe *in* England
Boten ziehn *nach* Ost und ich bin *in* der Kirche
West. Uhl.

Rest.

Ich ging *im* Walde
So für mich *hin* —
Im Schatten sah ich
Ein Blümlein *stehn*. G.

Mein Herr ist König *im* Land,
Ich herrsch' *im* Garten der
Rosen. Uhl.

When locality is expressed by a name of a person, the prepositions *zu* and *bei* (with the Dat.) are employed.

Ich gehe zu meinem Vater Zu Dionys' dem Tyrannen schlich Mörds. Sch.	Ich wohne bei meinem Vater Bei einem Wirth, wundermild Da war ich jüngst zu Gaste. Uhl. Das ist bei uns Rechtens. Sch.
--	---

OBSERVATION. The prep. *bei*, used in this way to express *locality*, (e. g. *ich esse bei meinem Bruder*, I dine with my brother, i. e. in my brother's house), is not to be confounded with *mit*, which denotes *company* (e. g. *ich esse mit meinem Bruder*, I dine together with my brother). *Zu* is also employed after *sprechen*, *reden* &c.; e. g. *sie sprachen zu dem Schiffer*. Uhl. *Er redet zu dem Volk*, whilst after *schreiben* the prep. *an* is usual; e. g. *ich schreibe an meinen Bruder*. *Nach* is used, like the E. *for*, in such expressions: *wir reisten nach Paris ab*, we set out for Paris; *mein Schiff ist nach Neuport bestimmt*, my vessel is bound for N. — *Nach* and *zu* are employed irregularly in: *nach Hause* home, *zu Hause* at home.

- 294 The following prepositions express particular kinds of locality in a more peculiar way.

The preposition *an* signifies near the outside of a thing, and in contact with it; e. g. *ich wohne an dem Rhein*; *ich gehe an den Rhein*. *Frankfurt liegt an dem Main*. *Das Bild hängt an der Wand*. *Ich hänge es an die Wand*. *Das Heer steht an der Grenze*. — *An* is moreover usual in: *am Ende*, at the end; *an diesem Ort*, in this place; *an seiner Stelle*, in his place.

The preposition *bei* signifies near a thing but without contact; e. g. *Offenbach liegt bei (near) Frankfurt*; and *neben* corresponds to the E. *at the side of*; e. g. *er stand neben dem Wagen*; *er stellte sich neben den König*.

Unter *under*, *below*, is opposed to *auf* *on*, *upon*, and *über* *over*, *above*; e. g. *das Buch liegt nicht auf dem Tische, sondern unter dem Tische*. *Leges es auf den Tisch*. *Der Vogel saß auf einem Baume*; *er flog über den Bach und setzte sich auf das Haus*. *Es zieht ein Gewitter über die Stadt*.

Über signifies also *across*, *beyond*; e. g. *über einen Fluß*, *über eine Brücke gehn*, *über dem Rhein*. It

is moreover used in a particular way like the E. *by* or *over*; e. g. er geht über Paris nach London, über Frankreich nach Italien.

In the same way *vor*, *before*, and *hinter*, *behind*, are opposed to each other; e. g. Man spannt die Pferde vor den Wagen. Er reitet hinter dem Wagen. Er thut es vor meinen Augen — hinter meinem Rücken.

Zwischen, *between*, always refers to *two* persons or things; when more than two are meant, *unter among* must be used; e. g. Er steht zwischen mir und Dir. Stelle Dich zwischen uns. Er stand unter den Bauern.

Durch, *through*, expresses motion through the interior of something; *um*, like *round* and *about*, refers to the outside of things and implies either motion or rest; e. g. er reiset durch Deutschland, er geht durch die Stadt; ich aber gehe um die Stadt. Er ist immer um (about) den König.

EXAMPLES.

Am Rhein, am Rhein da wachsen unsre Reben. Da wachsen sie am Ufer hin. Claud. Ich schlief am Blüthenhügel, hart an des Thales Rand. Uhl. Zu Haus und in dem Kriege herrscht der Mann. G. Er muß sich setzen auf den Fels; er schlummert auf demselben Stein, das Haupt gesenket auf die Brust. Uhl. Auf den Bergen ist Freiheit. Sch.

Schön ist der Friede, ein lieblicher Knabe
Liegt er gelagert am ruhigen Bach;
Und die hüpfenden Lämmer grasen
Lustig um ihn auf dem sonnigen Rasen. Sch.

Auf den Wellen ist Alles Welle,
Auf dem Meer ist kein Eigenthum. Sch.

Über Thal und Fluß getragen
Zieheth rein der Sonnenwagen. G.

Es steht ein Regenbogen wol über jenem Haus. G.

Über diesen Strom vor Jahren
 Bin ich schon einmal gefahren. Uhl.

Und unter den Füßen ein nebliges Meer,
 Erkennt er (der Alpenjäger) die Städte der Menschen
 nicht mehr;

Durch den Riß nur der Wolken erblickt er die Welt,
 Tief unter den Wassern das grüne Feld. Sch.

Durch diese hohle Gasse muß er kommen,
 Es führt kein andrer Weg nach Rühnacht. Sch.

Die Ritter alle fielen vor des Königs starkem Sohne.
 Aber vor des Kampfes Gitter ritt zuletzt ein schwarzer
 Ritter. Uhl.

Hinter dem schwarzen Wolfenflor da glänzt des Voll-
 monds Licht. Uhl. Nur durch das Morgenthor des Schö-
 nen bringst du in der Erkenntniß Land. Sch.

Es tritt ein Wandersmann herfür
 An eines Dorfes Schenke;
 Er setzt sich vor des Hauses Thür
 Im Schatten auf die Bänke,
 Und legt sein Bündel neben sich. Schlegel.

Man rettet gern aus trüber Gegenwart
 Sich in das heitere Gebiet der Kunst. Uhl.

Die offene Straße ziehet über Steinen; doch einen für-
 zern Weg kann euch mein Knabe über Roverz führen. Sch.
 Ich wandle zwischen Freud' und Schmerz in der Einsam-
 keit. G.

B. Locality, in a metaphorical sense.

- 295 When the object of locality expresses not so much the place, as a particular business or action, to be performed in that place, the prepositions *auf* and *zu* are employed in the following manner:

Er bringt einen Brief auf die Post (to be sent away).
 Er ist auf der Universität (studying).

Ich gehe auf die Jagd (hunting), auf den Ball (dan-
 ng).

Er geht auf das Lesezimmer (in order to read).

Sie lebt auf dem Lande. Er reist auf die Messe, auf den Markt.

Er ist auf keiner Akademie gewesen. G.

Ich gehe zu Tisch, zu Bett, zur Kirche.

Ich sitze zu Tisch, liege zu Bett.

Ich gehe zu Schiffe. Das Kind kommt zur Welt (is born).

Ich stehe ihm (Dat. §. 271) zur Seite (I assist him).

Ich werfe mich ihm zu Füßen (to beg for someth.).

A great many compound expressions of the same kind 296 are now employed to denote simple ideas, in a metaphorical way: the following are remarkable:

zum Äußersten kommen	to come to extremities
zu Grunde gehen	to be ruined
zu Schaden kommen	to be damaged
zu Stande kommen	to be accomplished
zu Jahren kommen	to grow older
zu Vernunft kommen	to hear reason
zu Ende gehen	to be near an end
in Ohnmacht fallen	to swoon
in Schlaf fallen	to fall asleep
etwas im Gedächtniß behalten	to remember something
Einen in den Bann thun	to excommunicate one
in See stechen	to put to sea
sich auf die Wissenschaften legen	to apply to sciences
etwas auf die lange Bank schieben	to delay something
ein Heer auf die Beine bringen	to raise an army
den Feind aufs Haupt schlagen	to defeat the enemy
aus der Rolle fallen	to act out of character
Jemanden beim Wort halten	to take one at his word
hinter's Licht führen	to deceive.

II. *Adverbs of locality.*

- 297 In German the different kinds of relation of locality, and principally the particular directions of an action, are pointed out in a peculiar way by the adverbs of locality, *her* — *hin*, and their compounds with other adverbs or prepositions: *hierher*, *dorthin* — *hinunter*, *hinauf*, *herein*, *heraus* &c.

The adverb *her* implies a motion towards the speaker, and *hin* a motion away from him; either of them must be added whenever a verb requires a completing object of locality, which, however, is not expressed; e. g. *ich lege mich hin* (auf die Erde). *Wo kommst du her?* (aus der Stadt.) The adverbs *her* and *hin* are compounded with the demonstrative adverbs *hier* *here*, *da* and *dort* *there*, and the interrogative adverb *wo* where, which commonly take the principal accent; e. g. *komme nicht hierher*, sondern *gehe dorthin*. *Lege das Buch dahin*. *Wohin soll ich das Buch legen?* &c.

- 298 The particular kinds of locality, explained §. 294, are expressed by the adverbs:

oben above	unten (ab) below
außen (aus) outside	innen (ein) inside
vorn before	hinten behind.

These adverbs, or the corresponding prepositions, are sometimes compounded with *da* (or *dar*, §. 142), where rest is to be denoted, and always with *her* or *hin*, when the verb implies motion from or towards the speaker; *her* and *hin* are sometimes supplied by the preposition *von* and *nach*;

er ist oben (droben)	er geht hinauf	er kommt herauf
er ist unten (drunten)	er geht hinunter (or hinab)	er kommt herunter (or herab)
er ist draußen	er geht hinaus	er kommt heraus
er ist drinnen	er geht hinein	er kommt herein
er ist vorn	er geht nach vorn	er kommt von vorn
er ist hinten	er geht hintenhin (or nach hinten)	er kommt hintenher (or von hinten).

Of the same description are the following:

er ist drüben er geht hinüber er kommt herüber
(beyond, on the other side)

er geht hindurch er kommt herbei.

These compound adverbs are sometimes connected with a preceding substantive in the accusative case; e. g. ich gehe den Berg hinunter, die Treppe hinauf, ich ziehe die Straße hindurch &c. Er kommt eben den langen Gang herauf. G. Was klinget und singet die Straß' herauf? Uhl.

The adverbs herein, heraus, hinein, hinaus are frequently preceded by a substantive with the prep. zu; e. g. er trat zur Thür herein; der Vogel flog zum Fenster hinaus; he entered by the door; the bird flew in by the window.

In the same manner the following compound expressions are employed: um die Stadt her, um mich her, von Anfang an, von da an, bis dort hin, von England her, von Grund aus, von Frankreich aus, nach Norden zu, nach England hin &c. 299

A great many other adverbs of locality are used in German, as in English, as will appear from the following examples.

Hier liegt die Burg im Abendschimmer
Drüben rauscht das Meer wie immer. Uhl.

Und draußen am allerlegten Haus
Da schauet ein Mägdelein zum Fenster heraus. Uhl.

Schauet hinab, wie herrlich liegen die schönen Gebiete nicht da, und unten Weinberg' und Gärten; dort die Scheunen und Ställe. G. Ich lief wie ein Wiesel dahin und dorthin, Treppen hinauf und hinab G. Wo Parteien entstehen, hält jeder sich hüben und drüben. G. Wer nicht vorwärts geht, der kommt zurück. G. Von fern her kommen wir gezogen. Sch.

Doben stehet die Kapelle, schauet still ins Thal hinab;
Drunten singt bei Wief und Quelle froh und hell der
Hirtensknab. Uhl.

Hermann säumte nicht und fuhr bergan wie bergunter. G. Ich wandre schon seit Jahren die Lande aus und ein. Schleg.

Da droben auf jenem Berge
Da steh' ich tausendmal,
An meinem Stabe gebogen,
Und schaue hinab in das Thal. G.

CHAPTER XIII.

OBJECT OF TIME.

300 The relation of time is twofold, according as the object points out either:

1. *the point of time*, when an action is performed, or:
2. *the duration of time*, how long the action continues to be performed.

Both the point and duration of time may be determined either by those names of dates and epochs, generally adopted, (proper names of time) as: Sunday etc., morning, evening, six o'clock, a week, a month, a year etc., or by referring the action to some other action or event, the time of which is considered to be known, as: sunrise, a war, a person's arrival etc.

The object of time is, in German, expressed by a substantive with or without a preposition, or by one of those Adverbs of time, explained §. 152.

I. *Point of Time.*

301 An object expressing a point of time: the predicate can be either:

A. synchronous with the object, (I saw him *at* six o'clock); or —

B. preceding A. (I saw him before six o'clock); or —

C. succeeding A. (I saw him after six o'clock).

A. Synchronism.

a. When the point of time in which an action is or was performed, is expressed by *proper names of time*, they are in the accusative or genitive case, or take one of the prepositions *in*, *an*, *um*, *gegen*, *zu*.

The preposition *in*, with the dative case, is usually employed with all substantives denoting a space of time, except *Tag*, *Morgen* and *Abend*, which require the preposition *an*, and *Zeit* and *Mal*, which commonly take the prepos. *zu*. The *hour* is expressed by *um* (*um ein Uhr*, at one o'clock; *um halb zwei*, at half past one), and *um* is likewise usual with *Mittag* and *Mitternacht*.

Schiller wurde im Jahr 1759, im November geboren, und starb am 9. Mai 1805. — Mein Bruder besuchte mich in der vorigen Woche am Dienstag, und reiste in der folgenden Nacht um 2 Uhr wieder ab. — Sie mahnen mich zur rechten Zeit. — Ich sah ihn zum ersten Male. — Es stand in alten Zeiten ein Schloß, so hoch und hehr. Uhl.

Fürwahr, es ist sehr wohlgethan,
Daß Ihr am frohen Tag erscheint:
Habt Ihr es vormals doch mit uns
An bösen Tagen gut gemeint. G.

Am Morgen lustwandelten Frauen, am Abend fochten die Helden. Uhl.

Observation. It is to be remarked that it is said in German: *im Anfang*, at the beginning, and *am Ende*, at the end.

The *accusative case* is frequently made use of, without any preposition, when time is denoted in a definite way, by adding to the name of the time some pronoun, adjective or adverb; e. g. *er starb diesen Morgen*, *die letzte Nacht*, *gestern Abend*, *vorgestern Mittag*; *den fünfundzwanzigsten Mai*. Göthe wurde den

302

Hermann säumte nicht und fuhr ber. 1832. —
 ter. G. Ich wandre schon seit Jah. alige sich sehn.
 und ein. Schleg. erlassen. Sch.

Da droben auf jenem B. and, denotes a
 Da steh' ich tausendmal, g. er kam eines
 An meinem Stabe gebo. w-a-days, nächster
 Und schaue hinab in. re case is therefore

time when an action
 Christen gehen Sonn-
 Samstags in die Syna-
 ihm angenehm; des Mor-
 Hoffnung auf, des Abends
 und des Nachts schlief er gut. —
 war ich des Morgens froh, des
 Hölberlin. — Tages Arbeit,

300 The relation. G.
 ject points expressed by um and gegen; e. g. um diese

1. the Oftern, gegen 12 Uhr, gegen Abend. — Er

2. the erst gegen 11 Uhr abreisen. Sch.

tinues is in German binnen and innerhalb; bin-

Br is only used when speaking of future time; e. g.

eit' innen vier Tagen soll sich ausweisen, wer von uns bei-

a' Herr der Welt sein wird. Sch. Der Herzog landete

innerhalb acht Tagen in Genua. Sch.

b. When the time of an action is fixed by referring

it to some synchronous action or event, the preposition

bei is used; e. g. bei Sonnenaufgang, bei seiner An-

kunft, bei dem Tode des Königs, bei dieser Gelegenheit,

bei Tages Anbruch. — Bei jedem Abschied zittert mir das

Herz. Sch. Wer sah's, wie er beim letzten Hofball seine

Dame, die Königin, im Tanze stehen ließ. Sch.

When the synchronous action is of a longer duration,

the prep. unter, with the dative, and während, with

the genitive, are employed, like the E. during; e. g.

Unter Karls des Fünften Regierung war Antwerpen die

lebendigste und herrlichste Stadt in der Welt. Sch. Wäh-

rend der spanischen Religionsverfolgung hatten sich einige

ische Familien in die katholische Reichsstadt Aachen
S. 5.

The predicate *precedes* the object of time, 304

vor, with the dative, is used, both for

ago; e. g. vor Abend, before evening;

vor Sonnenaufgang, before sunrise; vor 6 Uhr, before

6 o'clock; vor dem Kriege, before the war; vor zwei

Jahren, before two years; vor einer Woche, a week ago;

vor ein paar Tagen, a few days ago. Vor einer Stunde

Er will doch wiederkommen? — Vor

einigen Jahren. Sprach er. S. 5. Wir standen als Gemeinde

seitig Jahren bei Köln am Rhein. S. 5.

When the predicate *succeeds* the object of time, 305

prepositions nach, after, and in (or über), in,

used; e. g. nach Sonnenaufgang, after sunrise; nach

6 Uhr, after six o'clock; nach dem Kriege, after the war;

in zwei Jahren, in two years; in einer Woche, in a

week; in einigen Tagen, in a few days. Thue, was vor

dir kein Weib gethan, nach dir kein Weib thun wird. S. 5.

In wenigen Stunden kann die Nachricht da sein. S. 5.

Observation. The prepositions in, with the dative, and über, with the accusative, are only employed with an object, expressing a *space* of *future* time; über implies that the action of the predicate is not to be performed *earlier*, and in that it is not to be performed *later* than after the space of time, fixed by the object.

II. Duration of time.

Duration of time is expressed by the *accusative case*, 306 whenever in English the prep. *for* is used, and by the prepositions in (with the dative), in, seit, since, and bis, till; e. g. Ich war acht Tage in London, sechs Wochen in Paris und ein Jahr in Wien. — Ich bin drei Jahre auf der Universität gewesen. — Rom ist nicht in Einem Tage gebaut. — In sechs Tagen hat Gott die Welt geschaffen. — Seit Ostern bin ich krank. — Er schläft seit drei Stunden. — Er schläft bis acht Uhr. — Er bleibt bis Ostern in England.

1. **Observations.** The prepos. *für* is never employed to express duration of time, like the E. *for*; but the adverb *lange* is frequently added in order to point out this particular relation; e. g. *acht Tage lang*, for a week; *drei Jahre lang*, for three years etc.

2. *Bis, till*, is generally connected with another preposition; e. g. *er bleibt bis zum Abend, bis in den Winter.* — *Ich bin ihm treu geblieben bis zum Tod.* Sch. — *Jede Tugend ist fectenfrei bis auf den Augenblick der Probe.* Sch. Only before adverbs of time and some names of dates, as: *Ostern, Pfingsten, Weihnachten*, the prep. *bis* does not require another preposition; e. g. *bis jetzt, bis morgen, bis gestern, bis Ostern* &c.

Adverbs of time.

307 A list of adverbs of time has been given §. 152. In this place some remarks must be added in order to explain some peculiarities of the German idiom.

Einst or *einmal, once*, is employed to express a remote time, both past and future, in the most indefinite way; e. g. *Einst auch glühten meine Wangen, nun ist alles Noth vergangen.* Uhl. — *Einst wird kommen der Tag, da die heilige Zion hinsinkt.* Bosh.

Jüngst, kürzlich denote a past time, not very distant from present time; e. g. *Oft einst hatte sie mich mit duftigen Rosen beschenkt. Eine noch sproßte mir jüngst aus der Geliebtesten Grab.* Uhl. — *Bei einem Wirth, wundermild, da war ich jüngst zu-Gaste.* Uhl.

Neulich is used like the E. *the other day*; e. g. *Der Sturmwind hat neulich ganze Wälder ausgerissen.* G.

Sonst originally means *at another time*; e. g. *er trinkt heute Wein, sonst trinkt er Wasser.* — *Sonst* (formerly) was *ich selbst* mit in *Feld und Wald*; *jetzt* kann *ich nichts mehr als den Schaffner machen.* Sch.

Erst, first, schon, already, and noch, still, yet, if referred to the predicate, are employed in the same way, as the corresponding adverbs in English; e. g. *ich will*

erst arbeiten und dann spielen; er schläft noch, und es ist schon 10 Uhr. — Erst handeln und dann reden. Sch. — Von Jugend auf hab' ich gelernt gehorchen, erst meinen Eltern und dann einer Gottheit. G.

Noch ahnt man kaum der Sonne Licht,
Noch sind die Morgenglocken nicht
Im finstern Thal erklingen.
Ich habe mich längst ins Feld gemacht
Und habe schon dies Lied erdacht,
Und hab' es laut gesungen. Uhl.

These adverbs are, however, more extensively employed in German than in English, being frequently referred, not to the verb, but to another object of time, as: erst gestern, schon heute, noch diesen Abend. Such modes of expression, being generally contrary to the English idiom, cannot be literally translated; and the adverbs erst, schon, noch, must either be left out altogether, or pointed out by circumlocution; erst implies *not before*, schon *not later than*; noch is used to give particular emphasis to the object of time (*at no other time than*); e. g. er ist erst gestern angekommen (not till yesterday) und will schon morgen abreisen (to morrow already). Er will noch heute Abend abreisen (this very evening). The following combinations are very usual: erst eben, just now, schon wieder, again, schon zum zweiten, dritten Male; noch immer, noch nie &c.

Bald signifies *soon*, but when repeated, it denotes: *now — then*.

Bersunken war ich in die frommen Sagen;
Bald kniet' ich vor Sankt Albans Wundersteine,
Bald schaut' ich Regiswird im Rosenscheine,
Bald sah ich Helicenas Münster ragen. Uhl.

The following compound expressions are to be re- 308
marked:

once, twice a day

einmal, zweimal des Tages,
or täglich

every other day

einen Tag um den andern, or
alle zwei Tage

every day	alle Tage, or immer
every since ?	alle Tage or immer
ever since	seitdem immer
this day week	heute über acht Tage
" " fortnight	" " vierzehn Tage
now-a-days, in our time	heut zu Tage
by this time	jetzt, schon
day by day	Tag für Tag
for the time to come	in Zukunft
for a while	auf einige Zeit
at all times	stets, immer
at any time	jemals
at no time	niemals
by that time	unterdessen
for a time	eine Zeit lang
from time to time	von Zeit zu Zeit.

CHAPTER XIV.

OBJECT OF MANNER.

309 The object of manner by which the predicate is qualified, is in German, expressed:

1. by particular adverbs of manner;
2. by a substantive with a preposition (mit, ohne, an, auf, nach, zu).

1. *Adverbs of manner.*

Every adjective may be used, in German, as an adverb of manner, without assuming any affix (like the English *ly*); e. g. er schreibt schön (beautifully), er läuft schnell. — Das Regiment hat sich brav gehalten. — Wer leicht glaubt, wird leicht betrogen. *Proverb.* Ewigklar und spiegelrein und eben fließt das zephyrleichte Leben im Olymp den Seligen dahin. Sch. Traurig tönt das Glöcklein nieder, schauerlich der Reichenchor. Uhl.

2. *Manner expressed by prepositions.*

The prepositions *mit* and *ohne* are employed, in German, like *with* and *without*, to denote both the manner in which something is done, and the instrument with which an action is performed; e. g. *er spricht mit lauter Stimme, aber ohne Gefühl. Er schreibt mit einer Stahlfeder, mit rother Tinte. Ohne Feder kann man nicht schreiben. Auf des Lebens Bahn dahin fliegt der Mensch mit Sturmeseil. Uhl. Es ist brav und löblich, einen Bösewicht ohne Schonung zu verfolgen. Sch. Wie das Gestirn, ohne Haß, aber ohne Rast, drehe sich jeder um die eigene Rast. G.*

The preposition *an* is only used with the superlative degree of adverbs of manner (§. 167); e. g. *Es ist nichts natürlicher, als daß ein König denen seine Befehle am liebsten aufträgt, die sie am besten verstehen. G. Wir verlegen am meisten, die wir am zärtlichsten lieben. G.*

The preposition *auf* with the accusative is only used with the substantives *Art* and *Weise*, and with the superlative degree, if there is no comparison (§. 187); *Wir dienen ihm auf unsre Art. G. Wir verrechnen uns auf ganz verschiedene Weise. Sch.*

Auf dem Wege (dative) means: *in this way*. *Ich will auf kürzerm Wege mir Licht bereiten. Sch.*

The preposition *nach* denotes manner in conformity with something; e. g. *Reise nach des Liebes Klange fügt sich der Stein zum Stein. Sch.*

The preposition *zu* is used in some phrases expressing the manner of going, travelling &c.; e. g. *zu Fuße gehen, zu Pferde reisen, zu Lande nach Indien reisen, zu Schiffe hinreisen &c.*

OBSERVATION. The genitive case was formerly usual to express an object of manner, and has been retained in some expressions, particularly in the higher style; e. g. *Einen alles Ernstes ermahnen* (in full earnest). *Nicht leichten Kampfes siegt der Glaube. Körner. Ich leiste euch jede Sicherheit, die ihr vernünftiger Weise von mir fordern möget. Sch. Schnellen Blicks erkennt sie ihn. Sch. Stehenden Fußes* (immediately, lat. *stante pede*); *keineswegs, by no means; glücklicher Weise, for-*

tunately; ~~gerade~~, straightways; ~~folgendermaßen~~, in the following way; ~~etwigermaßen~~, in some measure etc.

Manner is expressed in a peculiar way, by comparing one thing with an other. The German language then employs the adverb *wie* (like), and the object must agree in case with that word with which it is compared; e. g. *du hast wie ein guter Vater, und er wie ein gehorsamer Sohn gehandelt. Du hast ihn wie einen Verbrecher behandelt. Weiter blickst du, wie ein Glücklicher, um dich. Sch. Da stand er plötzlich an des Klosters Pforte, schön wie ein Gott, und männlich wie ein Held. Sch.*

CHAPTER XV.

OBJECT OF CAUSALITY.

311 All relations of an object, conceived as causing in some way the action of the predicate to be performed, are comprehended in the relation of *Causality*, and expressed, in German as in English, by different prepositions. In this respect the following distinctions ought to be carefully observed.

1. The *cause* is that which of itself produces or effects the action of the subject; e. g. *he dies of hunger.*

2. The *means* is that by means of which an intention is effected; e. g. *she touched him by her tears, he made a fortune by trade.*

3. The *material* is the substance of which any thing is made; e. g. *to make a rope from hemp.*

4. The *argument* is that by which the subject knows something; e. g. *to know something by experience, by the newspapers.*

5. The *motive* is that which invites the subject to

action; e. g. to do something *from avarice, from jealousy.*

6. The *purpose* is the intention which is to be effected by the action; e. g. I do this *for your advantage.*

These different relations are denoted by the following prepositions:

The *cause* by *von, vor, wegen.*

The *means* by *durch, vermittelst.*

The *material* by *aus.*

The *argument* by *aus, an, nach, zufolge, laut.*

The *motive* by *aus, wegen, halben, um — willen.*

The *purpose* by *zu, für.*

1. Cause.

When a cause is acting in a positive way, producing the action of the subject, it is expressed by *von* (with the dative). When, on the other hand, it acts in a negative way, suppressing or preventing an action, or overpowering the subject, it is denoted by *vor* (with the dative); e. g. die Flüsse schwellen *von* dem Regen. Er ist *von* hoher Borne trunken, er ist *von* süßen Schmerzen matt. Uhl. *Von* des Vaters Blute triesen soll des Sohnes Stahl. Sch. Mein Kopf glüht *von* durchwachter Nacht. Sch. — Man kann *vor* Rebel nichts sehen, *vor* Lärm nichts hören. Er sieht den Wald *vor* Bäumen nicht. Prov. Ich schlafe *vor* Langerweile ein. Er weint *vor* Freude. Er konnte *vor* Müdigkeit und Hunger kaum etwas vorbringen. G. *Vor* dem Glauben gilt keine Stimme der Natur. Sch. Die Großmutter wird *vor* Kummer sterben. Sch. Er kennt *vor* lauter Gelehrsamkeit seinen Vater nicht. G.

OBSERVATION. If what prevents you from doing something, is your being occupied with another thing, the preposition *über* (with the dative) is employed; e. g. Wer das Große über dem Kleinen versäumt, heißt mit Recht eifältig. Jacobs. Ueber der Beschreibung vergeß ich den ganzen Krieg. Sch.

The preposition *wegen* (with the genitive) denotes an external *obstacle* preventing something; e. g. das Schiff konnte ungünstiger Winde wegen nicht auslaufen.

2. The means.

- 313 The preposition *durch* (with the accusative) denotes the means, by which some purpose is effected; e. g. er erwirbt sich durch den Handel ein Vermögen. Kein Mensch wird je durch Nachahmung groß. Die Niederländer schützen sich durch Dämme gegen ihren Ocean. Sch. Pelops erwarb sich durch Verrath und Mord das schönste Weib. G. Der Mensch ist frei durch Vernunft, stark durch Gesetze, durch Sanftmuth groß, und reich durch Schätze. Sch.

OBSERVATION. The preposition *durch* is always employed, when the subject itself is considered as producing some effect by some means; whilst when the preposition *von* (§. 312) is employed, the subject is conceived to suffer the influence of the object. On the other hand, the means (*durch, by*) is to be distinguished from the instrument (*mit, with*, §. 310), and from the personal object (*von, by*, §. 273). The personal object is a person or a thing, considered to act like a person; e. g. Cesar was killed by Brutus, Cäsar wurde von Brutus getödtet; the instrument is a concrete thing; e. g. er erschieß ihn mit einem Dolch. The means is generally an action, expressed by an abstract substantive; e. g. er glaubt sich durch falsches Zeugniß retten zu können. Pelops erwarb sich durch Verrath und Mord das schönste Weib. G. Wollt ihr die Wahrheit durch ein solches Opfer ehren? Sch. Denkt ihr, daß sie sich durch einen Eid gebunden glauben werden, den ihr thut durch Gaubekünste abgelöst? Sch.

In this way the preposition *durch* is used, even when the effect of an action was not before intended; e. g. er macht sich durch sein Betragen verdächtig. Er hat sich durch das Bad einen Schnupfen zugezogen. Wie reich sind sie auf einmal durch zwei Worte. Sch.

The preposition *vermittelft* (with the genitive) is employed instead of both *durch*, and *mit*.

3. The materials.

- 314 The substance of which something is made, is in denoted German by *aus* (with the dative); e. g. man

macht aus Puppen Papler. Mich schuf aus größerm Stoffe die Natur. S. ch. Fest gemauert in der Erde steht die Form, aus Lehm gebrannt. S. ch.

The preposition von often takes the place of aus, particularly when the verb (made, built etc.) is omitted, as is the case in the attributive combination; e. g. ein Tisch von Holz, von Stein (§. 240, 3), and in: der Tisch ist von Holz; das Haus ist von Stein &c.

4. The argument.

The argument, i. e. the cause by which one knows 315 something, is expressed by aus, an, nach, zufolge, laut.

The preposition aus denotes the origin from which some knowledge is taken; e. g. ich weiß es aus Erfahrung, aus der Zeitung. Das bewies er Alles aus der Bibel. G. Ich will dir nur gestehn, daß ich es aus des Fürsten Mund habe. S. ch.

OBSERVATION. When the object is a person, the preposition von is employed instead of aus; e. g. ich weiß von meinem Bruder.

The preposition an denotes a mark by which something is distinguished; e. g. man kennt den Vogel an den Federn. Man sieht's dir an den Augen an, gewiß du hast geweint. G. Um reinen Glanz will ich die Perle kennen. G.

Eine Glocke am Klang,
Einen Vogel am Gesang,
Einen Mann am Gang,
Einen Thoren an den Worten
Kennt man an allen Orten. Philander.

5. The motive.

An *internal motive* is expressed by aus; e. g. er singt 316 aus Eitelkeit (from vanity). Er hat sich aus Verzweiflung ins Wasser gestürzt. Die Königin säumt noch aus arger List, nicht aus Gefühl der Menschlichkeit. S. ch. Gutes thun, rein aus des Guten Liebe. G.

An external motive is expressed by *wegen*, *halben*, and *um* — *willen* (with the genitive case); e. g. *er hat sich seiner Schulden wegen ins Wasser gestürzt. Ich komme deinetwegen, seinethalben* &c. (for your sake, for his sake). Ganz besonders rühmt man ihn wegen seiner Kraft im Disputiren. G. Um des Himmels willen erbarmet euch. S. h.

These prepositions, however, are not synonymous. *Wegen* denotes a motive in an indefinite way, like *on account of*; e. g. *er geht seiner Gesundheit wegen nach Italien.* *Halben* denotes a particular motive which we wish to distinguish from another; e. g. *er thut es der Ehre halben, nicht des Gewinns halben.* *Um* — *willen* is employed when a purpose, and in particular the wish or interest of a person is the motive of an action; e. g. *um des Friedens willen, for the sake of peace. Um ihrer Ruhe willen muß es ihr verschwiegen werden.* S. h.

6. The purpose.

- 317 The purpose is expressed by the preposition *zu*, if the object is an abstract substantive, But if the object is a person or thing for the advantage of whom or which something is done, the preposition *für* is employed; e. g. *ich lese zu meiner Belehrung, zur Unterhaltung; sie gaben ihm zu Ehren ein Fest.*

Ein Alter liebt die Thaler, ein Junger liebt sie auch;
Nur jener zum Verstecken und dieser zum Gebrauch.
Lugau.

Ich sammle Geld für die Armen. Das hat ein Freund für seinen Freund gethan. S. h. Mach' mir ein köstlich Kränzchen für meine süße Braut. Uhl.

In the same way when abstract ideas are personated, the preposition *für* is used; e. g. *ich sterbe für die Freiheit, für die ich lebe und socht. G. Für die Freiheit floß das Blut seiner Rechten. Schlegel. Für seine Thorheit schickt ihm Peru Gold, für seine Laster zieht sein Hof ihm Teufel.* S. h.

The effect of an action, even if not intended, is also expressed by *zu*; e. g. *zu meiner größten Freude* kam mein Bruder. *Zum Glück* (fortunately), *zum Unglück* kam er zu spät. Sie sind sich *zum Verwechseln ähnlich*. Die *Laute lieb' ich zur Raserei*. *Œ*.

There are moreover some particular relations of causality expressed by particular prepositions. 316

Conformity with a cause is expressed by *nach* *according to*; e. g. *ich habe alles nach ihren Wünschen* gethan; er ist *nach* der Aussage der Zeugen schuldig. *Nach* ewigen, ehrnen, großen Gesetzen müssen wir alle unseres Daseins Kreise vollenden. *Œ*. Ich darf hoffen, daß ich nicht *nach* dem Scheine gerichtet werde. *Œ*. Er scheint mir in allem *nach* seinem Gewissen zu handeln. *Œ*. Jeder gibt *nach* seinem Vermögen, *nach* Kräften. Conformity is expressed in a more determinate way by *gemäß*, which is always preceded by the Dative; e. g. *der Sitte gemäß*, *dem Gesetze gemäß*.

Nach is employed like *after* in: er kleidet sich *nach* der neuesten Mode. Er wurde *nach* seinem Großvater Georg genannt.

Zufolge (with the Dative) and *vermöge* (with the Genitive) are equivalent to: *in consequence of*. *Vermöge* is employed when a particular quality of a thing is conceived as causing an effect; e. g. *die Himmelskörper bewegen sich vermöge ihrer gegenseitigen Anziehung*. *Vermöge* seiner Rechtlichkeit will der Deutsche Niemanden in seinem wohlerworbnen Eigenthum stören; *vermöge* seiner Besonnenheit läßt er sich nicht durch Chimären stören, und *vermöge* seiner Grabbheit haßt er alle Imagination. *Œ*. *Zufolge* denotes an extrinsic cause; e. g. Man entwarf einen Plan, *welchem zufolge* zwölf neue Ritter des Bließes in den Staatsrath gezogen werden sollten. *Œ*. Den Versicherungen der Franziskaner *zufolge* steigt der heilige Franziskus wöchentlich einmal in das Fegfeuer, und befreit daraus alle, die er in seiner Amtstracht findet. *Jacob's*.

Kraft (with the Genitive) means *by virtue of*; and *laut* (with the Genitive) expresses conformity with the

contents of words, either spoken or written; e. g. er that es kraft seines Amtes, kraft des erhaltenen Auftrags, laut des Briefes, laut der Urkunde.

- 319 If an action or effect is not in conformity but in opposition to a cause, the latter is expressed by *wider against*; *zuwider contrary to*; *ungeachtet, notwithstanding*; *trotz, in spite of*; e. g. Sie floßen gewaltsam wider meinen Willen mich hinein. Sch. Dem ausdrücklichen Verbot *zuwider* ließen sich mehrere derselben in den Landstädten öffentlich hören. Sch. Der Konstitution *zuwider* führte er fremde Truppen ins Gebiet. Sch. Trotz meiner Aufsicht, meinem scharfen Suchen [finde ich] noch Kostbarkeiten, noch geheime Schätze! Sch. Des kaiserlichen Verbotes *ungeachtet* gingen die Berathschlagungen vor sich. Sch.

When the disadvantage of a person is to be effected by an action, it is expressed by *gegen* and *wider* (with the accusative); e. g. Unternehmen Sie nichts Bluthiges *gegen* Ihren Vater. Sch. Der französische Unterthan zieht das Schwert *gegen* ein Vaterland, das ihn mißhandelt; jetzt sieht man Schweizer *gegen* Schweizer, Deutsche *gegen* Deutsche im Kampf gerüstet. Sch. Die Briefe haben *wider* Dich gezeugt. Sch.

CHAPTER XVI.

OBJECT OF CO-EXISTENCE.

- 320 We comprehend under the term of an Object of Co-existence all those objects which express a circumstance or action, co-incident in time with the action expressed by the predicate, without however defining either the time (when?) or the manner (how?) of the action (§. 254); e. g. er liegt wachend im Bette; ich stand mit Kopf weh auf.

The Object of Co-existence is in German as in English expressed:

1. by the participle of a verb, which is then termed *Gerund*;

2. by an abstract substantive with a preposition.

1. *Gerund*.

Both the present and past participle are used as a *Gerund*, in order to express a co-existent action; e. g. er lehrte entmuthigt und niedergeschlagen zurück. Er stand verwirrt da. — Es wirket jeder Geist und jede Hand, belebend, fördernd, für des Ganzen Wohl. O. Ihr werdet sehn, wie sie geächtet irren, und in Verzweiflung sechtend untergehn. Uhl. Ich lockt' ihn schmeichelnd in des Todes Netz. Sch. Dies alles bei mir denkend schlief ich ein. Sch. Der eignen Kraft nicht mehr vertrauend, wandt' er sein Herz den dunkeln Künsten zu. Sch. Versunken in Dich selber stehst Du da. Sch. &c.

It must however be observed, that the use of this form is much more limited in German than in English. Common prose will scarcely admit of such *Gerunds*, when they are again enlarged by new objects; if this be the case (e. g. der eignen Kraft nicht mehr vertrauend; dies Alles bei mir denkend &c.), it is more usual to transform the *Gerund* into an accessory or even principal sentence (indem er der eignen Kraft nicht mehr vertraute; indem ich dies alles bei mir dachte &c. see §. 344).

The *Gerund* must have the same subject as the predicate of the sentence. This is not always the case in English, and sentences like: The tempest increasing, the ships lost sight of each other, are not conformable with the German idiom, because the *Gerund*, *increasing*, has its proper subject (*the tempest*). The past participle however of transitive verbs is sometimes connected in a particular way with an accusative case, which construction is generally expressed in English by the preposition *with*; e. g. Er saß da, die Arme auf der Brust gekreuzt

(with his arms folded on his bosom). Das Haar verwildert lag der Schotte da. Sch. In einem Erker standen wir, den Blick stumm in das öde Feld hinaus gerichtet. Sch.

Ausgenommen, *except*, is constructed in the same way, with a preceding accusative case; e. g. In dem Zuchthause ist Alles schlecht, was man bekommt, die Prügel ausgenommen. Hebel. Die Lacedämonier hatten alle Völker des Peloponnes, die Argiver und Achäer ausgenommen, auf ihrer Seite. When however the participle *ausgenommen* precedes its object, the latter must agree in case with the substantive of which it is to be excepted; e. g. Es ist allen Brüdern angenehm, ausgenommen dem jüngsten. Alle Brüder wollen es, ausgenommen der älteste.

When the participle, *having* or *holding*, is connected with a suffering object and an object of locality, it is always omitted in German; e. g. Die Hand am Schwerte (habend) schauen sie sich drohend an. Sch. In der einen Hand den Degen, den Schild in der andern, führte er sie gegen den Feind. Sch. So muß ich fallen in des Feindes Hand, das nahe Rettungsufer im Gesichte. Sch.

An *adjective*, undeclined, takes sometimes the place of a Gerund; e. g. Traurig saß die Jungfrau dort. Uhl. Uneingedenk gemeinen Lohnes seid Ihr beharrlich, emsig, treu. Uhl. Könnten wir nicht harmlos vergnügliche Tage spinnen, lustig das leichte Leben gewinnen. Sch.

2. Prepositions.

- 323 Co-existence is denoted in a positive way by *mit*, with the dative, and in a negative way by *ohne* with the accusative; e. g. ich denke daran mit Widerwillen, doch ohne Reue. Schaffer fort am guten Werke mit Besonnenheit und Stärke. Uhl. Ich liebe ohne Hoffnung, mit Todesangst und mit Gefahr des Lebens. Sch. Ich weile gern mit stillem Weh in froher Menschen Schwarm. Uhl. Ohn' Ursach sollen wir nie zucken unsern Degen; Ohn' Ehre sollen wir ihn drauf nie nieder legen. Fogau.

So wie es selten Komplimente gibt, ohne alle Lüge; so finden sich auch selten Grobheiten ohne alle Wahrheit. Lessing.

When *ohne* is followed by a verb, it must be in the supine, and not as in English in the present participle; e. g. *ich kam zurück ohne etwas gesehen zu haben* (without *having* etc.); *ich erwachte ohne zu wissen, wo ich war.*

Some other prepositions are used instead of *mit*, viz. *in*, *unter*, and *bei*.

The preposition *in* is employed, when the co-existent object is not an action, but a *state of being*; e. g. *er spricht im Schlafe. Da liegen sie alle in milder Ruhe. Uhl. Da steh' ich in fürchterlicher Einsamkeit. Sch. Bergeßt, was ich im wachen Traum gesprochen. Sch. In diesem Glauben will ich handeln. Sch.*

The preposition *unter* (with the dative) is employed; when the object is an action, performed by another subject, or an extrinsic incident, conceived as a condition; It is therefore always used with the substantive *Bedingung* (condition); e. g. *Sie schlossen unter günstigen Bedingungen Frieden. Ich will unter keiner Bedingung zurückkehren. Er lebt unter Aufsicht seines Onkels. Cambridge öffnete seinem Erzbischof unter freudigem Zurufe die Thore wieder. Sch. Die Reformation machte unter dem Schutze der ständischen Freiheit, unter der Decke des Tumults merkliche Fortschritte. Sch.*

The preposition *bei* (with the dative) implies a relation of causality, and in particular that cause which has no effect (adversative cause); e. g. *Bei diesem kalten Winde sind alle Straßen leer. Uhl. Was kümmert Dich der böse Schein bei der gerechten Sache? Sch. Aber bei dem wohlbestellten Essen wird die Lust der Speise nicht erregt. G. Indessen ist mir bei aller Unachtsamkeit und allem Widerwillen doch von jener Vorlesung so viel geblieben, daß ich in späteren Zeiten manches daran zu knüpfen im Stande war. G.*

SECTION IV.

SYNTAX OF THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

- 324 Two simple sentences are connected with one another into a compound sentence, either by way of *Subordination*, or by way of *Co-ordination*. They are connected by way of *Subordination*, when one of them (*the Accessory sentence*) is to be considered as the subject or as an attribute or object of the other (*the Principal sentence*). Two sentences are, on the other hand, connected by way of *Co-ordination*, when they are not in this manner dependant one upon the other. When two co-ordinate sentences have either the same subject, or the same predicate or another essential part common to both sentences; e. g. *he* eats and *he* drinks; my brother *eats* and my sister *eats* — the two sentences are frequently *contracted* into one sentence; as: he eats and drinks; my brother and sister drink. On the other hand, an accessory sentence is frequently deprived of that form which makes it a sentence, i. e. of its subject or predicate, and is expressed merely by an infinitive or participle etc.; e. g. our going thither is uncertain (it is uncertain whether we shall go thither). This contraction of accessory sentences is however not so frequent in German than in English. Therefore the use of Participles and Supines will be explained in a proper chapter.

CHAPTER XVII.

ACCESSORY SENTENCES.

An accessory sentence is a sentence, i. e. a combination of a subject and predicate, the whole of which merely makes part of another (the principal) sentence, being its subject or an attribute or object (§. 27). 325

Das ist der Fluch des unglücksel'gen Landes,
Wo Freiheit und Gesetz darnieder liegt,
Daß sich die Besten und die Edelsten
Verzehren müssen in fruchtlosem Harm,
Daß, die für's Vaterland am reinsten glühen,
Gebrandmarkt werden als des Land's Verräther,
Und die noch jüngst des Landes Retter hießen,
Sich flüchten müssen an des Fremden Herd. Whl.

The relation between the accessory and the principal sentences is expressed by a relative pronoun or conjunction beginning the accessory sentence, and by a particular construction, the predicate conjugated being always last (§. 187). The pronoun or conjunction is frequently omitted in English; e. g. the pleasure it gave me, instead of: the pleasure which it gave me. They sat down on the bench (which) we have mentioned. The palace was founded, (as) it is said by king John etc. This omission is not allowed in German, and in translating into German the respective conjunctions or relative pronouns must always be added; the exceptions of this rule are very limited and will be mentioned in the proper place. Here it is only to be observed, that such introductory sentences as: I hope, I know, 'tis true, you see, you know etc., may be followed by a principal sentence without a conjunction and with the construction of a principal sentence, in German as well as in English; e. g. Ich hoffe, Sie befinden sich wohl, I hope you are well. Ich gestehe, ich weiß nichts davon. Sie wissen, der Herzog ist jetzt bei Hofe. Ich glaube, mein Bruder ist krank.

The arrangement of words in an accessory sentence differs from that of a common principal sentence in the place of the verb conjugated, which in an accessory sentence takes the last place, while in a principal sentence it immediately follows the subject (§. 187); e. g. Sein Vater ist gestern angekommen (principal sentence); ich weiß, daß er gestern angekommen ist (accessory sentence). When however the predicate is a compound expression, connected with two auxiliary verbs, the regular construction of an accessory sentence would offend the laws of eurythmy; e. g. wenn er gestern ankommen können hätte; therefore the auxiliary verb conjugated is placed before the principal verb (following however all objects); e. g. Wenn er gestern hätte ankommen können. — Kann ich vergessen, wie es hätte kommen können? S. 4.

But when the auxiliary verb is easily to be understood from the context, it is usually omitted; e. g. Mir kam die Kunde zu, daß Ihr meinem Oheim übergeben worden (waret) S. 4. Was war mein Dank dafür, daß ich der Völker Fluch auf mich gebürdet (hatte), diesen Krieg, der ihn nur groß gemacht (hat), die Fürsten (hatte) zahlen lassen? S. 4.

When the subject of an accessory sentence is to be pointed out emphatically, it is placed among the objects; e. g. Sollen wir erkeiden von dem fremden Knecht, was uns in seiner Macht kein Kaiser durfte bieten? S. 4. Mir ist sichere Kunde zugekommen, daß zwischen diesen stolzen Lords und meinem Vetter nicht Alles mehr so steht wie sonst. S. 4.

- 327 An accessory sentence, being the subject, attribute, or object of a principal sentence, must be considered as standing in the place of a substantive, adjective, or adverb; e. g. it is to be complained *that he died* (his death is to be complained). A person who is ignorant of his own language (an ignorant person). He was quite well *when I saw him last* (he was quite well yesterday).

Accessory sentences, accordingly, are divided into :

Substantive accessory sentences,

Adjective accessory sentences, and

Adverbial accessory sentences.

A substantive accessory sentence is a sentence which is equivalent to an abstract substantive.

An adjective accessory sentence is a sentence, equivalent to an adjective, used either as an attribute to qualify a substantive, or as a substantive-adjective (§. 127) to express some person or thing.

An adverbial accessory sentence is a sentence, equivalent to an adverb or adverbial phrase, having the value of an adverbial object (of place, time manner, causality or co-existence).

1. Substantive accessory sentence.

A substantive accessory sentence is either *affirmative*, or *interrogative*; the former takes the conjunction daß *that*; the latter ob *if*, *whether*, or one of the interrogative pronouns; e. g. ich weiß, daß es wahr ist, I know that it is true; ich weiß nicht, ob es wahr ist, I do not know if it is true. Ich weiß nicht, wer es ist, or wo er ist, I do not know, who it is, or where he is. — Ich soll erkennen, daß mich Niemand haßt, daß Niemand mich verfolgt. G. Daß er betrogen ist, kann er nicht sehn; daß sie Betrüger sind, kann ich nicht zeigen. G. Jeder Schritt des Lebens zeigt, daß die Klugheit nöthig sei. G. Fragt Euch nur bei jedem Gedicht, ob es ein Erlebtes enthalte, und ob dies Erlebte Euch gefördert habe. G. .

When the predicate of the principal sentence governs a preposition, a demonstrative pronoun must be added which is compounded with the preposition, according to §. 143; e. g. Ich weiß nichts davon, daß er krank ist. Mein größter Vortheil bestand darin, daß die Liebe zur Stille herrschend war. G.

In *quotations* the conjunction *daß* is generally left out; the accessory sentence is constructed as a principal and its predicate is put in the conjunctive or conditional mood; e. g. *er sagt, er sei krank, he says, he is ill.*

2. Adjective accessory sentence.

- 329 Adjective sentences are connected with the principal sentence by a demonstrative pronoun in the principal, and a relative pronoun in the accessory sentence. The demonstrative pronoun in the principal sentence is frequently omitted in German as well as in English; but the relative pronoun must always be expressed in German, though it be omitted in English; e. g. the trees (which) you have planted grow very well, *die Bäume, welche ihr gepflanzt habt, wachsen sehr gut*; the first battle they fought was with two Sarazens, *die erste Schlacht, die sie lieferten, war gegen zwei Sarazenen.*

An adjective accessory sentence is either to be considered as an attribute, qualifying a substantive contained in the principal sentence, as in the examples just adduced; or it is used substantively itself, the general notion of a person or thing being understood; e. g. Handsome is *that handsome does.*

- 330 a. *Attributive adjective sentences* take the adjective relative pronoun *welcher, welche, welches, or der, die, das*, agreeing in gender and number with the substantive referred to (in the principal sentence), and taking that form (case or preposition) corresponding to its office in the accessory sentence; e. g. *der Mann, welchen (Acc. sing. masc.) ich gesehen habe; die Frau, der (Dat. sing. fem.) ich das Geld gegeben habe. Das Lied, das aus der Kühle dringt, ist Lohn, der reichlich lohnet. G.*

Gehn wir ins Gefild hervor,
Das sich stolz dem Himmel zeigt,
Der so feierlich empor
Über'm Erdenfrühling steigt. Uhl.

Menschen; die das Glück mit einem Loos überraschte, zu welchem sie keinen natürlichen Grund in ihren Handlungen finden, werden sehr leicht versucht, den nothwendigen Zusammenhang zwischen Ursache und Wirkung überhaupt zu verleinen. S. 6.

The genitive cases, *welches* and *welcher*, of the relative pronoun are not used in this way, the genitive of *der* (dessen, deren, §. 140) being always employed instead of them; e. g. *der* Wein, dessen ich bedarf; *die* Frau, deren Sohn gestorben ist; *die* Eltern, deren Kind krank ist &c.

When the substantive referred to expresses a place, 331 time, or manner, *adverbial relative pronouns* are made use of, instead of the adjective pronouns and prepositions, viz. *wo* (*in which place*; *da*, *wenn*, *als*, *in which time*, and *wie* *in which manner*; e. g. In Frankfurt ist noch das Haus zu sehen, *wo* Göthe geboren worden. Um die Zeit, *wenn* die Trauben reifen; in derselben Stunde, *als* er starb; die Art, *wie* er mich empfing. — So hab' ich nun die Stadt verlassen, *wo* ich gelehrt lange Zeit. Uhl. Kennst du das Land, *wo* die Zitronen blühen? G. O schöner Tag, *wenn* endlich der Soldat ins Leben einkehrt, in die Menschlichkeit. S. 6. Man war in Zweifel über die Art, *wie* der Krieg geführt werden sollte. S. 6.

On the other hand the demonstrative pronoun, *solch* *such*, is in German always followed by the adjective pronoun and not by the relative adverb *as*, as in English; e. g. *such* animals *as* live in the water, *solche* Thiere, die im Wasser leben. — Zeigt einen Weg mir an aus diesem Drang, hülfreiche Mächte, einen solchen zeiget mir, den ich vermag zu gehn. S. 6.

There is however in German a construction, similar to that adopted by the English Idiom, the adverbial pronoun *wie* (*as*) being employed when the demonstrative *solch* is understood; and in this case it is to be observed, that a personal pronoun must be added as subject or object of the accessory sentence; e. g. Da ward ein Angriff und ein Widerstand, *wie* ihn kein Glück-

Ich habe noch gesehen. Sch. Drauf hat er mir um den Hals und zeigte eine Nührung, wie jener kleine Dienst sie gar nicht werth war. Sch.

- 332 b. *Adjective sentences, used substantively*, take the substantive relative pronoun, *wer who*, *was what*, referring to the demonstrative pronoun *der*, *das* in the principal sentence; the personal pronoun *er he*, which is in English employed in the principal sentence (e. g. *he who lies will steal*), is not admitted in German: *Wer lügt, der stiehlt.* — *Wer nur am Regen krank gewesen, der mag durch Sonnenschein genesen.* Uhl. *Was Morgenträume mir verhießen, das machte stets der Abend wahr,* Uhl. *Wer besitzt, der lerne verlieren; wer im Glück ist, der lerne den Schmerz.* Sch.

Wer nie sein Brod mit Thränen aß,

Wer nie die kummervollen Nächte

Auf seinem Bette weinend saß,

Der kennt euch nicht, ihr himmlischen Mächte. G.

The demonstrative pronoun *der*, *that*, is frequently used instead of the relative *wer*, when the accessory sentence is placed after the principal; e. g. *Man tadelt den, der seine Thaten wägt.* G. *Wohl dem, der seiner Väter gern gedenkt.* G.

The demonstrative pronoun in the principal sentence, when in the genitive or dative case, assumes the forms:

Gen. Sing. Masc. and Neut. *dessen* Gen. Plur. *derer*

„ „ Fem. „

deren Dat. „ *denen*;

e. g. *Wer lügt, dessen Ehre ist verloren.* *Bergieb denen, die dich beleidigt haben.* *Mir liegt nichts* (I do not mind) *an der Meinung derer, die ich verachte.* When however the accessory sentence precedes the principal sentence, the gen. plur. *deren* is used instead of *derer*; e. g. *die ich verachte, an deren Meinung liegt mir nichts.*

The demonstrative pronoun in the principal sentence is frequently omitted; e. g. *Wer Pech angreift, besudelt sich.* *Prov* *Singe* (der), *wem* *Gesang* *gegeben.* Uhl. *Wer Ohren hat, (der) soll hören.* G. *Wer viel weiß, hat viel*

zu sorgen. *Pess.* Was man Berruchten thut, wird nicht gesegnet. *G.* Was nicht verboten ist, ist erlaubt. *Sch.*

The demonstrative pronoun however must be added, when there is a preposition governing it; and such contractions as: an account *of what* happened; to take notice *of what* passes, are not conformable to the German idiom; it is, moreover, to be observed, that in this case the demonstrative pronoun cannot be contracted with the preposition (*conf. §. 328*); e. g. ein Bericht über das, was sich ereignete; er sprach mit mir über das (not darüber), was er für sie zu thun gedenke. *G.* Mein Vater sagte mir wenig von dem (not davon), was er mit ihm geredet hatte. *G.* Vergebens erinnerte der Abgeordnete den Eroberer an das (not daran), was die Gerechtigkeit von ihm forderte. *Sch.*

The following accessory sentences are of the same 333 description, and take the relative *wer*, *was* (and not *welcher*).

a) Those referring to an indefinite pronoun or numeral, viz. *etwas*, *nichts*, *alles*, *eins*, *manches*, *viel*, *wenig*; e. g. Es ist nichts groß, was nicht gut ist; und es ist nichts wahr, was nicht besteht. *Claudius.* Es ist nicht alles Gold, was glänzt. *Prov.* Es ist nur eins, was uns retten kann. *Sch.* Vieles, was sie thaten, machte ihnen die Selbstvertheidigung zur Pflicht. *Sch.* Dies Haus versammelt alles, was mir theuer ist. *Sch.*

b) Those referring to the neuter of an adjective in the superlative degree; e. g. Das Beste, was ich habe. — Dem Herrlichsten, was auch der Geist empfangen, drängt immer fremder Stoff sich an. *H.* Das Beste, was man von ihm lernt, ist nicht mitzutheilen. *G.* Er preiset das Höchste, das Beste, was das Herz sich wünscht, was der Sinn begehrt. *Sch.*

c) Those referring to a personal pronoun. In this case the accessory sentence always takes the pronoun *der*, *die*, *das* (not *wer*); and when the accessory sentence refers to a pronoun of the first or second person, this pronoun is generally repeated in the ac-

cessory sentence; e. g. Sei (Du) mir willkommen, der Du mit mir gleiche Gefühle theilest. Sch. Das wissen wir, die wir die Genssen jagen. Sch. Wie veracht ich Euch, die Ihr Euch selbst und die Welt belügt. Sch. Hören sie ihn, der ein Held ist und ein Mensch zugleich. Sch. Sie wollten auch im Tode nicht von ihm lassen, der ihres Lebens Führer war. Sch.

OBSERVATION. It must be observed that, when the personal pronoun *he, they*, does not denote a certain person, but only has the value of a demonstrative pronoun, the German idiom requires a demonstrative pronoun; e. g. they who know it, die, welche es wissen. *He who escapes from death is not pardoned*, wer dem Tode entgeht, der wird nicht begnadigt.

3. Adverbial accessory sentences.

- 334 Adverbial accessory sentences express the locality, time, manner, causality, co-existence, or intensity of an action, and are connected with their principal sentence by different conjunctions according to their different meanings.

a. Adverbial accessory sentence of locality.

The principal sentence takes a demonstrative adverb of locality, and the accessory sentence a relative, as follows:

Principal sentence.

Accessory sentence.

da	wo	(rest in a place)
dahin	wohin	(motion towards a place)
daher, or von da	woher	(motion from a place).

The demonstrative adverb in the principal sentence is frequently omitted when followed by the corresponding relative, but is must be expressed, when the predicate of the accessory sentence requires a different relative; e. g. ich wohne (da), wo er wohnt. Ich gehe (dahin), wohin er geht. Ich komme (daher), woher er kommt. But: Ich wohne da, wohin Niemand kommt. Ich gehe dahin, wo er wohnt. Ich komme daher, wo er wohnt. Wo Gott eine Kirche hat, da will der Teufel eine Kapelle

haben. *Proverb.* Wo euer Schatz ist, da ist euer Herz. Das Gedeihen bleibt fern, wo Liebe fehlet und Vertrauen. Uhl. Wo rohe Kräfte sinnlos walten, da kann sich kein Gebild gestalten. Sch. Wo das Strenge mit dem Zarten, wo Starres sich und Mildestes paarten, da gibt es einen guten Klang. Sch. Die größten Schwierigkeiten liegen da, wo wir sie nicht suchen. G. Nicht überall, wo Wasser ist, sind Frösche; aber wo man Frösche hört, ist Wasser. G.

b. Adverbial accessory sentences of time.

Accessory sentences of time take the conjunctions: 335 *da, als, wenn, nachdem, seit, bis*, which denote the different relations of time, explained in Chapter XIII.

I. Point of time.

When the event, expressed in the principal sentence is, or was, *synchronous* with that expressed in the accessory sentence, the accessory sentence takes the conjunctions *als, da, or wenn*.

. The conjunctions *als* and *da**) are used, when the time of an action is to be pointed out by a *definite event in past time*; on the other hand, *wenn* is employed, when time is fixed by an indefinite past event, or by some event in present or future time. Thus, *als* (or *da*) *ich ihn fragte, gab er mir keine Antwort*, means: when I asked him (I did it once), he gave me no answer; but, *wenn ich ihn fragte, gab er mir keine Antwort*, means: whenever I asked him, he would give me no answer. The conjunction *als* is, accordingly, only used with the imperfect tense, when a single definite fact is mentioned. In all other cases *wenn* must be employed, instead of which the obsolete form *wann* is sometimes used.

The principal sentence, when placed after the accessory sentence, sometimes takes the demonstrative *da*,

*) The conjunction *da*, being generally employed to denote causality, time is more commonly expressed by *als*.

or, after wann, the corresponding dann. Als Kaiser Nothbart lobesam zum heil'gen Land gezogen kam, da muß' er mit dem frommen Heer durch ein Gebirge wüßt und leer. Uhl. Als der Wind sich erhob, da flog zerblättert die Blume. Uhl. Wann die Abendglocke hallt, da red' ich, Herr, mit dir. Uhl. Wann Blitze zucken, Donner rollt, wann Sturm erbraust im Wald, dann greift er träumend nach dem Schwert, der alte Held Harald. Uhl. Wenn die Noth am größten ist, ist Gott am nächsten. Prov. Sonst, wenn der Vater auszog, da war ein Freuen, wenn er wiederkam. Sch. Zeit ist's, die Unfälle zu beweinen, wenn sie wirklich erscheinen. Sch. Wenn die Wolken gehürmt den Himmel schwärzen, wenn dumpftosend der Donner hallt, da, da fühlen sich alle Herzen in des furchtbaren Schicksals Gewalt. Sch.

As soon as is expressed by *sobald als*, or merely *sobald*; e. g. Sobald die ersten Lerchen schwirrten, erschien ein Mädchen wunderbar; doch schnell war ihre Spur verloren, sobald das Mädchen Abschied nahm. Sch. Sobald is also employed for *no sooner* — *than*; e. g. they had no sooner left Dunkirk road, than the wind became contrary, sobald sie die Rhede von Dünkirchen verlassen hatten, wurde der Wind ungünstig. They no sooner entered the wood, than they perceived the habitations of men, sobald sie den Wald betraten, erblickten sie menschliche Wohnungen.

- 336 When the predicate of the principal sentence *precedes* or follows in time that of the accessory sentence, the conjunctions *ehe*, *before*, and *nachdem*, *after*, are employed in the same way as the corresponding conjunctions in English; the conjunction *bevor*, *before*, is obsolete. Nimm der Stunde wahr, eh' sie entschlüpft. Sch. Ehe das dritte Morgenroth scheint, hat er schnell mit dem Gatten die Schwester vereint. Sch. Nachdem sein Vater gestorben war, verkaufte er sein Haus. Der König verließ Nürnberg, nachdem er es mit einer hinlänglichen Besatzung versehen hatte. Sch.

H. Duration of time.

The conjunctions *seit* or *seitdem*, *since* *), and *bis*, *till*, are used as in English; e. g. *Seitdem der König seinen Sohn verloren, vertraut er Wenigen der Seinen mehr.* G. *Die Deutschen können erst über Literatur urtheilen, seit sie selbst eine Literatur haben.* G. *Ich will nicht eher meine Sterne loben, bis ich das Ende dieser Thaten sehe.* Sch.

The conjunction *whilst*, which denotes a co-incident duration of time, is expressed by *während*, *indef*; see §. 344.

c. Adverbial accessory sentences of manners.

Manner is expressed either by comparing one action 337 with another, or by expressing the effect of the action; e. g. *he speaks as he thinks*; or: — *he speaks so that he is never understood.*

When one action is compared with another, the accessory sentence takes the conjunction *wie*, *as*, if it is a real action; if it is not real, *als ob*, or *als wenn*, *as if*, are employed, and the latter conjunctions are followed by the conditional or conjunctive mood. The principal sentence may, in both cases take the adverb *so* (or *also*), which, however, is frequently suppressed; e. g. *Wie sich die Neigung anders wendet, also steigt und fällt des Urtheils Woge.* Sch. *So wie der Weisthau das Leben einer Kohle erfrischt, so erfrischt das Gebet die Hoffnungen des Herzens.* G. *Ich soll leben, wie ich nicht leben mag.* G. *Des Fürsten und des Volkes Rechte sind verwoben, wie sich Ulm, und Reb' umschlingen.* Uhl. *Wie man aus versunkenen Städten erhabne Götterbilder gräbt, so ist manch heilig Recht zu retten, das unter wüsten Trümmern lebt.* Uhl.

Thut, als wenn Ihr zu Hause wäret. G. *Er sieht aus, als wenn er in der Überzeugung lebe, er sei Herr.* G.

*) It must be observed, that *seit* and *seitdem* are not, like *since*, used in a causal signification.

Er sieht aus, als ob er krank sei. Er thut, als ob er unschuldig wäre.

The conjunctions *wenn*, *ob* are sometimes omitted, in consequence of which the accessory sentence must be constructed like an interrogative sentence; e. g. *er sieht aus, als sei er krank. Er thut, als wäre er unschuldig. Thut, als wäret Ihr zu Hause.*

- 338 From comparative accessory sentences of manner, expressed by *wie*, we must distinguish such sentences as express the *degree of intensity* of the principal sentence; e. g. he is *as* rich, *as* he wishes to be; he is *as* rich *as* his brother; he is richer *than* his brother. Sentences of this description take the conjunction *als* (not *wie*), when the preceding adjective is in the positive degree, as well as when it is in the comparative; e. g. *er ist so reich, als er zu sein wünscht; er ist reicher, als er weiß. Ich dachte so edel nicht, als du mich gerne glauben machen möchtest. Sch. Sie sind kränker, als Sie uns glauben machen wollen. Sch. Aristens Lob hat mich mehr ergötzt, als daß es mich beleidigt hätte. G.*

OBSERVATION. The adverb of intensity *als* (*as*, *than*) is to be distinguished from the conjunction *als*, standing after a negation. The latter answers to the English *but*; e. g. *ich habe keinen gesehen als dich*, I have seen none *but* you; *er hat nichts als Wasser getrunken*, he drank nothing *but* water.

When the accessory sentence precedes the principal one, it takes *so*, instead of *als*, and the corresponding adjective or adverb is immediately connected with *so*; e. g. *So hoch er stand, so tief war sein Fall. Sch. So wichtige Ursachen Ludwig hatte, die Neutralität zu Stande zu bringen, so triftige Gründe hatte Gustav Adolf, das Gegentheil zu wünschen. Sch.*

That relation of equal intensity which in English is expressed by two comparatives connected with *the — the* (*the more — the better*), is rendered in German by *je* in the accessory, and *desto* in the principal sentence; instead of *desto* we sometimes employ in the principal sentence also *je*; e. g. *je länger ich mit ihm*

bekannt bin, desto lieber wird er mir. Je weiter man in der Erfahrung fortrückt, desto näher kommt man dem Unerforschlichen; je mehr man die Erfahrung zu nutzen weiß, desto mehr sieht man, daß das Unerforschliche keinen praktischen Nutzen hat. G. Je länger je lieber.

The manner as well as the intensity of an action is 33^o frequently expressed by its effect; in this case the accessory sentence takes the conjunction daß, *that*, and the principal the adverb so; e. g. er spricht so, daß man ihn verstehen kann; er spricht so schnell, daß man ihn nicht verstehen kann. In English this relation is generally expressed in a peculiar way by *so — as to, such — as to —*; e. g. he was so full of thought *as* not to notice any one about him. She placed her chair in *such* a posture *as* to occupy almost the whole fire. We find no people *so* rude, *as* to be without any rules of politeness, nor any *so* polite, *as* not to have some remains of rudeness. *Franklin*. In German this construction is not allowed *); there must always be a complete accessory sentence with daß; e. g. er war so in Gedanken, daß er Niemanden bemerkte. Sie stellte ihren Stuhl so, daß sie fast das ganze Feuer in Beschlag nahm. Wir finden kein Volk so roh, daß es ohne Regeln der Höflichkeit wäre, und keins so höflich, daß es nicht einige Spuren von Rohheit hätte. So tief bin ich gefallen, bin so arm geworden, daß ich an unsre frühen Kinderjahre dich mahnen muß, daß ich dich bitten muß, die lang vergessnen Schulden abzutragen. Sch. Noch ist kein Fürst so hoch gefürstet, so ausermählt kein ird'scher Mann, daß, wenn die Welt nach Freiheit dürstet, er sie mit Freiheit tränken kann. Uhl.

If the action is too intense to have a certain effect, this is expressed by zu — als daß, and the verb stands in the conditional mood; e. g. er ist zu schwach, als daß

*) A few phrases only are of a similar construction, as: seinen Sie so gut, mir zu sagen &c. Er war so freundlich (gütig), mir den Weg zu zeigen.

er seine Vertheidigung versuchte, he is *too weak* to attempt his defence; er ist zu ehrlich, als daß er eine Unwahrheit sagen sollte, he is *too honest* to tell a lie. The accessory sentence of this description may, however, be again abridged into a supine, as in English; but then *als* is omitted, and the preposition *um* is frequently placed before the supine; e. g. zu schwach, seine Vertheidigung zu versuchen; zu redlich, um eine Unwahrheit zu reden.

d. Adverbial accessory sentences of causality.

- 340 A *real cause*, and a *motive* is expressed by *weil*, *because*, and *da*, *since*, *as*; the principal sentence, when following the accessory, sometimes takes the adverb *so*; e. g. er kann nicht gehen, weil er ein Bein gebrochen hat. Weil ich ihm getraut bis heute, will ich auch heut ihm trauen. Sch. Die Unbequemlichkeit wurde von der Jugend weniger empfunden, weil ihr etwas mehr Spielraum gelassen ward. G.

Dir blüht gewiß das schönste Glüd auf Erden, da du so fromm und heilig bist. Sch. Ich gehe getröstet weg, da ich den Vater beruhigen kann. Sch.

The *means* (§. 313), and the *argument* (§. 315) are expressed by sentences with the conjunction *daß*, *that*, preceded by the adverbial compounds: *dadurch*, *daraus*, and *darán*; e. g. Dadurch gibt Reigung sich ja kund, daß sie bewilligt aus freier Gunst, was sie auch nicht gebilligt. Sch. Daraus, daß er nicht gekommen ist, schließe ich, daß er krank ist. Den wahren Freund erkennt man daran, daß er im Unglück treu bleibt.

Conditional sentence.

- 341 *Conditional* sentences are connected with the principal sentence by *wenn*, *if*, the corresponding adverb *so* being expressed or understood in the principal sentence; e. g. wenn du heute sparst, (so) wirst du morgen keinen Mangel leiden. Wenn er schuldig ist, so muß er gestraft werden. Es wird nie etwas unternommen werden, wenn

alle möglichen Einwände erst beseitigt werden müssen. In
Gras und Blumen: lieg' ich gern, wenn eine Flöte tönt
von fern, und wenn hoch obenhin die Frühlingswolken ziehn.
Uhl. Die Glöde tönet, wenn man sie geschwungen. Uhl.
Wenn euer Gewissen rein ist, so seid ihr frei. G.

The conjunction *wenn* is frequently omitted, and the conditional sentence then assumes the construction of an interrogative sentence; e. g. sparst du heute, so ic. Ist er schuldig, so ic. The same mode of expression is admissible in English, but only when the verb of the accessory sentence is in the conditional mood; e. g. had I been in his place, I would have acted otherwise, wäre ich an seiner Stelle gewesen, so hätte ich anders gehandelt. This restriction does not take place in German.

Gibst du dem Feinde nach, so gibt er dir den Frieden;
Und gibst du dir nicht nach, so ist dir Sieg beschieden.
Rückert.

Soll der Mensch im Leibe leben,
So brauchet er sein täglich Brod;
Und soll er sich zum Geist erheben,
So ist ihm seine Freiheit noth. Uhl.
Singst du nicht dein ganzes Leben,
Sing' doch in der Jugend Drang. Uhl.

Sometimes the conditional accessory sentence is constructed like an imperative sentence, and is then connected with the principal sentence by *und*, *and*, as in English, or by *so*; e. g. Sei im Besiz, und du wohnst im Recht. Sch. Seid gerecht, seid gewissenhaft, wandelt unsträflich; so werden wir uns in der Ewigkeit wieder begegnen. Sch.

Concessive sentence.

The conjunctions *though*, *although* are expressed by 342
obgleich, ob schon, ob wol, wenn gleich, wenn auch, wenn schon. The principal sentence generally takes the conjunction *so*, and the adverb *doch*, or *dennoch*, *still*. The conjunctions *wenn schon*, *wenn gleich*, *wenn auch* are commonly separated by the subject of

the sentence, or another word taking the place of the subject; e. g. Wenn er gleich kein freundlich Gesicht macht, so sieht er es doch gern, wenn man ihn besucht. Ob schon ich weiß, daß er vor Nacht nicht kommt, vermuth' ich ihn doch jeden Augenblick. G. Obgleich man dem Feinde nur eine geringe Macht entgegenzusetzen hatte, so konnte man doch hoffen, sich zu behaupten. Sch.

The concessive, like the conditional sentences, frequently assume the form of interrogative and imperative sentences, the conjunction ob, or wenn being omitted; e. g. Ist es gleich Nacht, so leuchtet unser Reich; ist gleich die Zahl nicht voll, das Herz ist hier des ganzen Volkes; sind auch die alten Bücher nicht zur Hand, sie sind in unsre Herzen eingeschrieben. Sch. Dein Bruder sterbe oder siege, er ist verloren. G. Ein Volk, dem das geboten wird, ist schrecklich; es räche oder dulde die Behandlung. Sch.

Concessive sentences, expressed in English by *whoever, whatever, however* &c., take in German an interrogative pronoun with auch; e. g. wer er auch sei, ich fürchte ihn nicht. Wie glänzend auch die Sachsen den Feldzug eröffnet hatten, so rechtfertigte der Erfolg keineswegs die Erwartung. Sch. Wie sehr auch euer Innres widerstrebe, gehorcht der Zeit. Sch. Was er auch bringen mag, er darf den Meutern nicht in die Hände fallen. Sch.

The adverb auch is sometimes understood, and instead of wie the conjunction so is employed; e. g. Nichts zeigt sich mir, wie weit die Blicke tragen. Sch. Ich bin euch ein Dorn im Auge, so klein ich bin. G.

Purpose.

Sentences expressing a purpose, take the conjunctions damit, or, daß *that*; the verb is in the conjunctive or conditional mood; e. g. Euch künd' ich's an, damit ihr's alle wisset. Sch. Die Seeländer hatten um die Schanzgräben herum einen dichten Kordon gezogen, damit der Feind ihre Arbeit nicht stören sollte. Sch. Et was fürchten und hoffen und sorgen muß der Mensch

für den kommenden Morgen, daß er die Leere des Daseins ertrage und das ermüdende Gleichmaß der Tage. Sch.

e. Adverbial accessory sentences of co-existence.

When an object of co-existence (§. 320) is expressed ³⁴⁴ by an accessory sentence, it takes the conjunction *indem*. This conjunction is peculiar to the German language, co-existence being in English always expressed by a Gerund; as: Columbus was the eldest of four children, *having* two brothers and one sister. He took leave of me, *shaking* hands with me most kindly. I went through the streets, *eating* my roll all the way.—The Gerund (*having, shaking, eating*) has in such constructions, the value of a co-ordinate sentence (he took leave, *and* shook hands — I went *and*, at &c.), and must in German be translated by an accessory sentence with *indem*; as: Kolumbus war der älteste von vier Kindern, *indem* er zwei Brüder und eine Schwester hatte. Er nahm Abschied, *indem* er mir aufs freundlichste die Hand drückte. Ich ging die Straße hin, *indem* ich auf dem Wege meine Semmel aß. *Indem* er sich auf sie stützte, kam er die Treppe langsam herauf. G.

When not only the co-existence of two facts, but the co-incident *duration of time* is to be marked, the accessory sentence takes the conjunction *während, indeß, indessen, whilst**); e. g. Während ihn die Rache sucht, genießt er seines Frevels Frucht. Sch. Du wirst diesmal noch Dein altes Amt verwalten, *indeß* wir hier des Herrn Geschäfte treiben. Sch.

When the co-existence of some circumstance is to be denied, the accessory sentence takes *ohne daß*; e. g. es geschah, *ohne daß* ich es wußte, it happened without my knowing it. Der Zweikampf war vorüber, *ohne daß* ich etwas davon erfahren hatte. G.

*). The use of *weil* in this sense is rather obsolete; e. g. man muß das Eisen schmieden, *weil* es glüht. Proverb.

CHAPTER XVIII.

OF VERBALS, AND CONTRACTED ACCESSORY SENTENCES.

345 An important difference between the German and English languages results from their different practice in the use of participles and infinitives, the English language having adopted, from the French or Latin language, a great number of verbal constructions which are not conformable to the German idiom. A chapter has therefore been devoted to the question, when and how such verbal constructions must be transformed into accessory sentences.

In order to understand the following, it is necessary to repeat the definitions of infinitive and participle. Both of them are *Verbals*, i. e. they express actions, and are qualified or individualized by objects, like verbs; but they take at the same time the place, and have the value of *substantives or adjectives*, according as they are either subjects, or attributes, or objects. Verbals are, accordingly, either *Verbal substantives*, i. e. *Infinitives*, or *Verbal adjectives*, i. e. *Participles*, or they must be considered as *Contracted accessory sentences*.

1. *Verbal substantives*, or *Infinitives* are those which stand in the place of a substantive, being either subject of the sentence (in the nominative), or attributive substantives (in the genitive), or objects (in the accusative or genitive case); e. g. walking (subj.) is pleasant; the pleasure of walking (attr.); I am fond of walking (obj.); I like walking (obj.).

2. *Verbal adjectives*, or *Participles* are those which stand in the place of an attributive adjective *); as: the sleeping child, the dying man.

*) These two definitions are to be carefully observed; for, in English, the verbal in *ing*, which is originally a participle, is

3. A Verbal which has its proper subject, expressed or understood, must always be considered as a *contracted accessory sentence*; e. g. *our* going thither is uncertain; he recollected *his* being undressed; my wife knew *herself* to be the cause of it; they will deny *it* to be natural. In such expressions the verbal, *going, being undressed &c.*, cannot be constructed without its proper subject; thus *our going* is the subject in the first sentence, *his being undressed* is the object in the second &c., and these compound expressions, being equivalent to the accessory sentences: whether we shall go, that he was undressed &c., are termed contracted accessory sentences.

Infinitive.

The infinitive, without the preposition *zu*, is used: 346

a. as the *subject* of a sentence; e. g. *geben ist selziger, als nehmen. Vorgen macht Sorgen. Handeln ist leicht, denken schwer, nach dem Gedanken handeln unbequem. G. Frei athmen macht das Leben nicht allein. G. Vorgen ist viel besser nicht als betteln, sowie leihen nicht viel besser ist als stehlen. Vess.*

b. as an object after the following verbs only:

lehren to teach	hören to hear
lernen to learn	sehen to see
helfen to help	fühlen to feel
lassen to let, to command	finden to find
machen to make	bleiben to remain
heißen to order, to call	nennen to call.

Das Leben lehrt uns weniger mit uns und Andern streng sein. G. Ruhm und Tadel muß man ertragen lernen. G. Er hilft mir arbeiten. Ich lasse ihn arbeiten. Heiß mich nicht reden, heiß mich schweigen. G. Schnell wirst Du die

frequently employed as infinitive, as in the above examples; and the infinitive of the future tense is used as a participle, as in: a copy of a letter *to be sent* to the ladies. *Goldsm.* In German each of the verbals is only used in its proper signification.

Nothwendigkeit verschwinden, und Recht in Unrecht sich verwandeln sehn. S. Hört ich das Pfortchen nicht gehn? S. Aurora fand mich schlafen. G. Ihr macht mich zittern. S.

The infinitive is moreover used in some idiomatic expressions, as: spazieren gehn, to take a walk; spazieren fahren, reiten, to take a ride; betteln gehn, to go a begging &c.

The infinitive, when used as a subject, frequently assumes the preposition *zu* (Supine); this is generally the case, when it is accompanied by objects, and when it takes its place after the predicate; e. g. Euch zu gefallen, war mein höchster Wunsch; Euch zu ergötzen, war mein letzter Zweck. G. Es ist eine Wollust, einen großen Mann zu sehn. G. Gib's schöne Pflichten für ein edles Herz, als ein Vertheidiger der Unschuld sein, das Recht der Unterdrückten zu beschirmen? S. Wehe thut's, des Lebens kleine Zierden zu entbehren. S.

The *supine* (with *zu*) must be employed when the infinitive is an attribute or object (except after the verbs, above mentioned); e. g. die Hoffnung, ihn zu sehen (of seeing him); die Furcht, ihn zu beleidigen; die Kraft, Gutes zu thun; — ich hoffe, ihn zu sehen; ich fürchte, ihn zu beleidigen; ich vermag, Gutes zu thun. — Wer zu bereuen nicht erröthet, wird sich Reue nie ersparen. S. Es glaubt der Mensch, sein Leben zu leiten, sich selbst zu führen. G.

OBSERVATION. It has been observed already §. 278, that after those verbs which require a preposition, as: an, über, auf, this preposition must, before the supine, be compounded with the demonstrative pronoun, as: daran, darüber, darauf &c.

The supine is employed after the prepositions: ohne, without; anstatt, instead of, and um, in order to; e. g. man kann nicht leben, ohne zu athmen; anstatt zu arbeiten, geht er spazieren; er kam, um mich zu besuchen.

Participle.

347 The present and past participles are, in common dis-

course, only employed when they are not enlarged by objects, and when they have the value

a. of an attributive adjective, qualifying a substantive — or

b. of an object of co-existence (*Gerund*, §. 321); e. g. der schlafende Knabe; er lag schlafend im Gras; der zerbrochne Stab; ein gelungenes Gemälde; ich fand ihn malend; er kam weinend, erschrocken zu mir.

In more pathetic language the use of participles is not so limited; e. g. Ich zweifle nicht, daß ein Gefeg, ausdrücklich auf mich gemacht, verfaßt, mich zu verderben, sich gegen mich wird brauchen lassen. Sch. Sind sie nicht unser, diese Saaten, diese Ulmen, von Neben umspinnen? Sch. Dies alles bei mir denkend, schlief ich ein. Sch. Im schnellsten Lauf durchzog ich Frankreich, das gepriesene Italien mit heißem Wunsche suchend. Sch. But such constructions are rather poetical, and must, in common prose, be transformed into accessory sentences.

Contracted accessory sentences.

The transformation of compound verbal constructions 348 into accessory sentences has no difficulty, if the learner has been accustomed to distinguish the different grammatical relations, by which such contracted sentences are connected with the principal ones. It will, therefore, be sufficient to give some examples, arranged according to the different kinds of accessory sentences.

a. Substantive accessory sentences.

In such a sentence, as: she knew herself to be the cause of it — it is obvious that *herself to be the cause of it*, is the object of *knew*; in this compound expression we can distinguish a subject (*herself*), and a predicate (*to be the cause*), and the whole of it, having the value of a suffering object, must be transformed into a substantive accessory sentence: she knew that she was the cause of it.

Thus: I allow his sentiments to be wrong, must be translated: Ich gebe zu, daß seine Grundsätze falsch sind. If such a sentence is expressed in the passive form, as: his sentiments are allowed to be wrong, the principal sentence only, in German, is constructed in the passive form: es wird zugegeben, daß seine Grundsätze falsch sind. When the object contains a question, as: he knew not which way to go, he instructed her what to say, — it must be translated by an interrogative accessory sentence: er wußte nicht, welchen Weg er nehmen sollte; er lehrte sie, was sie sagen sollte.

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|--|--|
| She made each person in the house do just what she pleased. | Sie machte, daß Jedermann im Hause thun mußte, was ihr gefiel. |
| He recollected his being undressed. | Er erinnerte sich, daß er nicht angezogen war. |
| You will excuse my speaking to you in my native language. | Sie werden entschuldigen, daß ich zu Ihnen in meiner Muttersprache spreche. |
| I have found my liveliest pleasures to arise from illusions. | Ich habe gefunden, daß meine lebhaftesten Freuden aus Täuschungen entspringen. |
| Their union was soon found to be disagreeable. | Es fand sich bald, daß ihre Verbindung unpassend war. |
| The letter-case was quickly known to belong to Mr. B. | Es wurde bald bekannt, daß die Briefftasche Herrn B. gehörte. |
| He seemed at a loss what to say, or whither to direct his way. | Er schien in Verlegenheit, was er sagen, oder wohin er gehen sollte. |
| I hesitated which alternative to choose. | Ich zweifelte, welche Wahl ich treffen sollte. |
| I cannot tell what to think of it. | Ich kann nicht sagen, was ich davon denken soll. |

Sentences of this kind can also be governed by a substantive, or by a preposition.

<p>The recollection of his having been in danger.</p> <p>He concluded with saying &c. Jones felt more delight in having saved Sophia, than she herself received from being saved.</p>	<p>Der Gedanke, daß er in Gefahr gewesen.</p> <p>Er schloß damit, daß er sagte: c. Jonas fühlte mehr Freude darüber, daß er Sophien gerettet hatte, als sie darüber, daß sie gerettet war.</p>
---	--

b. Adjective accessory sentences.

Participles, attended by objects, are generally transformed into accessory sentences with a relative pronoun (welcher or der.) 349

EXAMPLES.

<p>The miseries, attending a youth of levity and extravagance.</p> <p>A virtuous man, struggling with misfortunes.</p> <p>The favour, shown by Mr. A. to the foundling.</p> <p>I entered a ship bound for New-York.</p>	<p>Das Elend, welches eine leichtsinnige und ausschweifende Jugend erwartet.</p> <p>Ein tugendhafter Mann, der mit Mißgeschicken kämpft.</p> <p>Die Gunst, die Herr A. dem Findling erwies.</p> <p>Ich bestieg ein Schiff, das nach Neu-York bestimmt war.</p>
---	--

This transformation, however, is only admitted, when the participle really qualifies the substantive; in all other cases it must be transformed into an adverbial accessory sentence, according to §. 350.

The infinitive passive is, used in English as an attributive participle, and must, accordingly, be transformed into an adjective sentence. As it denotes either possibility or necessity, one of the auxiliary verbs: können, sollen, or müssen must be added, or the supine of the active verb is used.

EXAMPLES.

<p>Ambition is a thing, never to be satisfied.</p>	<p>Ehrgeiz ist ein Trieb, der nie befriedigt werden kann, oder der nie zu befriedigen ist.</p>
--	--

I embraced her with an ecstacy not to be described. Ich umarmte sie mit einem Entzücken, das nicht zu beschreiben ist.]

The copy of a letter to be sent to Mr. N. Die Abschrift eines Briefes, der an Herrn N. geschickt werden soll.

c. Adverbial accessory sentences.

- 350 A contracted sentence, expressing time, manner, causality, or co-existence, is transformed into an accessory sentence with the conjunction, required in the particular case.

EXAMPLES.

This being resolved, my wife undertook to manage the business herself. Nachdem dies beschlossen war, unternahm meine Frau, das Geschäft auszuführen.

Having spent some minutes on his knees, he was preparing to step into bed— Nachdem er einige Minuten auf den Knien gelegen, wollte er zu Bette gehn.

Upon my going to church I entertained myself with— Als ich zur Kirche ging, unterhielt ich mich mit —

While very young, he was taught reading. Als er sehr jung war, hatte er Lesehülfe gelernt.

When at Boston, I had been accustomed to — Als ich in Boston war, hatte ich mich an — gewöhnt

She leaned upon his arm, as if still willing to receive assistance. Sie stützte sich auf seinen Arm, als ob sie noch Hülfe annehmen wollte.

Showing a rare capacity for business, he was appointed Lord High Commissioner. Da er eine seltene Tüchtigkeit in Geschäften zeigte, wurde er zum königlichen Bevollmächtigten ernannt.

The neighbours, hearing what was going forward, came flocking about us. Da die Nachbarn hörten, was vorging, so umringten sie uns schaarweise.

The horse was unfit for the road as wanting an eye. Das Pferd war untauglich, da es nur Ein Auge hatte.

Disguising himself in the habit of a peasant, Codrus proceeded to the quarters of the enemy.

Kodrus ging in das feindliche Lager, indem er sich als Bauer verkleidete.

My greatest struggle was to come, in facing my wife and daughters. I was determined, however, to anticipate their fury, by first falling into a passion myself. But upon entering, I found the family no way disposed for battle. My wife and girls were all in tears, Mr. Thornhill having been there to inform them, that their journey to town was entirely over. The two ladies, having heard reports of us from some malicious person, were that day set out for London.

Mein größter Kampf sollte noch kommen, wenn ich meiner Frau und meinen Töchtern begegnete. Ich war jedoch entschlossen, ihrer Wuth zuvorzukommen, indem ich selbst zuerst in Zorn gerieth. Aber als ich eintrat, fand ich die Familie keineswegs zum Kampf geneigt. Meine Frau und Töchter waren sämmtlich in Thränen, da Herr Thornhill da gewesen war, um ihnen zu sagen, daß es mit der Reise nach der Stadt aus sei. Da die zwei Damen von einem böswilligen Menschen Schlechtes von uns erfahren hatten, so waren sie den Tag nach London abgereist.

Participles, expressing co-existence, are even transformed into co-ordinate principal sentences, if the sense allows it.

EXAMPLES.

The Saracen, lifting up his sword, struck off the poor dwarf's arm; but the giant, coming to his assistance, in a short time left the two Saracens dead on the plain.

Der Sarazene schwang sein Schwert und hieb dem armen Zwerg den Arm ab; aber der Riese kam ihm zu Hülfe und ließ bald die zwei Saracenen todt auf dem Schlachtfeld.

CHAPTER XIX.

CO-ORDINATION.

351 When two sentences, though not dependent one upon the other, are connected in such a way as to express only one thought, they are termed *Co-ordinate sentences*. The different relations of Co-ordination are denoted by Co-ordinative conjunctions, the use of which must be explained in this chapter. But as most of them are employed and constructed in a manner entirely analogous to the English, it will be sufficient to mark only the difference between the two languages.

The adversative conjunctions *aber*, *allein*, *sondern*, and *hingegen*, though rendered in English by the same conjunction, *but*, differ one from another. *Aber* denotes the limitation of an antecedent by the consequent in the most indefinite way, and implies only that the consequent is *different* from what is comprehended or supposed to be comprehended in the antecedent; e. g. Die Sinne trügen nicht, aber das Urtheil trügt. G. Der Haß ist partiell, aber die Liebe noch mehr. Less. Der Schwärmer thut oft sehr richtige Blicke in die Zukunft; aber er kann diese Zukunft nur nicht erwarten. Less. Niemand weiß, was er thut, wenn er recht handelt; aber des Unrechtes sind wir uns immer bewußt. G. Heilig achten wir die Geister, aber Namen sind uns Dunst; würdig ehren wir die Meister, aber frei ist uns die Kunst. Uhl.

Allein and *doch* limit the antecedent by expressing a *negation* of what might be inferred or concluded from the antecedent; e. g. er ist sehr reich (und könnte wol Gutes thun); allein er ist geizig. Er will deutsch lernen, allein er findet keinen Lehrer. Das was geschehen ist, kränkt mich nicht so tief; allein das kränkt mich, was es nur bedeutet. G. Gern erkenn' ich an, Du willst mein Wohl; allein verlange nicht, daß ich auf Deinem

Weg es finden soll. Sch. Der Krieg ist schrecklich, wie des Himmels Magen; doch er ist gut, ist ein Geschick, wie sie. Sch. Leicht bei einander wohnen die Gedanken, doch hart im Raume stoßen sich die Sachen. Sch. Der Deutsche ehrt in allen Zeiten der Fürsten heiligen Beruf; doch liebt er frei einherzuschreiten, und aufrecht, wie ihn Gott erschuf. Uhl.

Aber may always be employed instead of *allein* and *doch*, but not *vice versa*.

Hingegen and dagegen denote a contrast of two thoughts which, however, do not limit or contradict each other; jedoch and indessen are employed like the English *however*; e. g. Der Poet vergeudet die ihm verliehene Gabe im Genuß, um Genuß hervorzubringen; der Prophet hingegen sieht nur auf einen einzigen bestimmten Zweck. G. Antonio geht frei umher, und spricht mit seinem Fürsten; Tasso bleibt dagegen verbannt in seinem Zimmer und allein. G.

The conjunction *sondern* requires particular attention, being peculiar to the German language. *Sondern* is only employed, when the consequent sentence asserts in a positive way, what was expressed in a negative way in the antecedent; e. g. er ist nicht ein Engländer, sondern ein Franzose. Ich habe nicht geschlafen, sondern gearbeitet. Sie wagten sich nicht in die Nähe des Feindes, sondern kehrten unverrichteter Sachen zurück. Sch. 352

The above definition shows, that *sondern* must always be preceded by a negative sentence, but a negative sentence is not always followed by *sondern*; for we say, e. g. er ist kein Engländer, aber er spricht englisch; ich habe nicht geschlafen, und doch bin ich müde, because in these examples the consequent sentence contains something entirely different from the antecedent.

The conjunctions *doch* and *dennoch* are used to express by way of co-ordination, what is denoted by *obgleich* i. e., *though*, and an accessory sentence (§. 319), viz. that some effect is not in conformity, but in oppo- 353

sition to a cause or motive. When the consequent sentence contains the cause or motive, it takes *doch*, which is then unaccented and has the place of an adverb; but when the consequent contains the effect, it takes *dennoch*. In the latter case *doch* may also be employed, but it is accentuated and generally takes the first place. Thus the sentences: he was in the company, though he had not been invited; he mistrusts me, though I gave him proofs of my affection, can be translated in two different ways: *er war in der Gesellschaft, und war doch nicht eingeladen*; or: *er war nicht eingeladen, und dennoch (doch) kam er in die Gesellschaft. Er trauet mir nicht, und ich habe ihm doch Beweise meiner Freundschaft gegeben*; or: *ich habe ihm Beweise meiner Freundschaft gegeben, und dennoch traut er mir nicht.*

OBSERVATION. *Doch* is employed in an elliptical way, when the speaker passes over to another object; e.g. *man könnte über diese Sache viel sagen, doch, das gehört nicht hierher*, or *doch laßt uns von etwas Anderm reden.* — *Doch* has the same adverbative signification in many expressions, in which it is rather an adverb of modality than a conjunction, implying a more intense way of affirming or asking; in these cases it cannot be translated into English; e.g. *er geht doch (accented) mit uns*, he *does* go with us. *Ihr eilet ja, als wenn ihr Flügel hättet, wartet doch. Eh. Wartet Ihr doch sonst so froh. Eh. Das ist doch seltsam. Eh.*

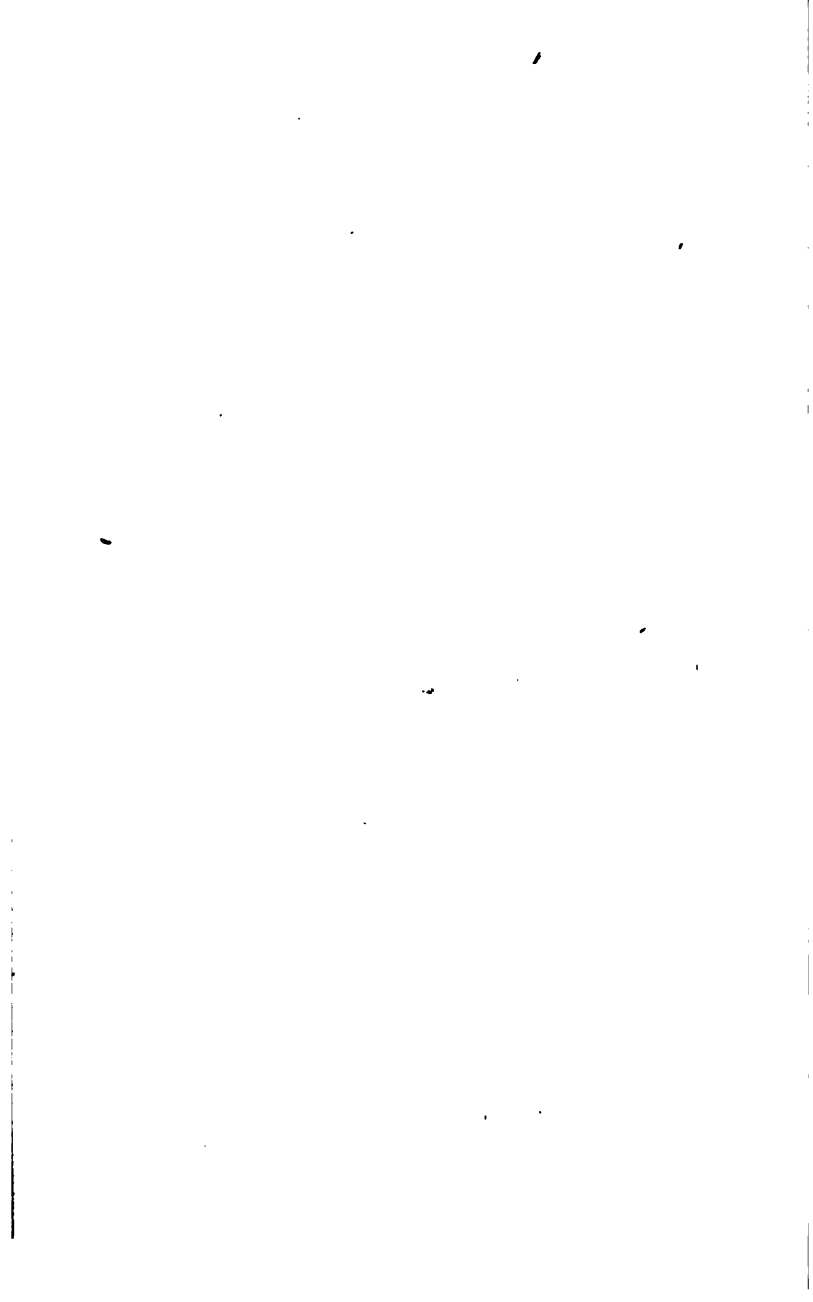
Sonst and *es sei denn, daß* (with the conjunctive) denote a conditional negation, like, *else* and *unless*. They must be distinguished like *doch* and *dennoch*; e.g. *Du mußt sparen; sonst wirst du darben.* — *Du wirst darben, es sei denn, daß du sparest. Das Wahre muß gleich genutzt werden, sonst ist es nicht da. G.* Instead of *es sei denn, daß*, which expression is not very usual, the adverb *denn* is also employed; e.g. *Niemand soll lange Reden komponiren, um die Leute zu beschämen; er müßte sie denn vor dem Spiegel halten wollen. G.*

- 354 The causal conjunctions *denn*, *for*; *also*, *folglich*, *accordingly*, *consequently*; *daher*, *therefore*; *deswegen*, *deshalb*, *on account of that*; *darum*, *for that purpose*; *dennach* *accordingly* etc., are employed like the corresponding

ones in English; e. g. Das Glück der Erde miß ich gerne; denn über mir in weiter Ferne hat sich der Himmel aufgethan. Uhl. Vorwärts mußt Du; denn rückwärts kannst Du nun nicht mehr. Sch. Sei ein Freund der Fremden und Reisenden; denn sie sind als Mittel eines guten Rufes zu betrachten. G. Der Deutsche hat Freiheit der Gesinnung, und daher merkt er nicht, wenn es ihm an Geschmacksfreiheit fehlt. G. Die größte Wahrscheinlichkeit der Erfüllung läßt noch einen Zweifel zu; daher ist das Gehoffte, wenn es in die Wirklichkeit tritt, jederzeit überraschend. G. Der Haß ist ein aktives Mißvergnügen, der Neid ein passives; deshalb darf man sich nicht wundern, wenn der Neid so schnell in Haß übergeht.

F I N I S.





I N D E X.

A.

- Über §. 182.
- Abstract substantives §. 38.
- Accessory sentences §. 27, 325.
- — — their construction §. 187, 326.
- — — their different kinds §. 327.
- Accusative case §. 260.
- — — governed by prepositions §. 176.
- — — by verbs and adjectives §. 260, 276.
- — — expressive of the factitive relation §. 282.
- — — of time §. 302, 306.
- Adjective-pronouns §. 137.
- sentences §. 234, 327, 329.
- — — used subst. §. 332.
- Adjectives §. 24, 40, 127.
- their comparison §. 135.
- their declension §. 129.
- governing the accusative §. 276.
- — — the dative §. 269.
- — — the genitive §. 275.
- attributive §. 235.
- primary derivative §. 51.
- secondary — §. 53, 56.
- standing after substantives §. 236.
- used substantively §. 133.

- Adverbs §. 25, 41, 48, 166.
- of frequency §. 173.
- of intensity §. 172.
- of manner §. 167, 309.
- of mood §. 174.
- of locality §. 169, 297.
- of time §. 170, 307.
- of causality §. 171.
- used as predicate §. 201.
- their comparison §. 167.
- Adverbial objects §. 247.
- pronouns §. 137.
- sentences §. 327, 334.
- — — causal §. 340.
- — — comparative §. 337.
- Adverb. sentences concessive §. 342.
- — — conditional §. 341.
- — — of manner §. 337.
- — — of locality §. 334.
- — — of time §. 335.
- Affixes §. 53.
- The affix bar §. 57.
- — — en „ 54.
- — — e „ 55.
- — — ei „ 55.
- — — en „ 57.
- — — er „ 54.
- — — ig, iſt „ 57.
- — — in „ 54.
- — — iſſ „ 57.

The affix *haft* §. 57.
 — — *bett* (*teit*) „ 55.
 — — *lein* „ 54.
 — — *lich* „ 57.
 — — *ling* „ 54.
 — — *nist* „ 55.
 — — *sal* „ 55.
 — — *sam* „ 57.
 — — *schaft* „ 55.
 — — *sel* „ 55.
 — — *stum* „ 55.
 — — *ung* „ 56.
Al all §. 161.
Al every §. 162.
Allein, conjunction §. 351.
 — in construction §. 188.
Als §. 180.
 — (*as*) §. 180.
 — expressive of the factitive relation (*as*) §. 286.
 — (*when*) §. 335.
 — (*than*) §. 338.
 — (*but*) §. 338.
Als *daß* §. 339.
 • *Als* *ob*, *als* *wenn* §. 337.
Also manner §. 337.
Am with the superlative §. 167.
An §. 175.
 — expressive of the genitive relation §. 277.
 — — of the argument §. 315.
 — — of manner §. 310.
And §. 165.
Anderthalb §. 159.
Any §. 155.
 Ancient form of conjugation §. 69, 78.
 — — of declension §. 110.
 — — of the inflection of adjectives §. 129.
 — — of primary substantives §. 32, 33.
 Apposition §. 237.
 Articles definite and indefinite §. 43.
 — their declension §. 140.
 — their use §. 119.
As §. 338, 340.
 + such as §. 331.

As much more §. 163. Obs.
 As soon as §. 335.
 Attribute §. 24, 233.
 — — expr. by prepos. §. 244.
 — — in the genitive case §. 239.
 Attributive accessory sentence §. 27, 330.
 — — combination §. 233.
Auf §. 277. loc. 294, 295.
 — expressive of the genitive relation §. 277.
 — — — of manner §. 310.
 — with the superlative §. 167.
 Augment (*ge*) in derivation §. 151.
 — in the past participle §. 71, 90.
Aus loc. §. 291.
 — expressive of materials §. 314.
 — — motive §. 316.
 — — argument §. 315.
Ausgenommen §. 322.
 Auxiliary verbs §. 24, 42.
 — — of mood §. 32.
 — — of tenses, conjugated §. 75.
 — — omitted §. 76.
 — — for the perfect and pluperfect tenses of intransitive verbs §. 91.

B.

Bald §. 307.
Be prefix §. 261.
Bei coexist. §. 323.
 — local. §. 293, 294, time 303.
Beide §. 164.
Bevor §. 336.
Binnen time §. 302.
Bis, prep. §. 306.
 — conj. §. 336.

C.

Cardinal numerals §. 157.
 Cases §. 26.
 Causative verbs §. 260.
 Causal sentences §. 340.
 Causality §. 311.
 Change of the radical vowel §. 51.

- Change of the radical vowel in conjugation §. 69.
 Co-existence §. 254, 320.
 — access. sentence of §. 344.
 Collective nouns §. 38.
 — their formation §. 55.
 Common names §. 38.
 Comparative degree of adjectives §. 137.
 — — — of adverbs §. 167.
 — sentences §. 337, 338.
 Comparison of adjectives §. 135.
 — — — irregular §. 136.
 — of adverbs §. 167.
 Completing objects §. 247.
 Composition §. 58.
 Compound sentences §. 27.
 — tenses §. 75.
 — verbs, separable and inseparable §. 59.
 — nouns §. 59.
 — adjectives §. 60.
 — verbs §. 61.
 Concessive sentences §. 342.
 Concrete nouns §. 38.
 Conditional mood §. 34.
 — — its use §. 226.
 — sentences §. 341.
 Conjugation §. 66.
 — ancient and modern §. 69.
 — ancient §. 78—90.
 — irregular §. 88.
 Conjunctions §. 28, 47, 178.
 — adversative §. 182.
 — causal §. 182.
 — co-ordinative §. 181.
 — copulative §. 182.
 — subordinative §. 179.
 Conjunctional adverbs §. 181.
 Conjunctive mood §. 34.
 — — — its use §. 228, 231.
 Consonants §. 7.
 — doubled §. 5.
 — final §. 9.
 Construction §. 185.
 — direct and inverted §. 187, 188.
 Construction of accessory sentences §. 187, 326.
 — of the objective combination §. 256.
 Contracted sentences §. 28, 324.
 Co-ordination §. 28, 324—351.
 Co-ordinative conjunctions §. 181.
 Copula §. 42, 184.
 Copulative conjunctions §. 182.
- D.**
- Da, adverb §. 169, 170.
 — conjunction of time §. 335.
 — — cause 340.
 Dagegen §. 351.
 Daher §. 354.
 Damit §. 343.
 Dann §. 170.
 Daran, dabei u. §. 142.
 Darum §. 354.
 Daß §. 149.
 Daß §. 328, 340, 343.
 — omitted §. 328.
 Dative case §. 264.
 — — of the possessor §. 271.
 — — expressed by prepositions §. 272.
 Declension of nouns §. 110.
 — of articles §. 110, 140.
 — of cardinal numerals §. 158.
 — of der, die, das §. 140.
 — of derjenige and derselbe §. 126.
 — of foreign substantives §. 112.
 — of indefinite numerals §. 160.
 — of pronouns §. 138—141.
 — — — demonstrative §. 160, 127.
 — — — indefinite §. 155.
 — — — personal §. 138.
 — — — possessive §. 139.
 — of proper names §. 118.
 — of substantives §. 110.
 — — — ancient and modern §. 110.
 — of welcher §. 141.
 — of wer and was §. 141.

Definite article. See *Article*.

— numerals §. 157.

Demonstrative pronouns §. 140, 147.

Denn §. 354.

Dennoch §. 353.

Der, die, das, article §. 119.

— — — demonstrative pronoun noun §. 149.

— — — relative pronoun §. 151, 330, 332.

— — — their respective declension. See *Declension*.

Derivation §. 50.

— of verbs §. 52.

— of words §. 50.

Derjenige, declined §. 140.

— *welcher* he who §. 151.

Derivatives, primary §. 50.

— secondary §. 50.

Derselbe §. 151.

Deßhalb §. 354.

Desto §. 338.

Deßwegen §. 354.

Dies §. 148.

Dieser §. 148.

Dimidiative numerals §. 159.

Diminutives §. 154.

Diphthongs §. 2.

Direct construction §. 187.

Doch §. 342, 351, 353.

Dort §. 169.

Double consonants §. 17.

Draußen, droben, drunten §. 69.

Duration of time §. 306.

Durch loc. §. 294.

— as a prefix §. 63.

— expressive of means §. 313.

Dürfen its use §. 215, 219.

— its conjugation §. 883.

E.

Ê, the vowel, dropped in the signs of conjugation §. 74.

— — — — of declension §. 111.

Each §. 162.

Each other §. 145.

Ê §. 336.

Ein, article §. 30.

— indefinite pronoun §. 155.

— numeral §. 157.

Einander each other §. 145.

Einige some §. 162.

Einer von beiden §. 164.

Einmal, einß §. 307.

Either §. 164.

Endlich §. 154.

Entlang §. 177.

Entweder—oder §. 155.

Es §. 138, 143.

— used as predicate §. 301.

Êtliche §. 136.

Êtwa §. 165.

Êtwas §. 155, 162.

Every §. 162.

Every body §. 155.

F.

Factitive object §. 252, 280.

Folglich §. 354.

For Prepos. §. 175. Conjunct. 182.

Foreign substantives, their declension §. 112.

— — their gender §. 109.

Fractional numerals §. 159.

Frequentative substantives §. 55.

From §. 175.

Für purpose §. 317. 272. 285.

Future tense 72, 76. its use §. 221.

G.

Geben, es gibt there are §. 211.

Gegen towards §. 272. about, time 302. against 319.

— against §. 319.

Gemäß §. 177.

Gender of substantives §. 97.

— of foreign nouns §. 109.

— of names of countries and places, seasons, months and days §. 96 *Note*.

Genitive, adverbial §. 310 *Obs.*
 — attributive §. 239.
 — — its construction §. 243.
 — — expressed by prepositions §. 277.
 — of manner §. 310.
 — objective §. 251, 274.
 — predicative §. 198.
 — of time §. 302.
 Gern §. 168, 216.
 — its comparative and superlative §. 168.
 Gerund §. 320, 321.

H.

Haben §. 68.
 — its conjugation §. 75.
 — its use with intransitive verbs §. 91.
 — omitted §. 76.
 Halb §. 159.
 Halben §. 177.
 He, who §. 151, 333.
 Her, hin §. 169.
 — — — and their compounds §. 297.
 Hieran, hierbei &c. §. 142.
 Hinter §. 294.
 — as a prefix §. 62.
 Historical tenses §. 222.
 Höchst §. 136, 172.
 Höchstens §. 172.

I.

Imperative mood §. 66, 70.
 — — — its termination dropped in the singular §. 79.
 — — — its use §. 231.
 Imperfect tense §. 66.
 — — — in the ancient and in the modern form §. 69.
 — — — its use §. 223.
 Impersonal verbs §. 209.
 In loc. 293. time §. 301, 305, 306.
 — expressive of the factitive relation §. 284.

In, coexist §. 323.
 Indem
 Indes, indessen } §. 344.
 Innerhalb §. 177 time §. 302.
 Indefinite article. See *Article*.
 — numerals §. 160.
 — pronouns §. 155.
 Indicative mood §. 34, 66.
 — — — its use §. 226.
 Infinitive §. 67.
 — its use §. 346.
 — instead of the past participle §. 90.
 — substantive-infinitives §. 56.
 — with zu. See *Suptnc*.
 Inseparable compound verbs §. 62.
 Interjections §. 49.
 Interrogative pronouns. See *Pronouns*.
 — — sentences §. 213.
 Intransitive verbs §. 37.
 Inverted construction. See *Construction*. §. 208.
 Je, jemals §. 70.
 Je—desto §. 338.
 Jeder §. 162.
 Jedweder §. 160 *Note*.
 Jedermann §. 155.
 Jeglicher §. 160 *Note*.
 Jemand §. 155.
 Jener §. 127.
 Jenseits §. 177.
 Jetzt §. 170.

K.

Keiner §. 160, 165.
 Können its use §. 215.
 — its conjugation §. 88.
 Kraft prep. §. 177.
 Kürzlich §. 170.

L.

Länge §. 177.
 Längst §. 170.
 Lassen §. 218.
 Laut prep. §. 318.

Zeute \$. 125 *Oss.* 1.
 Little (quantity) \$. 163.
 Locality \$. 290.

M.

Man one indefinite \$. 156.
 Manche some \$. 162.
 Manner, adverbs of \$. 309.
 — object of \$. 309.
 Many \$. 163.
 Mehr more \$. 163.
 Mehrere several \$. 163.
 Mit \$. 63.
 Mit Dat. \$. 272..
 — coexist \$. 323.
 — expressive of the genitive relation \$. 278.
 — — — of manner \$. 310.
 Modality of the predicate \$. 213.
 Modified vowels \$. 2.
 — — in comparison \$. 185.
 — — in conjugation \$. 70, 86.
 — — in declension of nouns \$. 111, 116.
 — — in derivation \$. 53.
 Mögen its use \$. 215, 219.
 — its conjugation \$. 88.
 Mood \$. 34, 66.
 Moods, their use \$. 226.
 Much \$. 163.
 Multiplicative numerals \$. 159.
 Müssen its use \$. 217, 219.
 — its conjugation \$. 88.

N.

Nach Gen. \$. 277. local. \$. 293.
 — time \$. 305.
 — manner \$. 310.
 — according to \$. 318.
 Nachdem \$. 336.
 Nächst \$. 177.
 Names of materials \$. 38.
 — of measure after numerals \$. 126.
 — of nations \$. 54.
 Neben \$. 177.
 Nebst \$. 177.

Negative sentence \$. 213.
 Neulich \$. 170.
 Nichts \$. 155.
 Niemand \$. 155.
 Noth \$. 307.
 Nominative case \$. 130.
 — — expressive of the factitive relation \$. 282.
 None \$. 165.
 Notions and notional words \$. 23.
 Nouns \$. 22. their kinds \$. 38.
 — primary derivative \$. 51.
 — secondary derivative \$. 53.
 — their gender \$. 97.
 — — declension \$. 110.
 Numerals \$. 46, 157.

O.

Ob, conjunction \$. 328.
 Oberhalb \$. 169.
 Obgleich, obgleich, obwohl \$. 342.
 Objective combination \$. 25, 246.
 — — — its construction \$. 256.
 — — — accessory sentence \$. 27.
 — — — verbs and adjectives \$. 36, 247.
 Of \$. 175.
 — when to be translated by von, and when by the genitive case \$. 239, 240, 241.
 — is not translated \$. 238, 242.
 Ohne \$. 310, 323.
 — with the supine \$. 323.
 — daß \$. 344.
 On \$. 175.
 One, numeral \$. 158.
 — indefinite pronoun \$. 156.
 Ordinal numerals \$. 157.
 Other \$. 165.

P.

Paar (ein), a pair, a few \$. 242.
 Participles \$. 67.
 — their construction \$. 347.
 Partitive genitive \$. 241.
 Passive voice its formation. \$. 77.
 — — its use \$. 203.

Past participle, its formation §. 69.
 — — — with the augment *ge*,
 and without it §. 71.
 — tenses, their use §. 221.
 Perfect, its use §. 224.
 Personal object §. 250, 264.
 — pronouns §. 143.
 — — contracted with *wegen* §.
 177.
 Plural number of nouns §. 124.
 Point of time §. 301.
 Possessive pronouns §. 146.
 Predicate §. 21, 184, 194.
 Predicative adjective §. 124.
 — combination §. 24.
 — genitive §. 195, 198.
 Prefixes §. 62, 63.
 Prepositions §. 46, 175.
 — before the supine §. 346.
 — cases governed by them §.
 175, 176.
 — contracted with the definite
 article §. 175.
 — — with pronouns §. 142.
 — expressive of the predicative
 relation §. 200.
 — — of the attributive relation
 (after substantives) §. 244.
 Present tense, its use §. 221.
 Primary derivatives, nouns and
 adjectives §. 51.
 Principal sentences §. 127.
 — — their construction §. 187.
 Pronouns §. 44, 137.
 — demonstrative §. 140, 147.
 — indefinite §. 155.
 — interrogative §. 141, 153.
 — personal §. 138, 142.
 — possessive §. 139, 146.
 — reflective §. 144.
 — relative §. 151.
 — contracted with prepositions §.
 142.
 — in construction §. 259.
 — their inflection. See *Declen-
 sion*.
 Proper names §. 28.

Proper names their declension §.
 118.
 — — of countries and places,
 their gender §. 98.
 — — — — in apposition to
 their common names §. 238.

R.

Reflective pronouns §. 144.
 — verbs §. 205.
 Reiterative numerals §. 159.
 Relations and relational words §.
 23.
 — of mood §. 34.
 — of notions one to another §. 24.
 — to the speaker §. 29, 33.
 — of number §. 30.
 — of personality §. 29.
 — of time §. 31.
 — of limitation §. 30.
 — of modality §. 33.
 Relative pronouns §. 151.
 — — not omitted in German §.
 329.
 Roots §. 50.

S.

Same §. 151.
Sammt §. 177.
Schon §. 307.
 Secondary adjectives §. 57.
 Secondary derivatives §. 52.
 — substantives §. 53–56.
 — — their gender §. 97.
Sein, to be §. 24.
 — its conjugation §. 75.
 — its use in the conjugation of
 intransitive verbs §. 91.
 — its use with the supine §. 76.
Seit, preposition §. 306.
 — conjunction *seitdem* §. 336.
Selbst §. 144.
 Sentence §. 21.
 — accessory §. 324.
 Separable compound verbs §. 64.
 — — — in construction §. 205

Several §. 163.
 Sich §. 144.
 Simple tenses §. 69.
 So, demonstrative adverb §. 337.
 — adverb of intensity (*so*). §. 338.
 — conjunction §. 340, 341, 342.
 So—als, as—as §. 338.
 So—daß, so—as §. 339.
 Sowol—als §. 154.
 So, when used as predicate §. 201.
 Sobald als §. 335.
 Solcher §. 150.
 Sollen its use §. 217, 219.
 — its conjugation §. 88.
 Some §. 163.
 Sondern §. 352.
 Sost, time §. 307. else §. 353.
 Statt §. 177.
 Stehen, used as copula §. 200.
 Subject of the sentence §. 21, 184.
 — — — expressed by an infinitive or by a supine §. 346.
 — — — omitted §. 159.
 Subjective accessory sentence §. 27.
 — — verbs §. 36, 247.
 Subordination of the accessory sentence §. 27.
 — of the objective factors in construction §. 258.
 Subordinative conjunctions §. 179.
 Substantive-infinitives §. 56.
 — pronouns §. 137.
 — sentences §. 327, 328.
 — adjective §. 127.
 Substantives in apposition §. 237.
 — their declension. See *Declension*.
 — of two forms of the plural number §. 117.
 — of two genders §. 107.
 — used only in the plural number §. 125.
 — — — singular number §. 124.
 Such §. 150.
 — is not used as predicate §. 201.
 — as §. 152.

Suffering object §. 249, 260.
 Superlative of adjectives §. 135.
 — of adverbs §. 167.
 — used predicatively §. 197, 160.
 Supine §. 67.
 — after *ohne* §. 323.
 — after verbs expressing knowledge or opinion etc. §. 289.
 — in construction §. 190.
 — its use §. 346.
 — with *haben* and *sein* §. 67.

T.

Tenses §. 66.
 — compound §. 76.
 — their use §. 221.
 There is es gibt §. 211.
 Time, obj. of §. 300.
 Titles, their declension §. 238.
 To §. 175.
 Too—to §. 339.
 Transitive verb §. 37, 202, 260.
 Troß §. 319.

U.

Ueber loc. §. 294.
 — as a prefix §. 63.
 — as a preposition of time §. 305.
 — expressive of cause §. 312.
 — — of the genitive relation §. 277.
 Um Gen. §. 277. loc. §. 294.
 — as a prefix §. 63.
 — as a preposition of time §. 301, 302.
 — with the supine §. 346.
 Um—wollen §. 316.
 — — contracted with personal pronouns §. 177.
 Un in composition §. 59. 60.
 Ungeachtet §. 319.
 Unter loc. §. 294. time 303.
 — as a prefix §. 63.
 — coexist §. 323.
 Unterhalb §. 177.
 Unweit §. 177.

V.

- Variative numerals §. 159.
 Verbs §. 22, 65.
 — auxiliary. See *Auxiliary verbs*.
 — causative §. 260.
 — derivative §. 52.
 — governing the accusative §. 260.
 — — the dative §. 264.
 — — the genitive §. 275.
 — impersonal §. 209.
 — inseparable compound §. 62, 63.
 — intransitive §. 37.
 — radical §. 50.
 — reflective §. 205.
 — relational §. 42.
 — separable compound §. 64.
 — transitive §. 37.
 — nouns §. 56.
 Verbals §. 345.
 Verbal Nouns §. 56.
 Vermittelt §. 313.
 Vermöge §. 318.
 Viel much, many §. 163.
 Vielleicht §. 174.
 Voll as a prefix §. 62.
 Von §. 175.
 — locality §. 291.
 — cause §. 312, 315.
 — materials §. 314.
 — expressive of the predicative relation §. 199.
 — — of the attributive relation §. 240, 241.
 — — of the objective genitive relation §. 277.
 — with the passive voice §. 273.
 Vor 175. loc. §. 294. Gen. §. 277.
 — time §. 304.
 — cause §. 312.
 Vowels §. 2.
 — changed §. 69, 78.
 — dropped §. 74.
 — long and short §. 4.
 — modified. §. 2.

W.

- Während, preposition §. 303.
 — conjunction §. 344.
 Wann §. 335.
 Was §. 153.
 — its declension §. 141.
 — — use §. 332.
 Was für Einer §. 154.
 Wegen contracted with personal pronouns §. 17.
 — expressive of motive §. 316.
 — — cause §. 312.
 Weil §. 340.
 — expressive of time §. 344 Note.
 Welcher §. 151.
 — in adjective sentences §. 151, 152, 329.
 Welch einer §. 154.
 Wenig, weniger few, little §. 163.
 Wenigstens §. 172.
 Wenn time §. 335.
 — condit. §. 341.
 — omitted §. 341.
 Wenn auch, wenn gleich, wenn schon §. 342.
 Wer, its declension §. 141.
 — its use in adjective sentences §. 332.
 — der he who §. 152.
 — auch whoever §. 342.
 Werden §. 76.
 — its conjugation §. 77.
 — its use in the formation of the future tenses §. 76.
 — — — of the passive voice §. 77.
 Whole §. 161.
 Wider §. 319.
 — as a prefix §. 63.
 Wie like §. 310.
 — in comparative adverbial sentences §. 337.
 Wissen, its conjugation §. 89.
 Wo §. 334.
 Wohel, worin ic. §. 142.
 Woher and wohin §. 334.
 Wol §. 219.
 Wollen its use §. 217, 219.

Wollen its conjugation §. 86.
Words, notional and relational §. 32.
 — derivative §. 50.
 — foreign. See *Foreign words*.

Z.

Zu, adverb of intensity (*too*) §. 339.
 — preposition, local. §. 293, 295.
 — time 301.

Zu, manner §. 310.
 — purpose §. 317.
 — — as sign of the supine §. 67.
 — — expressive of the factitive relation §. 283.
 — — of manner §. 310.
Zufolge §. 318.
Zwider §. 319.
Zwischen §. 294.



In **Joh. Christ. Hermann's** library (proprietor **F. E. Suchsland**) in Frankfort o/M. is published:

Becker, Bernhard, Oberlehrer an der höhern Bürgerschule zu Oldenburg. Leitsfaden für den ersten Unterricht in der Geometrie. Nebst einer Messtafel in Steindruck. kl. 8°. (4½ Bogen.) 1845. geb. ½ rthlr.

Jansen, William, practical mercantile correspondence with german notes and an appendix containing forms of invoices, bills of lating etc. and abbreviations and explaining mercantile technicalities. gr. 12°. (12 Bogen.) 1842. 1 rthlr.

Kirchner, Dr. K. M., evangelisch-lutherischer Stadtprediger in Frankfurt a. M. Ich weiss an wen ich glaube. Stimmen des Lebens in evangelischen Liedern. Mit 1 Stahlstich. gr. 12°. (8½ Bogen.) broch. 1843. ½ rthlr.

Kunstsymbolik, christliche und Ikonographie. Ein Versuch die Deutung und ein besseres Verständniss der kirchlichen Bilderwerke des Mittelalters zu erleichtern. gr. 8°. (16½ Bogen.) 1839. 1½ rthlr.

Literatur-Zeitung, landwirthschaftliche. Eine Monatschrift. Nach dem Beschlusse der fünften Versammlung der deutschen Landwirthe zu Doberan, begründet und herausgegeben von L. H. Fischer, Dr. der Rechte, Grossherz. Oldenb. Staatsrath und Regierungs-Präsidenten, Ritter etc.; unter der verantwortlichen Redaction von L. W. Fischer, Obergerichtsanwalt. Erster (1842), zweiter (1843), dritter (1844), vierter (1845) Jahrgang. gr. 8°. In Umschlag. Preis des Jahrgangs von 12 Heften. 6 rthlr.

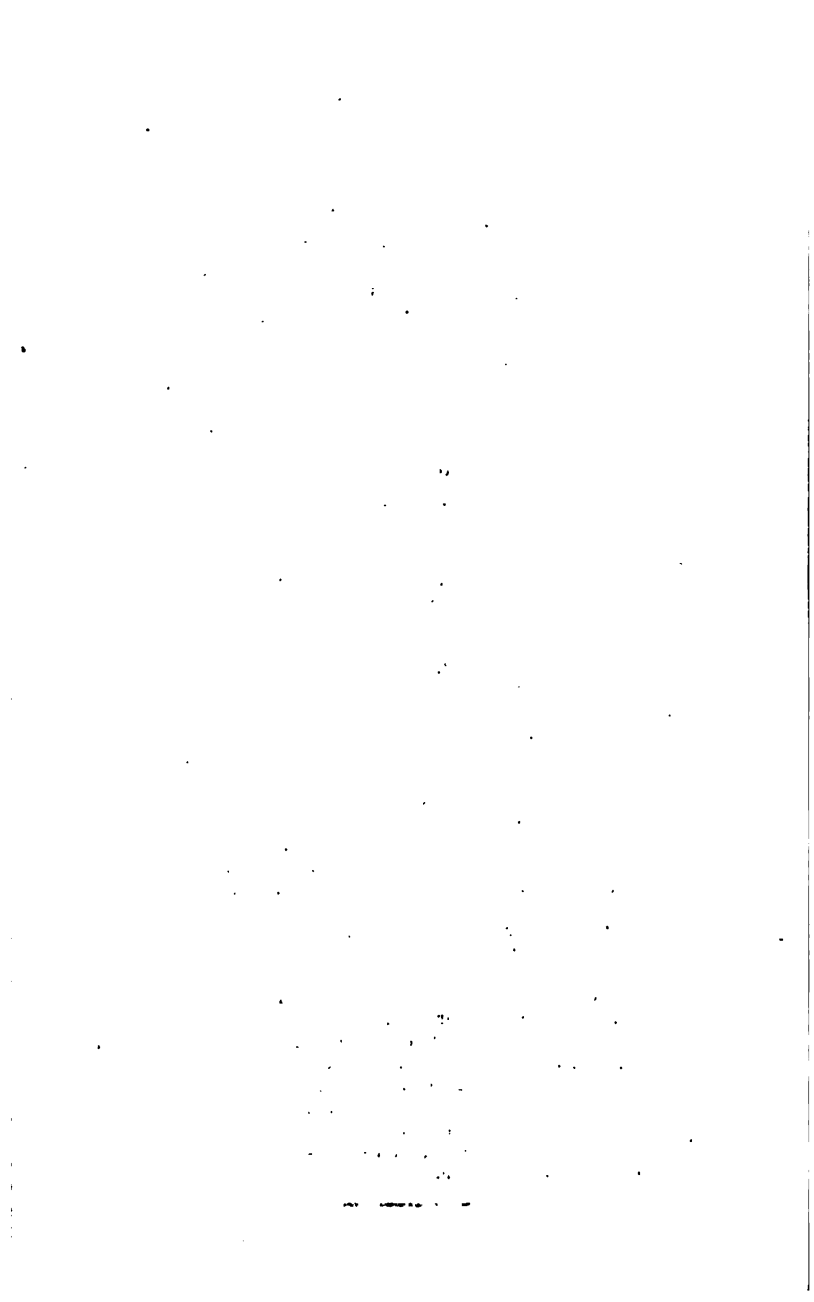
Luther's, Martin, Werke, ausgewählt und angeordnet von Gustav Pfizer. Pracht-Ausgabe in einem Band. Mit Luthers Büste, in Stahl gestochen von A. Collas. gr. Lex. 8°. (300 Bogen). gebunden. 1840. 7½ rthlr.

Müller, Karl Otfried, archäologische Mittheilungen aus Griechenland. Nach dessen hinterlassenen Papieren herausgegeben vom Professor Dr. Adolf Schöll, Grossherz. Weimar. Hofrath. I. Athens Antiken-Sammlung. I. Heft. Mit 6 Kupfer- und 1 Steindrucktafel (in Querfolio). gr. 4°. (16½ Bogen.) 1843. 2½ rthlr.

Pauli, Dr. Friedr. Wilh., prakt. Arzt in Frankfurt a. M., Homburg vor der Höhe und seine Heilquellen. Zweite umgearbeitete und vermehrte Auflage. Mit 2 Stahlstichen und einer lithographirten Karte. gr. 8°. (10 Bogen.) 1844. broch. 21 ggr.

Schöll, Adolf, Professor Dr., grossherzogl. Weimar. Hofrath. Sophokles. Sein Leben und Wirken. Nach den Quellen dargestellt. gr. 8°. (25½ Bogen.) 1842. broch. 3 rthlr.

Williams, Joseph, A handbook of english conversation, or a series of english and german dialogues, with a key to the pronunciation, according to Walkers system, to which are added mercantile dialogues, rail-road-and sea-terms. 12°. (9 Bogen.) 1840. broch. ½ rthlr.



A Select Catalogue of BOOKS ON EDUCATION,

PRINTED FOR
LONGMAN, BROWN, GREEN, AND LONGMANS.

NEW WORKS.

A Grammar of the Latin Language.

By C. G. ZUMPT, Ph. D. Professor in the University of Berlin. Translated from the 9th Edition, and adapted for the use of English students, by LEONHARD SCHMITZ, Ph. D.; with the co-operation of Professor ZUMPT. 8vo. 14s. cloth.

"Thus beyond all question is the work of Dr. Schmitz henceforward the authorised edition of Zumpt's Latin Grammar,—a work which well deserves its great celebrity, and the high esteem in which it is held by the best scholars."—EXAMINER.

Prof. Zumpt's School Latin Grammar.

Translated, and adapted for English Schools, by Dr. SCHMITZ, with the co operation of Professor ZUMPT. 12mo. [In the press.]

Questions on Wordsworth's Greek Grammar.

Examination Questions on Wordsworth's Greek Grammar. 12mo. [In the press.]

Linwood's Sophocles.

Sophoclis Tragediæ denuò recognitæ, et brevibus in usum Academicæ juventutis adnotationibus instructæ; curante GULIELMO LINWOOD, M.A. Ædis Christi apud Oxonienses Alumno. [In the press.]

A Speaker for the use of Schools.

Selected from Classical Greek, Latin, Italian, French, and English Writers—Demos-thenes, Thucydides, Homer, Sophocles, Cicero, Livy, Virgil, Lucretius, Shakspeare, Milton, Burke, Bacon, &c. By the Rev. W. SEWELL, B.D., of Exeter College, Oxford. [In the press.]

New Class-Book for Ladies' Schools.

The Modern Poetical Reader and Speaker. Selected principally from the best Modern Poets, by especial Permission of the Authors. By Mrs. FALLISER. 12mo. [In the press.]

. *The following WORKS, hitherto published by Mr. PRIESTLEY, High Holborn, are now published by Messrs. LONGMAN & Co.:*—

M. Tullii Ciceronis Orationes

Selectæ. Ex recensione Jo. AUG. ERNESTI. With an English Commentary, and Historical, Geographical, and Legal Indexes. By CHARLES ANTHON, LL.D. New Edition. 12mo. 6s. cloth.

C. Julii Cæsaris Commentarii

de Bello Gallico. Ex recensione FR. OUDENDORPII. With Explanatory Notes, and Historical, Geographical, and Archæological Indexes. By CHARLES ANTHON, LL.D. New Edition. 12mo. 4s. 6d. cloth.

P. Terentii Afri Comœdiæ Sex.

Ex Editione TH. FRID. GOD. REINHARDT. With Explanatory Notes, by D. B. HICKIE, LL.D. New Edition. 12mo. with Portrait, 9s. 6d. cloth.

C. Crispi Sallustii Opera. With

an English Commentary, and Geographical and Historical Indexes. By CHARLES ANTHON, LL.D. New Edit. 12mo. 5s. cloth.

Progressive Exercises in English

Composition. By the Rev. R. G. PARKER, A.M. New Edition. 12mo. 1s. 6d. cloth.

A Treatise on the Elements of Algebra.

By the Rev. B. BRIDGES, B.D. F.R.S. 11th Edition. 8vo. 7s. bound.

[By assignment from T. CADELL.]

ELEMENTARY GREEK WORKS, LEXICONS, GRAMMARS, ETC.

Kühner's Elementary Greek Grammar.

An Elementary Grammar of the Greek Language. By Dr. Raphael Kühner, Co-Rector of the Lyceum at Hanover. Translated by J. H. Millard, St. John's College, Cambridge; late Second Classical Master at Mill Hill Grammar School. 8vo. 9s. cloth.

"It affords me much pleasure to be able to assure you, that your translation may be regarded as a pattern of accuracy and care. I perceive with great satisfaction, from your Preface, that you have thoroughly entered into the ideas which have guided me in the preparation of my grammatical works, that you have rightly estimated them, and have exhibited them in a clear light."

EXTRACT OF A LETTER FROM DR. KÜHNER TO THE TRANSLATOR.

Brasse's Greek Gradus.

A Greek Gradus; or, a Greek, Latin, and English Prosodial Lexicon: containing the Interpretation, in Latin and English, of all words which occur in the Greek Poets, from the Earliest Period to the time of Ptolemy Philadelphus: with the Quantity of the Syllables verified by Authorities; and combining the advantages of a Lexicon of the Greek Poets and a Greek Gradus. For the use of Schools and Colleges. By the late Rev. Dr. BRASSE. To which is added, a Synopsis of the Greek Metres, by the Rev. J. R. Major, D.D. Head Master of King's College School, London. 2d Edition, revised and corrected by the Rev. F. E. J. Valpy, M.A. formerly Head Master of Reading School. 8vo. 15s. cloth.

Giles's Greek and English Lexicon.

A Lexicon of the Greek Language, for the use of Colleges and Schools; containing—1. A Greek-English Lexicon, combining the advantages of an Alphabetical and Derivative Arrangement; 2. An English-Greek Lexicon, more copious than any that has ever yet appeared. To which is prefixed, a concise Grammar of the Greek Language. By the Rev. J. A. GILES, LL.D. late Fellow of C. C. College, Oxon. 2d Edit. with corrections, 1 thick vol. 8vo. 21s. cloth.

, The English-Greek Lexicon, separately. 7s. 6d. cloth.

"In two points it excels every other Lexicon of the kind; namely, in the English-Greek part, and in the Classification of Greek Derivatives under their primitives."—MOODY'S ETON GREEK GRAMMAR.

Pycroft's Greek Grammar Practice.

In Three Parts: 1. Lessons in Vocabulary, Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs in Grammatical order; 2. Greek, made out of each column for translation; 3. English of the same for retranslation. By the Rev. JAMES PYCROFT, B.A. Trinity College, Oxford; Author of "A Course of English Reading," &c. 12mo. 3s. 6d. cloth.

"The plan is excellent, and will tend greatly to facilitate the acquisition of the two languages. By diligent practice in these lessons and vocabularies, the pupil becomes progressively master of all the difficulties that obstruct his early progress, and gradually attains to a well-grounded knowledge, and consequent relish, of the beauties of the Greek and Latin idioms."—JOHN BULL.

Moody's Eton Greek Grammar in English.

The New Eton Greek Grammar; with the Marks of Accent, and the Quantity of the Penult: containing the Eton Greek Grammar in English; the Syntax and Prosody as used at Eton; also, the Analogy between the Greek and Latin Languages; Introductory Exercises and Lessons: with numerous Additions to the text. The whole being accompanied by Practical and Philosophical Notes. By CLEMENT MOODY, A.M. of Magdalene Hall, Oxford; and Editor of the Eton Latin Grammar in English. 2d Edition, carefully revised, &c. 12mo. 4s. cloth.

Valpy's Greek Grammar.

The Elements of Greek Grammar: with Notes. By R. VALPY, D.D. late Master of Reading School. New Edition, 8vo. 6s. 6d. boards; bound, 7s. 6d.

Questions on Wordsworth's Greek Grammar.

Examination Questions on Wordsworth's Greek Grammar. 12mo. [In the press.]

Valpy's Greek Delectus, and Key.

Delectus Sententiarum Græcarum, ad usum Tironum accommodatus: cum Notulis et Lexico. Auctore R. VALPY, D.D. Editio Nova, eademque aucta et emendata, 12mo 4s. cloth.

KEY to the above, being a Literal Translation into English, 12mo. 2s. 6d. sewed.

Valpy's Second Greek Delectus.

Second Greek Delectus; or, New Analecta Minora: Intended to be read in Schools between Dr. Valpy's Greek Delectus and the Third Greek Delectus: with English Notes, and a copious Greek and English Lexicon. By the Rev. F. E. J. VALPY, M.A. formerly Head Master of Reading School. 3d Edition, 8vo. 9s. 6d. bound.

The Extracts are taken from the following Writers:—

Hierocles	Ælian	Sophocles	Homer
Æsop	The Septuagint	Æschylus	Tyrtæus
Palephatus	St. Matthew	Aristophanes	Bion; Moschus
Plutarch	Xenophon	Herodotus	Erycius of Cyzicum
Polysenus	Euripides	Anacreon	Archytas.

Valpy's Third Greek Delectus.

The Third Greek Delectus; or, New Analecta Majora: with English Notes. In Two Parts. By the Rev. F. E. J. VALPY, M.A. formerly Head Master of Reading School. 8vo 15s. 6d. bound.

*. The Parts may be had separately.

PART 1. PROSE. 8vo. 8s. 6d. bound. — PART 2. POETRY. 8vo. 9s. 6d. bound.

Valpy's Greek Exercises, and Key.

Greek Exercises; being an Introduction to Greek Composition, leading the student from the Elements of Grammar to the higher parts of Syntax, and referring the Greek of the words to a Lexicon at the end: with Specimens of the Greek Dialects, and the Critical Canons of Dawes and Porson. 4th Edition, with many Additions and Corrections. By the Rev. F. E. J. VALPY, M.A. formerly Head Master of Reading School. 12mo. 8s. 6d. cloth.

KEY, 12mo. 3s. 6d. sewed.

Neilson's Greek Exercises, and Key.

Greek Exercises, in Syntax, Ellipsis, Dialects, Prosody, and Metaphrasis. To which is prefixed, a concise but comprehensive Syntax; with Observations on some Idioms of the Greek Language. By the Rev. W. NEILSON, D.D. New Edition, 8vo. 5s. boards.—KEY, 3s. boards.

Howard's Introductory Greek Exercises, and Key.

Introductory Greek Exercises to those of Huntingford, Dunbar, Neilson, and others; arranged under Models, to assist the learner: with Exercises on the different Tenses of Verbs, extracted from the Table or Picture of Cebes. By NATHANIEL HOWARD. New Edition, with considerable improvements, 12mo. 6s. 6d. cloth.—KEY, 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Dr. Major's Greek Vocabulary.

Greek Vocabulary; or, Exercises on the Declinable Parts of Speech. By the Rev. J. R. MAJOR, D.D. Head Master of the King's College School, London. 2d Edition, corrected and enlarged, 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Evans's Greek Copy-Book.

Γραφεὺς Δοῦναι; sive, Calamus Scriptorius: Copies for Writing Greek in Schools. By A. B. EVANS, D.D. Head Master of Market-Bosworth Free Grammar School. 2d Edition, 4to. 5s. cloth.

The use of one Copy-Book is sufficient for securing a firm and clear Greek hand.

Dr. Major's Guide to the Greek Tragedians.

A Guide to the Reading of the Greek Tragedians; being a series of articles on the Greek Drama, Greek Metres, and Canons of Criticism. Collected and arranged by the Rev. J. R. MAJOR, D.D. Head Master of King's College School, London. 2d Edition, enlarged, 8vo. 9s. cloth.

The Rev. J. Seager's Translations.

Bos on the Greek Ellipsis.

Professor Schaeffer's Edition, with Notes. 8vo. 2s. 6d. boards.

Hermann's Elements of

the Doctrine of Metres. 8vo 8s. 6d. boards.

Hoozeveen on the Greek

Particles. 8vo. 7s. 6d. boards.

Maittaire on the Greek

Dialects. From the Edition of Sturzian. 8vo. 50s. 6d. boards.

Viger on the Greek

Idioms. Abridged and translated into English, from Professor Hermann's last Edition, with Original Notes. 2d Edition, with Additions and Corrections, 8vo. 2s. 6d. boards.

*. The above Five Works may be had in 2 vols. 8vo. £2. 2s. cloth.

Dr. Smithers' Classical Student's Manual.

The Classical Student's Manual; containing an Index to every Page, Section, and Note, in Matthiæ's Greek Grammar—Hermann's Annotations to Viger on Idioms—Bos on Ellipses—Hoozeveen on the Particles—and Kuster on the Middle Verb; in which Thucydides, Herodotus, Æschylus, Sophocles, Pindar, Homer's Iliad, Xenophon's Anabasis, and the four Plays of Euripides, edited by Professor Parson, are illustrated with Philological and Explanatory Observations by the Rev. W. COLLIER SMITHERS, A.M. Ph.D. (of Queen's College, Oxford), Principal of a School at Greenwich. Intended for Students in the Universities, and the Higher Classes in Schools. 3d Edition, 8vo. 10s. 6d. cloth.

LATIN WORKS, DICTIONARIES, GRAMMARS, ETC.

Arnold and Riddle's English-Latin Lexicon.

A Copious English-Latin Lexicon, compiled from the best Sources. By the Rev. J. E. Riddle, M.A. Author of "A Complete Latin-English Dictionary," &c.; and the Rev. T. Kerchever Arnold, M.A. Rector of Lyndon, and late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, Author of "A Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition," &c. 8vo.

Riddle's Latin Dictionary.

A Complete Latin-English and English-Latin Dictionary; compiled from the best sources, chiefly German. By the Rev. J. E. RIDDLE, M.A. of St. Edmund Hall, Oxford. 4th Edition, corrected and enlarged, 8vo. 31s. 6d. cloth.

Separately { The English-Latin Dictionary, 10s. 6d. cloth.
The Latin-English Dictionary, £1. 1s. cloth.

Riddle's Young Scholar's Latin Dictionary.

The Young Scholar's Latin-English and English-Latin Dictionary; being an Abridgment of the above. 4th Edition, corrected and enlarged, square 12mo. 12s. bound.

Separately { The Latin-English Dictionary, 6s. 6d. bound.
The English-Latin Dictionary, 7s. bound.

"From the time that a boy at school commences translation of the simplest kind, derivations should be attended to; and we consider Mr. Riddle's an invaluable book, when compared with other Dictionaries, merely on the ground of its large stock of derivations. In the monotony of early instruction these are, perhaps, the very first things that awaken curiosity and interest; a momentary escape and respite, if only apparent, from the matter in hand, is that for which boys are continually craving; and this may be more advantageously indulged by frequent reference to kindred English words, in which they feel themselves at home, than in any other manner."—CHURCH OF ENGLAND QUARTERLY REVIEW.

Riddle's Diamond Latin-English Dictionary.

A Diamond Latin-English Dictionary. A Guide to the Meaning, Quality, and right Accentuation of Latin Classical Words. By the Rev. J. E. RIDDLE, M.A. Royal 32mo. 4s. bound.

Professor Zumpt's Latin Grammars

(Authorised editions).

Translated, and adapted for English Students, by Dr. SCHWITZ, with the co operation of the Author, and additions now first added. [Vide page 1.]

Pycroft's Latin Grammar Practice.

Latin Grammar Practice: 1. Lessons in Vocabulary, Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs, in Grammatical Order; 2. Latin, made out of each column, for Translation; 3. English of the same, for Re-translation. By the Rev. JAMES PYCROFT, B.A. Trinity College, Oxford; Author of "A Course of English Reading," &c. 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Valpy's Latin Grammar.

The Elements of Latin Grammar: with Notes. By R. VALPY, D.D. late Master of Reading School. New Edition, with numerous Additions and Corrections, 12mo. 2s. 6d. bound.

Taylor's Latin Grammar.

A Latin Grammar, founded on the Eton, and arranged in a Tabular Form, to facilitate Reference and assist the Memory: with Notes, and an Explanation of the Grammatical and Rhetorical Figures in more general use. By the Rev. G. TAYLOR, D.C.L. Lecturer of Dedham, and late Master of the Grammar School. 3d edition, 3s. cloth.

Dr. Kennedy's Latin Grammar.

Latine Grammaticæ Curriculum; or, a Progressive Grammar of the Latin Language, for the use of all Classes in Schools. By Rev. B. H. KENNEDY, D.D. Head Master of Shrewsbury School. 2d Edition, 12mo. 4s. 6d. cloth.

Moody's Eton Latin Grammar in English, &c.

The New Eton Latin Grammar, with the Marks of Quantity and the Rules of Accent; containing the Eton Latin Grammar as used at Eton, the Eton Latin Grammar in English: with important Additions, and easy explanatory Notes. By CLEMENT MOODY, M.A. of Magdalene Hall, Oxf.: Editor of the Eton Greek Grammar in English. 4th Edit. revised throughout and enlarged, 2s. 6d. cloth. The Eton Latin Accidence: with Additions and Notes. 2d Edition, 12mo. 1s.

Graham's First Steps to Latin Writing.

First Steps to Latin Writing: intended as a Practical Illustration of the Latin Accidence. To which are added, Examples on the principal Rules of Syntax. By G. F. GRAHAM, Author of "English, or the Art of Composition," &c. 2d Edition, considerably enlarged and improved, 12mo. 4s. cloth.

Valpy's Latin Delectus, and Key.

Delectus Sententiarum et Historiarum; ad usum Tironum accommodatus: cum Notulis et Lexico. Auctore R. VALPY, D.D. New Edition, with Explanations and Directions; and a Dictionary, in which the Genders of Nouns, and the principal parts of Verbs, are inserted. 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

KEY; being a Literal Translation. By a PRIVATE TEACHER. New Edition, carefully revised, and adapted to the alterations in the new edition of the text, by W. R. BURTON, 12mo. 3s. 6d. cloth.

Valpy's Second Latin Delectus.

The Second Latin Delectus; designed to be read in Schools after the Latin Delectus, and before the *Analecta Latina Majora*: with English Notes. By the Rev. F. E. J. VALPY, M.A. Head Master of the Free Grammar-School, Burton-on-Trent. 2d Edition, 8vo. 6s. bound.

Valpy's First Latin Exercises.

First Exercises on the principal Rules of Grammar, to be translated into Latin: with familiar Explanations. By the late Rev. R. VALPY, D.D. New Edition, with many Additions, 18mo. 1s. 6d. cloth.

In this work it has been endeavoured to give the learner some little knowledge of the elements of *TRIVIOS*, while he is studying the construction of words. A few general principles of science and morality imprinted on the memory at an early age, will never be erased from the mind, and will often lay the foundation of a substantial fabric of useful knowledge.

Valpy's Second Latin Exercises.

Second Latin Exercises; applicable to every Grammar, and intended as an Introduction to Valpy's "*Elegantie Latine*." By the Rev. E. VALPY, B.D. late Master of Norwich School. 6th Edit. 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Intended as a Sequel to Valpy's "*First Exercises*;" with which the youthful reader is supposed to be fully acquainted before these Exercises are put into his hands. He will thus be led, by a regular gradation, to Valpy's "*Elegantie Latine*," to which these Exercises will be an introduction. The Examples are taken from the purest Latin Writers (chiefly the *Historians*) in Prose and Verse.

Valpy's Latin Vocabulary.

A New Latin Vocabulary; adapted to the best Latin Grammars: with Tables of Numeral Letters, English and Latin Abbreviations, and the Value of Roman and Grecian Coins. By R. VALPY, D.D. 11th Edition, 12mo. 2s. bound.

Valpy's Elegantiæ Latinæ, and Key.

Elegantiæ Latinæ; or, Rules and Exercises illustrative of Elegant Latin Style: intended for the use of the Middle and Higher Classes of Grammar Schools. With the Original Latin of the most difficult Phrases. By Rev. E. VALPY, B.D. late Master of Norwich School. 11th Edition, corrected, 12mo. 4s. 6d. cloth.

KEY, being the Original Passages, which have been translated into English, to serve as Examples and Exercises in the above. 12mo. 2s. 6d. sewed.

Butler's Praxis, and Key.

A Praxis on the Latin Prepositions: being an attempt to illustrate their Origin, Signification, and Government, in the way of Exercise. By the late Bishop BUTLER. 6th Edition, 8vo. 6s. 6d. boards.

KEY, 6s. boards.

An Introduction to the Composition of Latin Verse;

containing Rules and Exercises intended to illustrate the Manners, Customs, and Opinions, mentioned by the Roman Poets, and to render familiar the principal Idioms of the Latin Language. By the late CHRISTOPHER RAPIER, A.B. 2d Edition, carefully revised by THOMAS KERCHER ARNOLD, M.A. 12mo. 3s. 6d. cloth.

KEY to the Second Edition. 16mo. 2s. 6d. sewed.

Howard's Introductory Latin Exercises.

Introductory Latin Exercises to those of Clarke, Ellis, Turner, and others: designed for the Younger Classes. By NATHANIEL HOWARD. A New Edition, 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Howard's Latin Exercises extended.

Latin Exercises Extended; or, a Series of Latin Exercises, selected from the best Roman Writers, and adapted to the Rules of Syntax, particularly in the Eton Grammar. To which are added, English Examples to be translated into Latin, immediately under the same rule. Arranged under Models. By NATHANIEL HOWARD. New Edition, 12mo. 3s. 6d. cloth.

KEY, 2d Edition 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Bradley's Exercises, &c. on Latin Grammar.

Series of Exercises and Questions; adapted to the best Latin Grammars, and designed as a Guide to Parsing, and an Introduction to the Exercises of Valpy, Turner, Clarke, Ellis, &c. &c. By the Rev. C. BRADLEY, Vicar of Glasbury. 4th Edition, 12mo. 2s. 6d. bound.

Bradley's Latin Prosody, and Key.

Exercises in Latin Prosody and Versification. By the Rev. C. BRADLEY, Vicar of Glasbury, Brecon. 8th Edition, with an Appendix on Lyric and Dramatic Measures, 12mo. 3s. 6d. cloth.

KEY, 6th Edition, 12mo. 2s. 6d. sewed.

Turner's Latin Exercises.

Exercises to the Accidence and Grammar; or, an Exemplification of the several Moods and Tenses, and of the principal Rules of Construction: consisting chiefly of Moral Sentences, collected out of the best Roman Authors, and translated into English, to be rendered back into Latin; with references to the Latin Syntax, and Notes. By WILLIAM TURNER, M.A. late Master of the Free School at Colchester. New Edition, 12mo. 3s. cloth.

Beza's Latin Testament.

Novum Testamentum Domini Nostri Jesu Christi, interprete THEODORA BEZA. Editio Stereotypa, 1 vol. 12mo. 3s. 6d. bound.

Valpy's Epitome Sacræ Historiæ.

Sacræ Historiæ Epitome, in usum Scholarum: cum Notis Anglicis. By the Rev. F. E. J. VALPY, M.A. Head Master of the Free Grammar School, Burton-on-Trent. 7th Edition, 18mo. 2s. cloth.

EDITIONS OF GREEK CLASSIC AUTHORS.**Barker's Demosthenes.**

Demosthenes—Oratio Philippica I., Olynthiaca I. II. and III., De Pace, *Æschines contra Demosthenem*, De Corona. With English Notes. By E. H. BARKER. 2d Edit. post 8vo. 6s. 6d. boards.

Major's Euripides.

Euripides. From the Text, and with a Translation of the Notes, Preface, and Supplement, of Porson; Critical and Explanatory Remarks, original and selected; Illustrations and Idioms from Matthis, Dawes, Viger, &c.; and a Synopsis of Metrical Systems. By Dr. MAJOR, Head Master of King's College School, London. 1 vol. post 8vo. 24s. cloth.

Sold separately as follow, 5s. each:—

ALCESTIS,	MEDRA, 4th Edit.	PHRIGISSÆ, 2d Edit.
HECUBA, 5th Edit.	ORISTES, 3d Edit.	

Linwood's Sophocles.

Sophoclis Tragediæ denudæ recognitæ, et brevibus in usum Academicæ juventutis adnotationibus instructæ; curante GULIELMO LINWOOD, M.A. Edis Christi apud Oxonienses Alumno. 8vo. [In the press.]

Brasse's Sophocles.

Sophocles, complete. From the Text of Hermann, Erfardt, &c.; with original Explanatory English Notes, Questions, and Indices. By Dr. BRASSE, Mr. BURGESS, and Rev. F. VALPY. 2 vols. post 8vo. 34s. cloth.

Sold separately as follow, 5s. each:—

ŒDIPUS COLONEUS, 2d Edit.	PHILOCTETES, 3d Edit.	AJAX, 3d Edit.
ŒDIPUS REX, 3d Edit.	TRACHINÆ, 3d Edit.	ANTIGONE, 2d Edit.
		ELECTRA, 3d Edit.

Burges's Æschylus.

Æschylus—The Prometheus: English Notes, &c. By G. BURGESS, A.M. Trinity College, Cambridge. 2d Edition, post 8vo. 5s. boards.

Belfour's Xenophon's Anabasis.

The Anabasis of Xenophon. Chiefly according to the Text of Hutchinson. With Explanatory Notes, and Illustrations of Idioms from Viger, &c., copious Indexes, and Examination Questions. By F. CUNNINGHAM BELFOUR, M.A. Oxon. F.R.A.S. LL.D. late Professor of Arabic in the Greek University of Corfu. 4th Edit. with Corrections and Improvements, post 8vo. 8s. 6d. bds.

Barker's Xenophon's Cyropædia.

The Cyropædia of Xenophon. Chiefly from the text of Dindorf. With Notes, Critical and Explanatory, from Dindorf, Fisher, Hutchinson, Poppo, Schneider, Sturtz, and other eminent scholars, accompanied by the editor's comments. To which are added, Examination Questions, and copious Indices. By E. H. BARKER, late of Trinity Coll. Camb. Post 8vo. 9s. 6d. bds.

Stocker's Herodotus.

Herodotus; containing the Continuous History alone of the Persian Wars: with English Notes. By the Rev. C. W. STOCKER, D.D. Vice-Principal of St. Alban's Hall, Oxford; and late Principal of Elizabeth College, Guernsey. A New and greatly Improved Edition, 2 vols. post 8vo. 18s. cloth.

Valpy's Homer.

Homer's Iliad, complete: English Notes, and Questions to first Eight Books. Text of Heyne. By the Rev. E. VALPY, B.D. late Master of Norwich School. 6th Edition, 8vo. 10s. 6d. bound.—Text only, 6th Edition, 8vo. 6s. 6d. bound.

EDITIONS OF LATIN CLASSIC AUTHORS.**Valpy's Tacitus, with English Notes.**

C. Cornelii Taciti Opera. From the Text of Brotier; with his Explanatory Notes, translated into English. By A. J. VALPY, M.A. 3 vols. post 8vo. 24s. bds.

Barker's Tacitus—Germany and Agricola.

The Germany of C. C. Tacitus, from Passow's Text; and the Agricola, from Brotier's Text: with Critical and Philological Remarks, partly original and partly collected. By E. H. BARKER, late of Trinity College, Cambridge. 5th Edition, revised, 12mo. 5s. 6d. cloth.

Valpy's Ovid's Epistles and Tibullus.

Electa ex Ovidio et Tibullo: cum Notis Anglois. By the Rev. F. E. J. VALPY, M.A. Master of Burton-on-Trent School. 3d Edition, 12mo. 4s. 6d. cloth.

Bradley's Ovid's Metamorphoses.

Ovidii Metamorphoses; in usum Scholarum excerptæ: quibus accedunt Notulæ Anglicæ et Questiones. Studio C. BRADLEY, A.M. Editio Octava, 12mo. 4s. 6d. cloth.

Valpy's Juvenal and Persius.

Decimus J. Juvenalis et Persii Flacci Satiræ. Ex edd. Ruperti et Kœnig expurgatæ. Accedunt, in gratiam Juventutis, Notæ quædam Anglicæ scriptæ. Edited by A. J. VALPY, M.A. 3d Ed.t. 12mo. 6s. 6d. bd.
The Text only, 2d Edition, 3s. bound.

Valpy's Virgil.

P. Virgiliti Maronis Bucolicæ, Georgicæ, Æneidæ. Accedunt, in gratiam Juventutis, Notæ quædam Anglicæ scriptæ. Edited by A. J. VALPY, M.A. 10th Edition, 18mo. 7s. 6d. bound.
The Text only, 18th Edition, 3s. 6d. bound.

Valpy's Horace.

Q. Horatii Flacci Opera. Ad fidem optimorum exemplarium castigata; cum Notulis Anglicis. Edited by A. J. VALPY, M.A. New Edition, 18mo. 6s. bd.
The same, without Notes. New Edition, 3s. 6d.
* The objectionable odes and passages have been expunged.

The Rev. Canon Tate's Edition of Horace.

Horatius Restitutus; or, the Books of Horace arranged in Chronological Order, according to the Scheme of Dr Bentley, from the Text of Gesner, corrected and improved: with a Preliminary Dissertation, very much enlarged, on the Chronology of the Works, on the Localities, and on the Life and Character of that Poet. By JAMES TATE, M.A. 2d edition, to which is now added, an original Treatise on the Metres of Horace, 8vo. cloth, 12s.

Horace on the Middle System.

Classical Student's Translation of Horace; or, the Works of Quintus Horatius Flaccus, translated for Classical Students, on the Principles of the Middle System of Teaching Classics. By Rev H. P. HATTON, B.A. Rector of Markfield, Leicestershire; Author of "The Middle System of Teaching Classics." Royal 18mo. 8s. cloth.

Barker's Cicero de Amicitia, &c.

Cicero's Cato Major, and Lælius: with English Explanatory and Philological Notes; and with an English Essay on the Respect paid to Old Age by the Egyptians, the Persians, the Spartans, the Greeks, and the Romans. By the late E. H. BARKER, Esq. of Trinity College, Cambridge. 6th Edition, 12mo. 4s. 6d. cloth.

Valpy's Cicero's Offices.

M. Tullii Ciceronis de Officiis Libri Tres. Accedunt, in usum Juventutis, Notæ quædam Anglicæ scriptæ. Edited by A. J. VALPY, M.A. Editio Quinta, aucta et emendata, 12mo. 6s. 6d. cloth.

Valpy's Cicero's Twelve Orations.

Twelve Select Orations of M. Tullius Cicero. From the Text of Jo. Casp. Orellius; with English Notes. Edited by A. J. VALPY, M.A. 2d Edition, post 8vo. 7s. 6d. boards.

Barker's Cæsar's Commentaries.

C. Julius Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War. From the Text of Oudendorp; with a selection of Notes from Dionysius Vossius, from Drs. Davies and Clarke, and from Oudendorp, &c. &c. To which are added, Examination Questions. By E. H. BARKER, Esq. late of Trinity College, Cambridge. Post 8vo. with several Woodcuts, 6s. 6d. boards.

Bradley's Phædrus.

Phædri Fabulæ; in usum Scholarum expurgatæ: quibus accedunt Notulæ Anglicæ et Questiones. Studio C. BRADLEY, A.M. Editio Nonâ, 12mo. 2s. 6d. cl.

Bradley's Cornelius Nepos.

Cornelii Nepotis Vitæ Excellentium Imperatorum: quibus accedunt Notulæ Anglicæ et Questiones. Studio C. BRADLEY, A.M. Editio Octava, 12mo. 3s. 6d. cl.

Bradley's Eutropius.

Eutropii Historiæ Romanæ Libri Septem: quibus accedunt Notulæ Anglicæ et Questiones. Studio C. BRADLEY, A.M. Editio Duodecima, 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Hickie's Livy.

The First Five Books of Livy: with English Explanatory Notes, and Examination Questions. By D. B. HICKIE, LL.D. Head Master of Hawkshead Grammar School. 2d Edition, post 8vo. 8s. 6d. boards.

WORKS BY THE REV. S. T. BLOOMFIELD, D.D. F.S.A.**Bloomfield's Greek Testament.**

The Greek Testament: with copious English Notes, Critical, Philological, and Explanatory. 8th Edition, greatly enlarged, and very considerably improved, in 2 closely-printed volumes, 8vo. with Map of Palestine, £2, cloth.

Bloomfield's College and School Greek Testament.

The Greek Testament: with brief English Notes, Philological and Explanatory. Especially formed for the use of Colleges and the Public Schools, but also adapted for general purposes, where a larger work is not requisite. By the Rev. S. T. BLOOMFIELD, D.D. F.S.A. Vicar of Bisbreeke, Rutland; Editor of the larger Greek Testament, with English Notes; and Author of the Greek and English Lexicon to the New Testament, printed uniform with, and intended to serve as a Companion to, the present work. 3d Edition, greatly enlarged and considerably improved, 12mo. 10s. 6d. cloth.

Bloomfield's Greek Lexicon to the New Testament.

Greek and English Lexicon to the New Testament; especially adapted to the use of Colleges and the higher Classes in the Public Schools, but also intended as a convenient Manual for Biblical Students in general. 2d Edition, greatly enlarged, and very considerably improved. Fcp. 8vo. on a wider paper, 10s. 6d. cloth.

Bloomfield's Greek Thucydides.

The History of the Peloponnesian War, by Thucydides. A New Recension of the Text; with a carefully amended Punctuation; and copious Notes, Critical, Philological, and Explanatory; almost entirely original, but partly selected and arranged from the best Expositors, and forming a continuous Commentary; accompanied with full Indices, both of Greek Words and Phrases explained, and matters discussed in the Notes. Dedicated, by permission, to the Right Hon. and Right Rev. Charles James, Lord Bishop of London. Illustrated by Maps and Plans, mostly taken from actual survey. 2 vols. 8vo. 36s. cl.

Bloomfield's Translation of Thucydides.

The History of the Peloponnesian War. By THUCYDIDES. Newly translated into English, and accompanied with very copious Notes, Philological and Explanatory, Historical and Geographical; with Maps and Plates. 3 vols. 8vo. £2. 5s. boards.

HISTORY, CHRONOLOGY, AND MYTHOLOGY.**Lempriere's Classical Dictionary, abridged**

For Public and Private Schools of both Sexes. By the late E. H. Barker, Trinity College, Cambridge. A New Edition, revised and corrected throughout. By J. Canvin. 8vo. 12s. board.

* * * This is the only edition containing all the most recent improvements and additions of Professor Anthon, and other eminent scholars; and it is hoped that it will be distinguished from all other editions of Lempriere, which, though larger in size, contain a vast quantity of matter not calculated to assist the scholar, and which has been purposely expunged from this edition; thus diminishing the expense of the work, without injuring its utility as an elementary school-book. All indelicacies, both in matter and language, have been carefully avoided.

Blair's Chronological and Historical Tables.

From the Creation to the Present Time: with Additions and Corrections from the most Authentic Writers; including the Computation of St. Paul, as connecting the Period from the Exode to the Temple. Under the superintendence of Sir HENRY ELLIOT, K.H. Principal Librarian of the British Museum. Imp. 8vo. 31s. 6d. half-bound morocco.

Mangnall's Questions.—THE ONLY GENUINE AND COMPLETE EDITION.

Historical and Miscellaneous Questions, for the Use of Young People; with a Selection of British and General Biography, &c. &c. By R. MANGNALL. New Edition, with the Author's last Corrections, and other very considerable Additions and Improvements. 12mo. 4s. 6d. bound.

"The most comprehensive book of instruction existing, and to be preferred to all the others to which it has served as a model."—QUARTERLY REVIEW.

The only edition with the Author's latest Additions and Improvements, brought down to the present time, bears the imprint of Messrs. LONGMAN and Co.

Corner's Sequel to Mangnall's Questions.

Questions on the History of Europe: a Sequel to Mangnall's Historical Questions; comprising Questions on the History of the Nations of Continental Europe not comprehended in that work. By JULIA CORNER. New Edition, 12mo. 5s. bound.

Hort's Pantheon.

The New Pantheon; or, an Introduction to the Mythology of the Ancients, in Question and Answer: compiled for the Use of Young Persons. To which are added, an Accentuated Index, Questions for Exercise, and Poetical Illustrations of Grecian Mythology, from Homer and Virgil. By W. J. HORT. New Edition, considerably enlarged by the addition of the Oriental and Northern Mythology. 18mo. 17 Plates, 6s. 8d. bound.

"Superior to all other juvenile mythologies in form and tendency, and decidedly in the pleasure it gives a child."—*QUARTERLY REVIEW*.

Hort's Chronology.

An Introduction to the Study of Chronology and Ancient History: in Question and Answer. New Edition, 18mo. 4s. bound.

Müller's Introductory System of Mythology.

Introduction to a Scientific System of Mythology. By C. O. MÜLLER, Author of "The History and Antiquities of the Doric Race," &c. Translated from the German by JOHN LEITCH. 8vo. uniform with "Müller's Dorians," 12s. cloth.

Knapp's Universal History.

An Abridgement of Universal History, adapted to the Use of Families and Schools; with appropriate Questions at the end of each Section. By the Rev. H. J. KNAPP, M.A. New Edition, with considerable additions, 12mo. 5s. bound.

Bigland's Letters on the Study of History.

On the Study and Use of Ancient and Modern History: containing Observations and Reflections on the Causes and Consequences of those Events which have produced conspicuous Changes in the aspect of the World, and the general state of Human Affairs. By JOHN BIGLAND. 7th Edition, 1 vol. 12mo. 6s. bds.

Keightley's Outlines of History.

Outlines of History, from the Earliest Period. By THOMAS KEIGHTLEY, Esq. New Edition, corrected and considerably improved, fcp. 8vo. 6s. cloth; or 6s. 6d. bound.

Sir Walter Scott's History of Scotland.

History of Scotland. By Sir WALTER SCOTT, Bart. New Edition, 3 vols. fcp. 8vo. with Vignette Titles, 12s. cloth.

Cooper's History of England.

The History of England, from the Earliest Period to the Present Time. On a plan recommended by the Earl of Chesterfield. By the Rev. W. COOPER. 23d Edition, considerably improved. 18mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Baldwin's History of England.

The History of England, for the use of Schools and Young Persons. By EDWARD BALDWIN, Esq., Author of "The History of Rome," &c. A New Edition, carefully revised and corrected, with Portraits. 12mo. 3s. 6d. bound.

Valpy's Elements of Mythology.

Elements of Mythology; or, an Easy History of the Pagan Deities: intended to enable the young to understand the Ancient Writers of Greece and Rome. By R. VALPY, D.D. 8th Edition, 12mo. 2s. bound.

Valpy's Poetical Chronology.

Poetical Chronology of Ancient and English History: with Historical and Explanatory Notes. By R. VALPY, D.D. New Edit. 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Howlett's Tables of Chronology and Regal Genealogies, combined and separate.

By the Rev. J. H. HOWLETT, M.A. 2d Edition, 4to. 5s. 6d. cloth.

Riddle's Ecclesiastical Chronology.

Ecclesiastical Chronology; or, Annals of the Christian Church, from its Foundation to the Present Time. To which are added, Lists of Councils and of Popes, Patriarchs, and Archbishops of Canterbury. By the Rev. J. E. RIDDLE, M.A. 8vo. 16s. cloth.

Tate's Continuous History of St. Paul.

The Continuous History of the Labours and Writings of St. Paul, on the basis of the Acts, with intercalary matter of Sacred Narrative, supplied from the Epistles, and elucidated in occasional Dissertations: with the *HORÆ PAULINÆ* of Dr. PALEY, in a more correct edition (with occasional notes), subjoined. By J. TATE, M.A. Canon Residentiary of St. Paul's. 8vo. with Map, 13s. cloth.

GEOMETRY, ARITHMETIC, LAND-SURVEYING, ETC.**Narrien's Astronomy and Geodesy.**

Practical Astronomy and Geodesy: including the Projections of the Sphere and Spherical Trigonometry. For the use of the Royal Military College, Sandhurst. By JOHN NARRIEN, F.R.S. & R.A.S. Professor of Mathematics, &c. in the Institution. 8vo. 14s.

Scott's Trigonometry.

Plain Trigonometry and Mensuration. For the use of the Royal Military College, Sandhurst. By W. SCOTT, Esq. A.M. and F.R.A.S. Second Mathematical Master in the Institution. Being the Third Volume of the Sandhurst Course of Mathematics. 8vo. [In the press.]

Scott's Arithmetic and Algebra.

Elements of Arithmetic and Algebra. For the use of the Royal Military College, Sandhurst. By W. SCOTT, Esq. A.M. and F.R.A.S. Second Mathematical Professor in the Institution. 8vo. 16s. bound.

Narrien's Elements of Euclid.

Elements of Geometry: consisting of the first four, and the sixth, Books of Euclid, chiefly from the Text of Dr. Robert Simson; with the principal Theorems in Proportion, and a Course of Practical Geometry on the Ground. Also, Four Tracts relating to Circles, Planes, and Solids; with one on Spherical Geometry. For the use of the Royal Military College, Sandhurst. By JOHN NARRIEN, F.R.S. and R.A.S. Professor of Mathematics, &c. in the Institution. 8vo. with many diagrams, 10s. 6d. bound.

Professor Thomson's Elementary Algebra.

An Elementary Treatise on Algebra, Theoretical and Practical. By JAMES THOMSON, LL.D. Professor of Mathematics in the University of Glasgow. 12mo. 5s. cloth.

Crocker's Land Surveying.

Crocker's Elements of Land Surveying. New Edition, corrected throughout, and considerably improved and modernised, by T. G. BUNT, Land-Surveyor, Bristol. To which are added, Tables of Six-figure Logarithms, superintended by Richard Farley, of the Nautical Almanac Establishment. Post 8vo. with Plan of the Manor of North Hill, Somerset, belonging to J. W. Antoni, Esq., numerous Diagrams, a Field-book, Plan of part of the City of Bath, &c. 12s. cl.

Illustrations of Practical Mechanics.

By the Rev. H. MOSSELEY, M.A. Professor of Natural Philosophy and Astronomy in King's College, London. Being the First Volume of Illustrations of Science, by the Professors of King's College. 2d Edition, 1 vol. fcp. 8vo. with numerous Woodcuts, 8s. cloth.

Keith on the Globes, and Key.

A New Treatise on the Use of the Globes; or, a Philosophical View of the Earth and Heavens: comprehending an Account of the Figure, Magnitude, and Motion of the Earth: with the Natural Changes of its Surface, caused by Floods, Earthquakes, &c.: together with the Principles of Meteorology and Astronomy: with the Theory of Tides, &c. By THOMAS KEITH. New Edition, considerably improved, by J. ROWBOTHAM, F.R.A.S. and W. H. PRIOR. 12mo. with 7 Plates, 6s. 6d. bound.

* The only genuine edition, with the Author's latest Additions and Improvements, bears the imprint of Messrs. LONGMAN and Co.

KEY, by PRIOR, revised by J. ROWBOTHAM, 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

Keith's Trigonometry.

An Introduction to the Theory and Practice of Plane and Spherical Trigonometry, and the Stereographic Projection of the Sphere, including the Theory of Navigation; comprehending a variety of Rules, Formulae, &c. with their Practical Applications to the Mensuration of Heights and Distances, to determine the Latitude by two Altitudes of the Sun, the Longitude by the Lunar Observations, and to other important Problems on the Sphere; and on Nautical Astronomy. By THOMAS KEITH. 7th Edition, corrected by S. MAYNARD, 8vo. 14s. cloth.

Taylor's Arithmetic, and Key.

The Arithmetician's Guide; or, a complete Exercise Book: for Public Schools and Private Teachers. By W. TAYLOR. New Edition, 12mo. 2s. 6d. bound.

KEY to the same. By W. H. WHITE, of the Commercial and Mathematical School, Bedford. 12mo. 4s. bound.

Molineux's Arithmetic, and Key.

An Introduction to Practical Arithmetic; in Two Parts: with various Notes, and occasional Directions for the use of Learners. By T. MOLINEUX, many years Teacher of Accounts and the Mathematics in Macclesfield. In Two Parts. Part 1, New Edition, 12mo. 2s. 6d. bound.—Part 2, 6th Edit. 12mo. 2s. 6d. bd.

KEY to Part 1, 6d.—KEY to Part 2, 6d.

Hall's Key to Molineux's Arithmetic.

A Key to the First Part of Molineux's Practical Arithmetic; containing Solutions of all the Questions at full length, with Answers. By JOSEPH HALL, Teacher of Mathematics. 12mo. 3s. bound.

Simson's Euclid.

The Elements of Euclid: viz. the First Six Books, together with the Eleventh and Twelfth; also the Book of Euclid's Data. By ROBERT SIMSON, M.D. Emeritus Professor of Mathematics in the University of Glasgow. To which are added, the Elements of Plane and Spherical Trigonometry; and a Treatise on the Construction of Trigonometrical Canon: also, a concise Account of Logarithms. By the Rev. A. ROBERTSON, D.D. F.R.S. Savilian Professor of Astronomy in the University of Oxford. 25th Edition, carefully revised and corrected by S. MAYNARD, 8vo. 9s. bound.—Also.

The Elements of Euclid: viz. the First Six Books, together with the Eleventh and Twelfth. Printed, with a few variations and additional references, from the Text of Dr. SIMSON. New Edition, carefully corrected by S. MAYNARD, 18mo. 5s. bound.—Also,

The same work, edited in the Symbolical form, by R. BLAKESLOCK, M.A. late Fellow and Assistant-Tutor of Catherine Hall, Cambridge. New Edit. 18mo. 6s. cloth.

Joyce's Arithmetic, and Key.

A System of Practical Arithmetic, applicable to the present state of Trade and Money Transactions: illustrated by numerous Examples under each Rule. By the Rev. J. JOYCE. New Edition, corrected and improved by S. MAYNARD. 12mo. 3s. bound.

KEY; containing Solutions and Answers to all the Questions in the work. To which are added, Appendices, shewing the Method of making Mental Calculations, and a New Mode of Setting Sums in the Early Rules of Arithmetic. New Edition, corrected and enlarged by S. MAYNARD, 18mo. 3s. bound.

Morrison's Book-Keeping, and Forms.

The Elements of Book-keeping, by Single and Double Entry; comprising several Sets of Books, arranged according to Present Practice, and designed for the use of Schools. To which is annexed, an Introduction to Merchants' Accounts, illustrated with Forms and Examples. By JAMES MORRISON, Accountant. New Edition, considerably improved, 8vo. 8s. half-bound.

Sets of Blank Books, ruled to correspond with the Four Sets contained in the above work: Set A, Single Entry, 3s.; Set B, Double Entry, 5s.; Set C, Commission Trade, 12s.; Set D, Partnership Concerns, 4s. 6d.

Morrison's Commercial Arithmetic, and Key.

A Concise System of Commercial Arithmetic. By J. MORRISON, Accountant. New Edition, revised and improved, 12mo. 4s. 6d. bound.

KEY. 3d Edition, corrected and improved by S. MAYNARD, Editor of "Keith's Mathematical Works." 12mo. 8s. bound.

Nesbit's Mensuration, and Key.

A Treatise on Practical Mensuration: containing the most approved Methods of drawing Geometrical Figures; Mensuration of Superficies; Land Surveying; Mensuration of Solids; the Use of the Carpenter's Rule; Timber Measure, in which is shewn the method of Measuring and Valuing Standing Timber; Artificers' Works, illustrated by the Dimensions and Contents of a House; a Dictionary of the Terms used in Architecture, &c. By A. NESBIT. 12th Edition, corrected and greatly improved, with nearly 700 Practical Examples and nearly 300 Woodcuts, 12mo. 6s. bound.—KEY, 7th Edition, 12mo. 6s. bound.

Nesbit's Land Surveying.

A Complete Treatise on Practical Land Surveying. By A. NESBIT. 7th Edition, greatly enlarged, 1 vol. 8vo. illustrated with 160 Woodcuts, 13 Copperplates and an engraved Field-book, (sewed,) 12s. boards.

Farley's Six-Figure Logarithms.

Tables of Six-figure Logarithms; containing the Logarithms of Numbers from 1 to 10,000, and of Sines and Tangents for every Minute of the Quadrant and every Six Seconds of the first Two Degrees: with a Table of Constants, and Formulas for the Solution of Plane and Spherical Triangles. Superintended by RICHARD FARLEY, of the Nautical Almanac Establishment. Post 8vo. (unenumerated), 4s. 6d. cloth.

Nesbit's Arithmetic, and Key.

A Treatise on Practical Arithmetic. By A. NESBIT. 3d Edition, 12mo. 5s. bd.

A KEY to the same. 12mo. 5s. bound.

A Second Part of the above is in the press.

Balmain's Lessons on Chemistry.

Lessons on Chemistry; for the use of Pupils in Schools, Junior Students in the Universities, and Readers who wish to learn the fundamental Principles and leading Facts. With Questions for Examination, a Glossary of Chemical Terms, and an Index. By WILLIAM H. BALMAIN. Fcp. 8vo. 6s. cloth.

Mrs. Lee's Natural History for Schools.

Elements of Natural History, for the use of Schools and Young Persons; comprising the Principles of Classification, interspersed with amusing and instructive Original Accounts of the most remarkable Animals. By Mrs. LEE (formerly Mrs T. E. Bowdich), Author of "Taxidermy," &c. 12mo. with 56 Woodcuts, 7s. 6d. bound.

~~~~~  
**WORKS FOR YOUNG PEOPLE, BY MRS. MARCET.**

**Mrs. Marcet's New Spelling Book.**

The Mother's First Book; containing the Reading made Easy, and Spelling Book. New Edition, 12mo. 1s. 6d. cloth.

**Mrs. Marcet's New Grammar for Boys.**

Willy's Grammar, interspersed with Stories, and intended for the use of Young Boys. 2d Edition, 12mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

**Lessons on Animals, Vegetables, and Minerals.**

18mo. 2s. cloth.

**Conversations on the History of England.**

For the Use of Children. 2d Edition, with additions, continuing the History to the Reign of George III. 18mo. 5s. cloth.

**Mary's Grammar:**

Interspersed with Stories, and intended for the use of Children. 6th Edition, revised and enlarged, 18mo. 3s. 6d. half-bound.

"A sound and simple work for the earliest ages."—QUARTERLY REVIEW.

**The Game of Grammar:**

With a Book of Conversations (fcp. 8vo.) shewing the Rules of the Game, and affording Examples of the manner of playing at it. In a varnished box, or done up as a post 8vo. volume in cloth, 6s.

**Conversations on Language, for Children.**

Fcp. 8vo. 4s. 6d. cloth.

**Willy's Stories for Young Children:**

Containing The House-Building—The Three Pits The Chalk Pit, The Coal Pit, and The Gravel Pit)—and The Land without Laws. 3d Edit. 18mo. 2s. half-bd.

**Willy's Holidays:**

Or, Conversations on different Kinds of Governments: intended for Young Children. 18mo. 2s. half-bound.

**The Seasons:**

Stories for very Young Children. New Editions, 4 vols.—Vol. 1, Winter, 3d Edition; Vol. 2, Spring, 3d Edition; Vol. 3, Summer, 3d Edition; Vol. 4, Autumn, 3d Edition. 2s. each, half-bound.

## GEOGRAPHY AND ATLASES.

**Butler's Ancient and Modern Geography.**

A Sketch of Ancient and Modern Geography. By SAMUEL BUTLER, D.D. late Bishop of Lichfield, formerly Head Master of Shrewsbury School. New Edition, revised by his Son, 8vo. 2s. boards; bound in roan, 18s.

**Butler's Ancient and Modern Atlases.**

An Atlas of Modern Geography; consisting of Twenty-three Coloured Maps, from a new set of plates, corrected, with a complete Index. By the late Dr. BUTLER. 8vo. 12s. half-bound.—By the same Author,

An Atlas of Ancient Geography; consisting of Twenty-two Coloured Maps, with a complete Accentuated Index. 8vo. 12s. half-bound.

A General Atlas of Ancient and Modern Geography; consisting of Forty-five coloured Maps, and Indices. 4to. 24s. half-bound.

\*. The Latitude and Longitude are given in the Indices.

The Plates of the present new edition have been re-engraved, with corrections from the government surveys and the most recent sources of information.

Edited by the Author's Son.

**Abridgment of Butler's Geography.**

An Abridgment of Bishop Butler's Modern and Ancient Geography: arranged in the form of Question and Answer, for the use of Beginners. By MARY CUNNINGHAM. 3d Edition, fcp. 8vo. 2s. cloth.

**Butler's Geographical Copy Books.**

Outline Geographical Copy-Books, Ancient and Modern: with the Lines of Latitude and Longitude only, for the Pupil to fill up, and designed to accompany the above. 4to. each 4s.; or together, sewed, 7s. 6d.

**Goldsmith's Popular Geography.**

Geography on a Popular Plan. New Edit. including Extracts from recent Voyages and Travels, with Engravings, Maps, &c. By Rev. J. GOLDSMITH. 12mo. 14s. 6d.

**Dowling's Introduction to Goldsmith's Geography.**

Introduction to Goldsmith's Grammar of Geography: for the use of Junior Pupils. By J. DOWLING, Master of Woodstock Boarding School. New Edit. 18mo. 9d. sd.

By the same Author.

Five Hundred Questions on the Maps of Europe, Asia, Africa, North and South America, and the British Isles; principally from the Maps in Goldsmith's Grammar of Geography. New Edition, 18mo. 8d.—Kxy, 8d.

**Goldsmith's Geography Improved.**

Grammar of General Geography; being an Introduction and Companion to the larger Work of the same Author. By the Rev. J. GOLDSMITH. New Edition, improved. Revised throughout and corrected by Hugh Murray, Esq. With New Views, Maps, &c. 18mo. 3s. 6d. bound.—Kxy, 8d. sewed.

**Mangnall's Geography, revised.**

A Compendium of Geography; for the use of Schools, Private Families, &c. By R. MANGNALL. A new Edition, revised and corrected throughout. 12mo. 7s. 6d. bound.

**Hartley's Geography, and Outlines.**

Geography for Youth. By the Rev. J. HARTLEY. New Edit. (the 8th), containing the latest Changes. 12mo. 4s. 6d. bound.—By the same Author, Outlines of Geography: the First Course for Children. New Edit. 18mo. 9d. sd.

~~~~~  
THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.**Hamel's French Grammar and Exercises, by Lambert.**

Hamel's French Grammar and Exercises. A New Edition, in one volume.

Carefully corrected, greatly improved, enlarged, and arranged, in conformity with the last edition of the Dictionary of the French Academy, and in conformity with the last edition of the French Grammar of the University of France.

By N. Lambert. 12mo. 5s. 6d. bound.

Kxy, 4s. bound.

Hamel's French Grammar. — (The Original Edition.)

A New Universal French Grammar; being an accurate System of French Accidence and Syntax. By N. HAMMEL, Graduate in the University of Caen, and Rector of the Town of L'Aigle, in Normandy. New Edit. greatly improved, 12mo. 4s. bd.

Hamel's French Exercises, Key, and Questions.

French Grammatical Exercises. By N. HAMMEL. New Edition, carefully revised and greatly improved, 12mo. 4s. bound.

KEY, 12mo. 3s. bound.—QUESTIONS, with Key, 9d. sewed.

Hamel's World in Miniature.

The World in Miniature; containing a faithful Account of the Situation, Extent, Productions, Government, Population, Manners, Curiosities, &c. of the different Countries of the World: for Translation into French. By N. HAMMEL. New Edition, corrected and brought down to the present time, 12mo. 4s. 6d. bd.

Sandhurst College French Grammar.

A Summary of French Grammar, for the Use of the Gentlemen Cadets of the Royal Military College, Sandhurst. By HENRI MARILLIER, French Master in the Institution. 3d Edition, 12mo. 3s. cloth.

Tardy's French Dictionary.

An Explanatory Pronouncing Dictionary of the French Language, in French and English; wherein the exact Sound of every Syllable is distinctly marked, according to the method adopted by Mr. Walker, in his Pronouncing Dictionary. To which are prefixed, the Principles of the French Pronunciation, &c. By the Abbé TARDY. New Edit. carefully revised, 12mo. 6s. bound.

ENGLISH GRAMMARS, READING BOOKS, ETC.**Mrs. Felix Summerly's Mother's Primer.**

The Mother's Primer. A Little Child's First Steps in many ways. By MRS. FELIX SUMMERLY. Fcp. 8vo. printed in Colours, with a Frontispiece drawn on Zinc by William Mulready, R.A. 1s. sewed.

The Rev. J. Pycroft's Course of English Reading.

A Course of English Reading, adapted to every Taste and Capacity: with Anecdotes of Men of Genius. By the Rev. JAMES PYCROFT, B.A. Trinity College, Oxford, Author of "Latin Grammar Practice," and "Greek Grammar Practice." Fcp. 8vo. 6s. 6d. cloth.

Maunder's Universal Class-Book :

A New Series of Reading Lessons (original and selected) for Every Day in the Year: each Lesson recording some important Event in General History, Biography, &c. which happened on the day of the month under which it is placed; or detailing, in familiar language, interesting facts in Science; also, a variety of Descriptive and Narrative Pieces, interspersed with Poetical Gleanings: Questions for Examination being appended to each day's Lesson, and the whole carefully adapted to practical Tuition. By Samuel Maunder, Author of "The Treasury of Knowledge," &c. 2d Edition, revised, 12mo. 6s. bound.

Lindley Murray's Works.

* * * THE ONLY GENUINE EDITIONS, WITH THE AUTHOR'S LAST CORRECTIONS.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. First Book for Children, 25th edition, 18mo. 6d. sd. 2. English Spelling-Book, 47th edition, 18mo. 18d. bd. 3. Introduction to the English Reader, 34th edit. 12mo. 2s. 6d. bd. 4. The English Reader, 24th edit. 12mo. 3s. 6d. bd. 5. Sequel to ditto, 7th edit. 12mo. 4s. 6d. bound. 6. English Grammar, 51st edit. 12mo. 3s. 6d. bd. 7. English Grammar abridged, 121st edit. 18mo. 1s. bd. 8. English Exercises, 50th edit. 12mo. 2s. bound. 9. Key to Exercises, 12mo. 2s. bd. 10. Exercises and Key, 45th and 25th editions, in 1 vol. 3s. 6d. bound. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 11. Introduction au Lecteur François, 6th edition, 12mo. 3s. 6d. bound. 12. Lecteur François, 6th edit. 12mo. 5s. bound. 13. Library Edition of Grammar, Exercises, and Key, 7th edit. 2 vols. 8vo. 21s. bds. <p style="text-align: center;">~~~~~</p> <p>First Lessons in English Grammar
New edit. revised and enlarged
18mo. 9d. bd.</p> <p>Grammatical Questions, adapted to the Grammar of Lindley Murray: with Notes. By C. BAILEY, A.M. 8th Edit. improved, 12mo. 2s. 6d. bd.</p> <p>Enlarged Edit. of Murray's Abridged English Grammar, by Dr. GILES.
18mo. 1s. 6d. cloth.</p> |
|---|---|

Mavor's Spelling Book.

The English Spelling-Book; accompanied by a Progressive Series of easy and familiar Lessons; intended as an Introduction to the Reading and Spelling of the English Language. By Dr. MAYOR. 452d Edition, with various revisions and improvements of Dr. Mavor, legally conveyed to them by his assignment, with Frontispiece, by Stothard, and 44 beautiful Wood Engravings, designed expressly for the work, by Harvey. The whole printed in an entirely new type, 12mo. 1s. 6d. bound.

*. The only Genuine Edition, with the Author's latest Additions and Improvements, bears the Imprint of Messrs. Longman and Co.

Carpenter's Spelling-Book.

The Scholar's Spelling Assistant; wherein the Words are arranged according to their principles of Accentuation. By T. CARPENTER. New Edition, corrected throughout, 12mo. 1s. 6d. bound.

NOTICE.—The only Genuine and Complete Edition of CARPENTER'S SPELLING is published by Messrs. Longman and Co. and Messrs. Whittaker and Co. Any person selling any other edition than the above is liable to action at law, and on discovery will be immediately proceeded against, the whole book being copyright.

Walker's Dictionary Remodelled.

Walker's Critical Pronouncing Dictionary of the English Language, adapted to the present state of Literature and Science: embodying the original stores of Johnson, the additions of Todd and Webster, and many words in modern use not included in former Dictionaries. By B. H. SMART, Author of "The Practice of Elocution," &c. New Edition. 8vo. 15s. cloth.

Walker's Dictionary Epitomised.

Walker's Pronouncing Dictionary of the English Language, Epitomised on a plan which allows of full Definitions to the leading Words, and large additions to the Terms of Modern Science: with a Key to the Pronunciation of Greek, Latin, and Scripture Proper Names. By B. H. SMART. New Edition. 16mo. 7s. 6d. cloth.

Smart's English Grammar, and Accidence.

The Accidence and Principles of English Grammar. By B. H. SMART. 12mo. 4s. cloth.

The Accidence separately, 1s. sewed in cloth.

Smart's Practice of Elocution.

The Practice of Elocution; or, a Course of Exercises for acquiring the several requisites of a good Delivery. By H. B. SMART. 4th Edition, augmented, particularly by a Chapter on Impassioned Reading Qualified by Taste, with Exercises adapted to a Chronological Outline of English Poetry. 12mo. 5s. cl.

Graham's Art of English Composition.

English; or, The Art of Composition explained in a series of Instructions and Examples. By G. F. GRAHAM. 2d Edition, revised and corrected. Fcp. 8vo. 7s. cloth.

Graham's Helps to English Grammar.

Helps to English Grammar; or, Easy Exercises for Young Children Illustrated by Engravings on Wood. By G. F. GRAHAM, Author of "English; or, the Art of Composition." 12mo. 3s. cloth.

Aikin's British Poets.

Select Works of the British Poets. From Ben Jonson to Beattie. With Biographical and Critical Prefaces, by Dr. AIKIN. A New Edition, with Supplement, by LUCY AIKIN, containing additional Selections from the Works of Crabbe, Scott, Coleridge, Fringle, Charlotte Smith, and Mrs. Barbauld. Medium 8vo. 18s. cloth.

Aikin's Poetry for Children.

Poetry for Children; consisting of Selections of easy and interesting Pieces from the best Poets, interspersed with Original Pieces. By Miss AIKIN. New Edit. considerably improved, 18mo. with Frontispiece, 2s. cloth.

Bullar's Questions on the Scriptures.

Questions on the Holy Scriptures, to be answered in Writing, as Exercises at School, or in the course of Private Instruction. By JOHN BULLAR. New Edit. 18mo. 2s. 6d. cloth.

